

This book was produced in EPUB format by the Internet Archive.

The book pages were scanned and converted to EPUB format automatically. This process relies on optical character recognition, and is somewhat susceptible to errors. The book may not offer the correct reading sequence, and there may be weird characters, non-words, and incorrect guesses at structure. Some page numbers and headers or footers may remain from the scanned page. The process which identifies images might have found stray marks on the page which are not actually images from the book. The hidden page numbering which may be available to your ereader corresponds to the numbered pages in the print edition, but is not an exact match; page numbers will increment at the same rate as the corresponding print edition, but we may have started numbering before the print book's visible page numbers. The Internet Archive is working to improve the scanning process and resulting books, but in the meantime, we hope that this book will be useful to you.

The Internet Archive was founded in 1996 to build an Internet library and to promote universal access to all knowledge. The Archive's purposes include offering permanent access for researchers, historians, scholars, people with disabilities, and the general public to historical collections that exist in digital format. The Internet Archive includes texts, audio, moving images, and software as well as archived web pages, and provides specialized services for information access for the blind and other persons with disabilities.

Created with hocr-to-epub (v.1.0.0)

BASIC ENGLISH GRAMMAR — "Second Edition Longman
Betty Schramper Azar

BASIC ENGLISH GRAMMAR Second Edition Betty
Schramper Azar

Library of Congress Cataloging-in- Publication Data Azar, Betty Scramper, 1941 Basic English grammar / Betty Schramper Azar. -- 2nd ed. p. cm. Includes indexes. ISBN 0-13-368317-6 ISBN 0-13-368424-5 (v. 1). - ISBN 0-13-368358-3 (v. 2) 1. English language— Textbooks for foreign speakers. 2. English language— Grammar— Problems, exercises, etc. I. Title, PEI 128.A96 1995 428.2 '4-dc20 92-2571 1 CLP Publisher: Tina B. Caiver Director of Production and Manufacturing: Aliza Greenblatt Editorial Production/Design Manager: Dominick Mosco Editorial/Production Supervision: Janet Johnston Editorial Assistant: Shelley Hartle Production Coordinator: Ray Keating Cover Coordinator: Merle Krumper Cover Production: Molly Pike Riccardi Cover Design: Joel Mitnick Design Interior Design: Ros Herion Freese Illustrations: Don Martintii ©1996 by Betty Schramper Azar A Pearson Education Company Pearson Education 10 Bank Street White Plains, NY 10606 All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, in any form or by any means, without permission in writing from the publisher. Printed in the United States of America 15 ISBN D-13-3ba317-b ISBN □ - 1 3 - 3bA424 - 5 (Vol- A) ISBN □ - 1 3 - 3L»A35A - 3 (Vol. B)

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Azar, Betty Schramper, 1941 -
Basic English grammar / Betty Schramper Azar. -- 2nd ed.
p. cm.
Includes indexes.
ISBN 0-13-368317-6
ISBN 0-13-368424-5 (v. 1). -- ISBN 0-13-368358-3 (v. 2)
1. English language--Textbooks for foreign speakers. 2. English
language--Grammar--Problems, exercises, etc. I. Title.
PE1128.A96 1995 92-25711
428.2'4--dc20 CIP

Publisher: *Tina B. Carver*
Director of Production and Manufacturing: *Aliza Greenblatt*
Editorial Production/Design Manager: *Dominick Mosco*
Editorial/Production Supervision: *Janet Johnston*
Editorial Assistant: *Shelley Hartle*
Production Coordinator: *Ray Keating*
Cover Coordinator: *Merle Krumper*
Cover Production: *Molly Pike Riccardi*
Cover Design: *Joel Mitnick Design*
Interior Design: *Ros Herion Freese*
Illustrations: *Don Martinetti*

©1996 by Betty Schramper Azar
A Pearson Education Company
Pearson Education
10 Bank Street
White Plains, NY 10606

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be
reproduced, in any form or by any means,
without permission in writing from the publisher.

Printed in the United States of America

15

ISBN 0-13-368317-6
ISBN 0-13-368424-5 (Vol. A)
ISBN 0-13-368358-3 (Vol. B)

Contents i	PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION . .	ix
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS .	x	
Chapter 1 USING BE AND HAVE	1 - 1	
NOUN + IS + NOUN: SINGULAR .	2 1 -2	NOUN + ARE + NOUN: PLURAL .
4 1-3	PRONOUN + BE + NOUN .	6 1-4
CONTRACTIONS WITH BE .	7 1 - 5	NEGATIVE WITH BE .
8 1-6	BE + ADJECTIVE .	10 1-7
BE + A LOCATION .	16 1-8	SUMMARY: SENTENCE PATTERNS WITH BE .
20 1-9	YES/NO QUESTIONS WITH BE .	21 1-10
QUESTIONS WITH BE: USING WHERE .	24 1 - II	USING HAVE AND HAS .
26 1-12	USING MY, YOUR, HIS, HER, OUR , THEIR .	27 1-13
USING THIS AND THAT .	30 1-14	USING THESE AND THOSE .
3 1 1-	15 ASKING QUESTIONS WITH WHAT AND WHO + BE .	32
Chapter 2 EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1)	2-	1 FORM AND BASIC MEANING OF THE SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE .
44 2-2	USING FREQUENCY ADVERBS: ALWAYS, USUALLY, OFTEN, SOMETIMES, SELDOM, RARELY, NEVER .	46
2-3	USING FREQUENCY ADVERBS WITH BE .	47 2-4
PRONUNCIATION OF FINAL -S: /Z/ AND /S/ .	49 2-5	SPELLING AND PRONUNCIATION OF FINAL -ES .
5 1 2-6	ADDING FINAL -S TO WORDS THAT END IN -Y .	51 2-7
IRREGULAR SINGULAR VERBS: HAS , DOES, GOES .	52 2-8	SUMMARY: SPELLING AND PRONUNCIATION OF -S AND -ES .
54 2-9	THE SIMPLE PRESENT: NEGATIVE .	57
CONTENTS ■	Hi	



Contents

2-10 THE SIMPLE PRESENT: YES/NO QUESTIONS . 61 2-
 11 THE SIMPLE PRESENT ASKING INFORMATION QUESTIONS
 WITH WHERE . 64 2-12 THE SIMPLE PRESENT: ASKING
 INFORMATION QUESTIONS WITH WHEN AND WHAT TIME . 66
 2-13 SUMMARY: INFORMATION QUESTIONS WITH BE AND DO .
 67 2-14 USING IT TO TALK ABOUT TIME . 72 2- 1 5
 PREPOSITIONS OF TIME . 73 2- 16 USING IT TO TALK ABOUT
 THE WEATHER . 74 Chapter 3 EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART
 2) 3- 1 BE + -ING: THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE . 84 3-2
 SPELLING OF -ING . 87 3-3 THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE:
 QUESTIONS . 89 3-4 THE SIMPLE PRESENT vs. THE PRESENT
 PROGRESSIVE . 92 3-5 NONACTION VERBS NOT USED IN THE
 PRESENT PROGRESSIVE . 95 3-6 SEE, LOOK AT, WATCH, HEAR,
 AND LISTEN TO . 97 3-7 NEED AND WANT + A NOUN OR AN
 INFINITIVE . 98 3-8 WOULD LIKE . 100 3-9 WOULD LIKE vs. LIKE .
 101 3-10 THINK ABOUT AND THINK THAT . 102 3-11 THERE +
 BE . 106 3-12 THERE + BE. YES/NO QUESTIONS . 107 3- 1 3
 THERE + BE ASKING QUESTIONS WITH HOW MANY . 109 3- 14
 PREPOSITIONS OF LOCATION . 111 Chapter 4 NOUNS AND
 PRONOUNS 4- 1 NOUNS: SUBJECTS AND OBJECTS . 127 4-2
 ADJECTIVE + NOUN . 129 4-3 SUBJECT PRONOUNS AND
 OBJECT PRONOUNS . 131 4-4 NOUNS: SINGULAR AND PLURAL
 . 134 4-5 NOUNS: IRREGULAR PLURAL FORMS . 139 4-6 NOUNS:
 COUNT AND NONCOUNT . 141 4-7 USING vs. A . 143 4-8 USING
 A, AN vs. SOME . 144 4-9 MEASUREMENTS WITH NONCOUNT
 NOUNS . 150 4-10 USING THE . 156 4-11 USING ONE (NOT ARTICLE)
 TO MAKE GENERALIZATIONS . 160 4-12 USING SOME AND ANY .
 161 4- 1 3 INDEFINITE PRONOUNS: SOMETHING, SOMEONE,
 ANYTHING, ANYONE . 163 4- 1 4 INDEFINITE PRONOUNS:
 NOTHING AND NO ONE . 164 IV ■ CONTENTS

Chapter 5 EXPRESSING PAST TIME 5-1 USING BE: PAST TIME . 171 5-2 PAST OF BE: NEGATIVE . 172 5-3 PAST OF BE: QUESTIONS . 173 5-4 THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE: USING -ED . 177 5-5 PAST TIME WORDS: YESTERDAY, LAST, AND AGO . 178 5-6 PRONUNCIATION OF -ED: /t/, /d/, AND /əd/ . 180 5-7 SPELLING OF -ED VERBS . 183 5-8 SPELLING OF -ED AND -ING: TWO-SYLLABLE VERBS . 186 5-9 THE SIMPLE PAST: IRREGULAR VERBS . 190 5-10 THE SIMPLE PAST: NEGATIVE . 192 5-11 THE SIMPLE PAST: YES/NO QUESTIONS . 194 • 5-12 MORE IRREGULAR VERBS . 198 5-13 THE SIMPLE PAST: USING WHERE, WHEN, WHAT TIME, AND WHY . 203 5-14 QUESTIONS WITH WHAT . 206 5-15 QUESTIONS WITH WHO . 209 5-16 ASKING ABOUT THE MEANING OF A WORD . 212 5-17 MORE IRREGULAR VERBS . 213 5-18 BEFORE AND AFTER IN TIME CLAUSES . 216 5-19 WHEN IN TIME CLAUSES . 219 Chapter 6 EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME 6-1 FUTURE TIME: USING BE GOING TO . 231 6-2 WORDS USED FOR PAST TIME AND FUTURE TIME . 235 6-3 USING A COUPLE OF OR A FEW WITH AGO (PAST) AND IN (FUTURE) . 238 6-4 USING TODAY, TONIGHT, AND THIS + MORNING, AFTERNOON, EVENING, WEEK, MONTH, YEAR . 239 6-5 FUTURE TIME: USING WILL . 242 6-6 ASKING QUESTIONS WITH WILL . 243 6-7 VERB SUMMARY: PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE . 245 6-8 VERB SUMMARY: FORMS OF BE . 246 6-9 USING WHAT + A FORM OF DO . 251 6-10 MAY/MIGHT vs. WILL . 253 6-11 MAYBE (ONE WORD) vs. MAYBE (TWO WORDS) . 255 6-12 FUTURE TIME CLAUSES WITH BEFORE, AFTER, AND WHEN . 258 6-13 CLAUSES WITH IF . 260 6-14 EXPRESSING HABITUAL PRESENT WITH TIME CLAUSES AND IF-CLAUSES . 263 6-15 MORE IRREGULAR VERBS . 266 6-16 MORE IRREGULAR VERBS . 270 CONTENTS ■ V

Chapter 7 EXPRESSING ABILITY	7-1 USING CAN . 281
7-2 USING CAN: QUESTIONS . 282	7-3 USING KNOW HOW TO . 284
7-4 USING COULD: PAST OF CAN . 285	7-5 USING FEW AND TOO + ADJECTIVE . 287
7-6 USING TOO MANY AND TOO MUCH + NOUN . 290	7-7 USING TOO + ADJECTIVE + INFINITIVE . 293
7-8 USING TOO + ADJECTIVE + FOR (SOMEONE) + INFINITIVE . 294	7-9 USING ADJECTIVE + ENOUGH . 295
7-10 USING ENOUGH + NOUN AND MORE + NOUN . 297	7-11 USING ENOUGH + INFINITIVE . 299
7-12 USING BE ABLE TO . 301	7-13 POLITE QUESTIONS: MAY I, COULD I, AND CAN I . 302
7-14 POLITE QUESTIONS: COULD I/AND WOULD YOU . 304	7-15 IMPERATIVE SENTENCES . 307
7-16 USING TWO, TOO, AND TO . 310	7-17 MORE ABOUT PREPOSITIONS: AT AND IN FOR LOCATIONS . 311
7-18 MORE IRREGULAR VERBS . 321	Chapter 8 NOUNS, ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS
8-1 MODIFYING NOUNS WITH ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS . 325	8-2 WORD ORDER OF ADJECTIVES . 329
8-3 EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY: ALL OF, MOST OF, SOME OF . 334	8-4 EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY: SUBJECT- VERB AGREEMENT . 336
8-5 EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY: ONE OF, NONE OF . 337	8-6 USING EVERY . 341
8-7 POSSESSIVE NOUNS . 343	8-8 POSSESSIVE: IRREGULAR PLURAL NOUNS . 345
8-9 POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS: MINE, YOURS, HIS, HERS, OURS, THEIRS . 347	8-10 QUESTIONS WITH WHOSE . 351
8-11 SUMMARY: USES OF THE APOSTROPHE . 352	8-12 SUMMARY: USES OF NOUNS . 355
8-13 CONNECTED NOUNS: NOUN + AND/OR + NOUN . 357	8-14 SUMMARY: USES OF ADJECTIVES . 360
8-15 SUMMARY: PERSONAL PRONOUNS . 363	8-16 INDIRECT OBJECTS . 364
8-17 INDIRECT OBJECTS: USING FOR . 367	8-18 INDIRECT OBJECTS WITH BUY, GET, MAKE . 369
8-19 INDIRECT OBJECTS WITH EXPLAIN AND INTRODUCE . 370	8-20 MORE IRREGULAR VERBS . 375
Vi	■ CONTENTS

Chapter 9 MAKING COMPARISONS 9- 1 COMPARISONS:
 USING THE SAME (AS), SIMILAR (TO), AND DIFFERENT (FROM) . 379
 9-2 COxMPARISONS: USING LIKE AND ALIKE . 382 9-3 THE
 COMPARATIVE: USING -ER AND MORE . 383 9-4 USING AS... AS,
 USING LESS . 389 9-5 USING BUT . 393 9-6 USING VERBS AFTER
 BUT . 395 9-7 THE SUPERLATIVE: USING -EST AND MOST . 398
 9-8 USING ONE OF + SUPERLATIVE + PLURAL NOUN . 405 9-9
 ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS . 411 9-10 iVLAKING COxMPARISONS
 WITH ADVERBS . 414 9- 1 1 USING AS... AS WITH ADVERBS . 416
 Chapter 10 EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS 10- 1 USING
 SHOULD . 420 10-2 USING LET'S . 423 1 0-3 USING HAVE +
 INFINITIVE (HAS TO(HAVE TO) . 424 10-4 USING MUST . 427
 10-5 MODAL AUXILIARIES . 430 10-6 SUxMM ARY CHART:
 MODAL AUXILIARIES AN D SIMILAR EXPRESSIONS . 431 1 0-7
 THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE AND THE PAST PROGRESSIVE . 434
 1 0-8 USING WHILE WITH THE PAST PROGRESSIVE . 438 1 0-9
 WHILE vs. WHEN IN PAST TIME CLAUSES . 438 10-10 SIxMPLE
 PAST vs. PAST PROGRESSIVE . 440 10-1 1 USING HAVE BEEN
 (THE PRESENT PERFECT) . 444 10-12 USING S/NCE-CLAUSES .
 446 10-13 FORM OF THE PRESENT PERFECT . 448 10-14 USING
 NEVER WITH THE PRESENT PERFECT . 449 10-15 PRESENT
 PERFECT: QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVES . 450 10-16 USING EVER
 WITH THE PRESENT PERFECT . 451 10-17 THE PRESENT
 PERFECT: QUESTIONS WITH HOW LONG . 453 10-18 PAST
 PARTICIPLES OF COxVlMON IRREGULAR VERBS . 455 Appendix 1
 THE ENGLISH ALPHABET . A1 Appendix 2 NUMBERS . A2
 Appendix 3 DAYS OF THE WEEK AND MONTHS OF THE YEAR . A3
 Appendix 4 WAYS OF SAYING THE TIME . A4 Appendix 5
 IRREGULAR VERBS . A5 INDEX . INDEX 1 CONTENTS ■ VH

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

Basic English Grammar remains a developmental skills text for students of English as a second or foreign language. Serving as both a reference and a workbook, it introduces students to the form, meaning, and usage of basic structures in English. It provides ample opportunities for practice through extensive and varied exercises leading to communicative activities. Although it focuses on grammar, it promotes the development of all language skills. This second edition has a greatly expanded range of contents to provide a solid core of basic English grammar for lower-level or beginning students. It includes numerous new exercises with, at the end of each chapter, cumulative review exercises that include additional communicative and interactive student-centered tasks. Also available are an Answer Key , with answers only, and a Teacher's Guide , with teaching suggestions as well as the answers to the exercises. PREFACE ■ IX



Preface to the Second Edition



Preface to the Second Edition

Writing English grammar texts is a pleasure for me, In this pursuit, I am helped by many wonderful people: dedicated teachers who give presentations at conferences and write articles for regional newsletters or international journals; researchers who explore the hows and whys of second language acquisition; grammarians who present their observations clearly and convincingly; past and present authors of other ESL/EFL grammar materials who show creative and sound approaches to helping students gain understanding and usage ability of English; colleagues who give me valuable feedback and share their pedagogical insights; and publishing professionals who know how to mold and market educational materials. We all rely on one another. Above all, I am indebted to my students, who have taught me a great deal about the language acquisition process by openly sharing with me their learning experiences and practical needs. In sum, I am indebted to the ESL/EFL community of teachers, researchers, authors, publishers, and students. In particular, I thank Tina Carver, Janet Johnston, and Shelley Harde for their invaluable professionalism as well as friendship. I also wish to thank Barbara Matthies, Irene Juzkiw, Stacy Hagen, Nancy Price, Lawrence Cisar, Don Martinetti, Lizette Reyes, Stella Reilly, Marita Froimson, Joy Edwards, R.T. Steltz, Sue Van Etten, Ken Kortlever, Generessa Arielle, and Chelsea Azar. My gratitude goes also to the many wonderful teachers and publishers I met in Korea, Japan, and Taiwan on my trip to Asia in 1994. X ■ ACKNOWLEDGMENTS



Acknowledgments

CHAPTER 7 Using Be and Have ■ EXERCISE 1: Learn the names of your classmates and teacher. Write their names in the spaces below. USING BE AND HAVE ■ 7

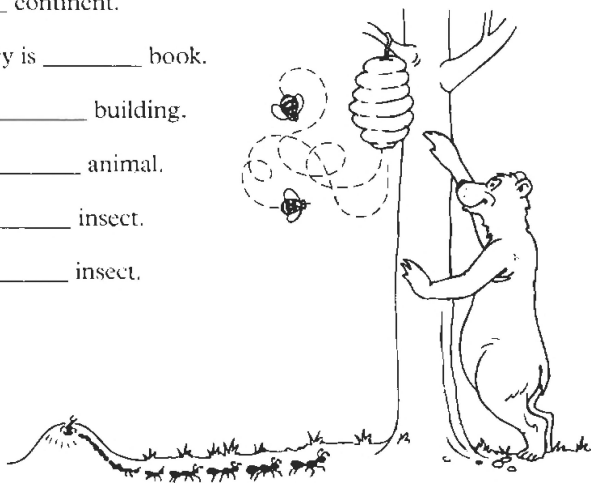


CHAPTER 1

Using *Be* and *Have*

1-1 NOUN + IS + NOUN: SINGULAR NOUN + IS + NOUN (a) Canada is a country . "Singular" means "one, not two or more." In (a); Canada ~ a singular noun is = a singular verb conntnr \> = a singular noun (b) Mexico is a country. (c) A cat is an animal. A frequently comes in front of singular nouns. In (b): a comes in front of the singular noun country. A is called "an article." A and an have the same meaning. They are both articles. A is used in front of words that begin with consonants: b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, s etc. Examples: a bed, a cat, a dog, a friend, a girl An is used in front of words that begin with a, c, i, and o* Examples: an animal, an car, an island, an office M« is also sometimes used in from of words thai begin with u. See Chan 4-7. 'Thc letters a, e, r, and h are eailed "vowels." All of die o tiler letters in the alphabet are eailed "consonants." ■ EXERCISE 2: Complete the sentences. Use an arttci.i.; a or an > 1 . A horse is QH animal. 2. English is _ language. 3. Chicago is _ city. 4. Korea is _ country. 2 M CHAPTER 1

5. Europe is _____ continent.
6. _____ dictionary is _____ book.
7. _____ hotel is _____ building.
8. _____ bear is _____ animal.
9. _____ bee is _____ insect.
10. _____ ant is _____ insect.



■ EXERCISE 3: Complete the sentences. Use an article (a or an) and the words in the list. animal city continent country insect language
 1. Arabic is a language. 9. A bee is an insect. 2. Rome is a city. 7. A cow is an animal. 10. South America is a continent. 3. A cat is an animal. 11. A dog is an animal. 4. Asia is a continent. 12. China is a country. 5. Tokyo is a city. 13. Russian is a language. 6. Spanish is a language. 14. A cow is an animal. 7. Mexico is a country. 15. Africa is a continent. 8. London is a city.

■ EXERCISE 4— ORAL:
 Complete the sentences with your own words. Think of more than one possible completion. 1. ... is a language, English is a language. - + Spanish is a language, - > Arabic is a language. > Etc. 2. ... is a country. 3. ... is a city. 4. ... is a continent. 5. ... is an animal. 6. ... is an insect, USING BE AND HAVE ■ 3

1-2 NOUN + ARE + NOUN: PLURAL NOUN + AHH + NOUN (a) Cats are animals . “Plural” means “two, three, or more*” Cats = a plural noun are - a plural verb animals - a plural noun (b) singular: a cat, an animal. Plural nouns end in - s . PLURAL: cats, animals A and an are used only with singular nouns. (c) singular: a city, a country. Some singular nouns that end in -y have a special PLURAL: cities, countries plural form: They omit the - y and add -ies.* NOUN and NOUN + ARE + NOUN Two nouns connected by and are followed by are . (d) Canada and China are countries. In (d): Canada is a singular noun, China is a singular noun. They are connected by and. (e) Dogs and cats are animals . Together they are plural, i.e*, “more than one.” *See Chan 2-6 for more information about adding -s to words that end in -y. ■ EXERCISE 5: Change the singular sentences to plural sentences* SINGULAR PLURAL 1 . An ant is an insect. -> Ants are insects. 2. A computer is a machine. -> 3. A dictionary is a book. -> 4. A chicken is a bird. > 5. A rose is a flower. ► 6. A carrot is a vegetable. -> 7. A rabbit is an animal. _ 4 ■ CHAPTER 1

| EXERCISE 6: Complete the sentences with *is* or *are* and one of the nouns in the list. Use the correct singular form of the noun (using *a* or *an*) or the correct plural form. animal country language city insect machine continent

1. a dog is gn animal _ . 2. Dogs are animals _ .
3. Spanish _ . 4. Spanish and Chinese _
5. Asia _ . 6. Asia and Africa _ .
7. Thailand and Viet Nam _
8. Thailand _ . 9. Butterflies _ .
10. A butterfly _ .
11. An automobile _ .
12. Automobiles _ .
13. London _ .
14. London and Baghdad _ ■

EXERCISE 7— ORAL: Complete the sentences with your own words.

Example: ... a country. Response: (Brazil is) a country.

1. ... a country.
6. ... cities.
11. ... countries in Asia,
2. ... countries.
7. ... animals.
12. ... a city in Europe.
3. ... languages.
8. ... an insect.
13. ... a plant.
4. ... a language.
9. ... a peninsula.
14. ... a vegetable.
5. ... a city.
10. ... streets in this city'.
15. ... a season.

USING BE AND HAVE ■ 5

| EXERCISE 8 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): What are the following things? Example: Cows Response: Cows are animals. 1. English 8. Russian and Arabic 15. Winter and summer 2. England 9. Spring 16. September and October 3. Butterflies 10. Japan and Venezuela 17. A dictionary 4. Chickens 11. A computer 18. Typewriters 5. Europe 12. A bear 19. A Honda 6. Roses 13. Bees 20. (names of cars , cities , countries , 7. A carrot 14. An ant colony 15. Animals, insects) 1-3 PRONOUN + BE + NOUN SINGULAR Pl. UKAI. PRONOUN + nr: + NOUN PRONOUN + nr: + NOUN (a) / am a student. (f) We are students. (b) You are a student (g) You are students. (c) She is a student (h) They are students. (d) He is a student (

■ EXERCISE 10 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Complete the sentences with a form of be + a student/students. Indicate the subject or subjects with your hand. Example: (...) (The teacher supplies the name of a student.) Response: (Yoko) is a student. (The responding student indicates Yoko.) 1. (■■■■) 2. (...) and (...) 3. I 4. (...) and I 5. We 6. (...) 7. (...) and (...) 8. They 9. You 10. (...) and (...) and (...) Now identify the given people as students and, in addition, tell what country or continent they are from. 11. (...) (Yoko) is a student. She is from Japan. 12. (...) and (...) -* (Luis) and (Pablo) are students. They are from South America. 13. (...) 14. (...) and (...) 15. Etc. 1-4 CONTRACTIONS WITH BE
PRONOUN + HE ► CONTRACTION When people speak, they often use I + am I'm (a) I'm a student. push two words together. A contraction - two words that are pushed together. ■* she's (b) She's a student. are pushed together. IS he it + is is he's it's (c) (d) He's a student. It's a city. Contractions of a subject pronoun + be are used in both you + are > you're (e) You're a student. speaking and writing. ARE we + are > we're You're students. punctuation: The mark in they + are ► they're (f) We're students. the middle of a contraction is (g) They're students. called an "apostrophe" ('). note: Write an apostrophe above the line. Do not write an apostrophe on the line. correct: fma tftuc/exC. _ incorrect: fsm a f tiudwt. USING BE AND HAVE ■ 7

EXERCISE 1 1: Complete the sentences. Use contractions (pronoun + be). 1 . Sara is a student. . 2. Jim is a student. _ J&el 3. I have one brother. 4. I have two sisters . _ 5. I have a dictionary, _ 6. I like my classmates. 7. I have three books . _ 8. My brother is twenty-six years old, 9. My sister is twenty-one years old. _ 1 0. Yoko and AH are students. _ 1 1 . I like my books . _ 12. I like grammar. _ 13. Kate and I live in an apartment. 14. We live in an apartment. _ 15. /go to school. _ 16. I know jiott. _ in my class. . in my class. _ twenty years old. students. _ on my desk. _ friendly. on my desk. married. single. in my class. interesting. easy. roommates. on Pine Street. a student. in my English class. 1-5 NEGATIVE WITH BE (a) Tom k not a teacher. He is a student. isn't Not makes a sentence negative. Not can be contracted with is and are: contraction: is + not = isn't contraction: are + not - aren't (b) Tom and Ann tore not teachers. 1 aren't (c) I am not a teacher. Am and not are not contracted. 8 m CHAPTER 1

■ EXERCISE 1 2: Complete the sentences with the correct information. 1. Korea isn't a civt. It 5 O Country 2. Horses _ insects. They _ 3. Asia _ a country. It _ 4. Bees and ants _ animals. They _ 5. Arabic _ a country, It _ 6. I _ a professional photographer. I _ 7. Ann Ann a gardener. She Sue 8. Mike a gardener. He an artist. 9. Tim a bus driver He 10. Sue a photographer. She 1 1 . Mr. Rice a police officer. He isn't 12. Ms. Black isn't . She USING BE AND HAVE ■ 9



Ms. Black



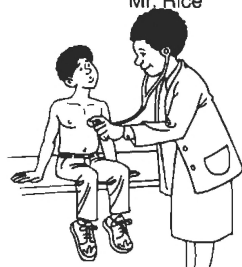
Jim



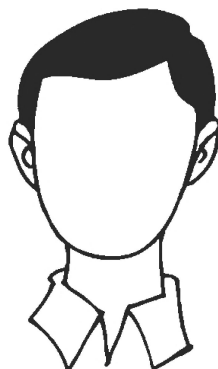
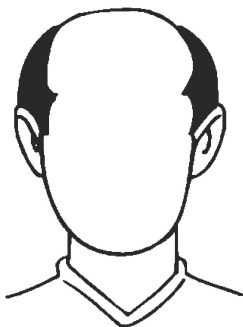
Mr. Rice



Mike



1-6 BE + ADJECTIVE NOUN + uu -h ADJhCTIVH round ^
 (a) A ball is round . intelligent (h) Balls are round . hungry > -
 adjectives (c) Mary is intelligent young (d) Mary and Tom are
 intelligent . happy ; PRONOUN + nn + adjj x; ri vi-; Adjectives
 often follow a form of be (am , is. (e) I am hungry . arc). Adjectives
 describe or give in forma lion (f) She is young . about a noun or
 pronoun that comes at die (g) "They are happy beginning of a
 sentence/ *The noun or pronoun that comes at die beginning of a
 sentence is called a "subject." See Chan 4-1 . ■ EXERCISE 13:
 Complete the drawings. student a: Make the faces happy, sad, and
 angry. Show your drawings to Student B. student b: Identify the
 emotions that Student A showed in the drawings. For example: She
 is angry. He is sad. They are happy. 1 0 m CHAPTER 1



■ EXERCISE 14: Find the ADjncTivii in the first sentence.

Then complete the second sentence with be + an adjective that has an opposite meaning. Use the adjectives in the list. Use each adjective only one time. beautiful expensive open clean fast poor cold ✓ happy short dangerous noisy sour easy old tall 1 . I'm not sad. I 'm hoppV _ 2. Ice isn't hot. It _ 3. Mr. Thomas isn't rich. He _ 4. My hair isn't long. It _ 5. My clothes aren't dirty. They _ 6. Flowers aren't ugly, They _ 7. Cars aren't cheap. They _ 8. Airplanes aren't slow. They _ 9. Grammar isn't difficult. It _ 10. My sister isn't short. She _ 1 1 . My grandparents aren't young. They 12. The dormitory isn't quiet. Tt _ _ 1 3. The door isn't closed. It _ 14. Guns aren't safe. They _ 15. Lemons aren't sweet. They _ USING BE AND HAVE U 11

■ EXERCISE 15— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Use adjectives to describe things in the classroom. Suggestions are given in parentheses. Example: round, square, flat To student a: (The teacher writes the words on the board: round, square, flat, and then touches or points to something round, for example, a ring or a circle drawn on the board.) Tell me about this ring that I'm holding. Use one of the words on the board. student a: It's round. To student b: Tell me about this coin. student b: It's round. It's flat. 1 . round (a ring, a coin, a circle drawn on the board) 2. square (a box, a desk, a figure drawn on the board) 3. flat (a coin, a desktop) 4. full (a pocket, a hand) 5. empty (a pocket, a hand) 6. wet (a street on a rainy day, a licked finger) 7. dry (indoors on a rainy day, an unlicked finger) 8. dirty' (a hand or a piece of paper rubbed on the floor) 9. clean (a hand or a piece of paper not rubbed on the floor) 10. long (a string, a strip of paper, someone's hair) 11 . short (a string, a strip of paper, someone's hair) 12. heavy (a desk, a pile of books) 13. light (a piece of paper, a pen) 14. loud (a knock on a door or desk top, one's speaking voice) 15. soft (a knock on a door or desk top, one's speaking voice) 16. quiet (no sound at all in the classroom) ■

EXERCISE 16: Make sentences by using is or are and an adjective from the following list. Use each adjective only one time. beautiful ^ hot sour cold important square dry large/big sweet flat round wet funny small! little 1. Fire _ IS hot 2. Ice and snow _ 3 . A box _ 4. Balls and oranges 5. Sugar _ 12 U CHAPTER 1

6. An elephant but a mouse 7. A rain forest but a desert _
 8. A lemon _ 9. A joke _ 10. Good health 1 1 . Flowers _ 12. A coin _
 small, round, and ■ EXERCISE 17: Complete the sentences. Use is,
 isn't , are, or aren't. 1 . A ball _ 13. square. 2. Balls _ are _ round.
 3. A mouse _ big. 5. A lemon . sweet. It . sour. 1 0. My pen . 1 1 .
 This room . 1 2. English grammar . 13. This exercise _ 14. My
 classmates . heavy It . dark. It. hard. It .difficult. It. _ friendly. .
 light. _ light. easy. easy. USING BE AND HAVE ■ 13

15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. A turtle Airplanes .
They slow. _ slow. fast. The floor in the classroom „ _ It _ dirty. The
weather _ The sun _ bright today, clean cold today. Ice cream and
candy My shoes _ My desk _ Flowers _ sour. They comfortable.
comfortable. ugly. They. Traffic at rush hour . quiet. noisy. It sw
beautiful. ■ EXERCISE 18 — ORAL: Do any of these words describe
you? Example: Hungry? Response: I'm hungry. or: I'm not hungry.
1. hungry? 2. angry? 3. thirsty? 4. nervous? 5. sleepy? 6. friendly?
7. tired? 8. lazy? 9. old? 10. hardworking? 11. young? 12. famous?
13. happy? 14. sick? 15. homesick? 16. healthy? 17. married?
18. friendly? 19. single? 20. shy? 21. ■ CHAPTER 1

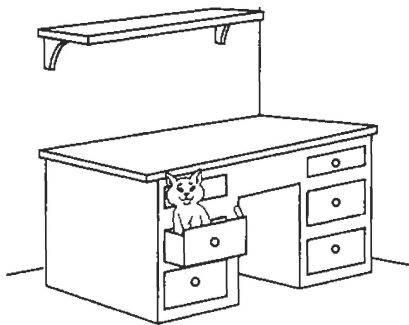
■ EXERCISE 19— ORAL: Do any of these words describe this city? 1. big? 2. small? 3. old? 4. modern? 5. clean? 6. dirty? 7. friendly? 8. unfriendly? 9. safe? 10. dangerous? ■ EXERCISE 20— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Make sentences. Use *isn't* or *aren't*. Example: A ball \ round Response: A ball is round. Example: Balls \ square Response: Balls aren't square. 1. A box \ square 17. A turtle \ slow 2. A box \ round 18. Airplanes \ slow 3. The earth \ flat 19. Airplanes \ fast 4. The earth \ round 20. English grammar \ difficult 5. Bananas \ red 21. English grammar \ easy 6. Bananas \ yellow 22. This exercise \ hard 7. Diamonds \ expensive 23. The weather \ hot today 8. Diamonds \ cheap 24. The weather \ cold today 9. Apples \ expensive 25. Lemons \ sweet 10. Air \ free 26. Ice cream and candy \ sour 11. Cars \ free 27. Traffic \ noisy 12. A pen \ heavy 28. City streets \ quiet 13. A pen \ light 29. Education \ important 14. Flowers \ ugly 30. Good food \ important 15. A rose \ beautiful 31. Good food and exercise \ important 16. A turtle \ fast 32. The students in this class \ very intelligent ■ EXERCISE 21 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Name things that the given adjective can describe. Example: round teacher: Name something that is round. student: (A ball, an orange, the world, my head, etc.) is round. 1. hot 6. flat 11. beautiful 2. square 7. little 12. expensive 3. sweet 8. important 13. cheap 4. sour 9. cold 14. free 5. large 10. funny 15. delicious USING BE AND HAVE ■ 15

ABOVE IX BEHIND UNDER 16 m CHAPTER 1

1-7 BE + A LOCATION

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|---------------|-----------|--------------|
| <p>(a) Maria is here.</p> <p>(b) Bob was at the library.</p> | <p>In (a): <i>here</i> = a location.</p> <p>In (b): <i>at the library</i> = a location.</p> <p>Be is often followed by <i>a location</i>.</p> | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>(c) Maria is</p> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin: 0 10px;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <p><i>here.</i></p> <p><i>there.</i></p> <p><i>downstairs.</i></p> <p><i>upstairs.</i></p> <p><i>inside.</i></p> <p><i>outside.</i></p> <p><i>downtown.</i></p> </div> | <p>A location may be one word, as in the examples in (c).</p> | | | | | | | | | |
| <div style="display: flex; align-items: center; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;">PREPOSITION</div> <div style="margin: 0 10px;">+</div> <div style="margin-right: 10px;">NOUN</div> </div> <p>(d) Bob was</p> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin: 0 10px;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; margin-bottom: 5px;"> <div style="width: 45%;"><i>at</i></div> <div style="width: 55%;"><i>the library.</i></div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; margin-bottom: 5px;"> <div style="width: 45%;"><i>on</i></div> <div style="width: 55%;"><i>the bus.</i></div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; margin-bottom: 5px;"> <div style="width: 45%;"><i>in</i></div> <div style="width: 55%;"><i>his room.</i></div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; margin-bottom: 5px;"> <div style="width: 45%;"><i>at</i></div> <div style="width: 55%;"><i>work.</i></div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"><i>next to</i></div> <div style="width: 55%;"><i>Maria.</i></div> </div> </div> | <p>A location may be a prepositional phrase, as in (d).</p> <p><i>A preposition + a noun</i> is called a “prepositional phrase.”</p> <p><i>At the library</i> = a prepositional phrase.</p> | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>SOME COMMON PREPOSITIONS</p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 33%;"><i>above</i></td> <td style="width: 33%;"><i>between</i></td> <td style="width: 33%;"><i>next to</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>at</i></td> <td><i>from</i></td> <td><i>on</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>behind</i></td> <td><i>in</i></td> <td><i>under</i></td> </tr> </table> | | <i>above</i> | <i>between</i> | <i>next to</i> | <i>at</i> | <i>from</i> | <i>on</i> | <i>behind</i> | <i>in</i> | <i>under</i> |
| <i>above</i> | <i>between</i> | <i>next to</i> | | | | | | | | |
| <i>at</i> | <i>from</i> | <i>on</i> | | | | | | | | |
| <i>behind</i> | <i>in</i> | <i>under</i> | | | | | | | | |

■ EXERCISE 22: Complete the sentences with prepositions that describe the pictures. Use each preposition one time. above in on behind next to under between the desk. the desk. The cat is the desk. USING BE AND HAVE 17



The cat is in

4. The cat is the desk. 5. two desks. 6. 7. The cat is The cat
is the desk. the desk. 18 m CHAPTER 1

■ EXERCISE 23: Find the propositions and the prepositional phrases in the following sentences. 1. Mike is in his apartment. *in* - a preposition in his apartment - a prepositional phrase 2. Mr. Lee is at the airport. 3. Ali is from Egypt. 4. My book is on my desk. 5. Bob's pen is in his pocket. 6. The post office is on First Street. 7. The post office is next to the bank. 8. My feet are under my desktop. 9. My nose is between my cheeks. 10. My apartment is on the third floor. It is above Mr. Kwan's apartment.

EXERCISE 24— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Practice using prepositions of location, under Put your hand under your chair. Where is your hand? My hand is under my chair. / It's under my chair. Put your pen on your book. Where is your pen? Put your pen in your book. Where's your pen? Put your pen under your book. Where's your pen? Put your pen next to your book. Where's your pen? Put your hand on your ear. Where's your hand? Put your hand next to your ear. Where's your hand? Put your hand above your head. Where's your hand? Stand next to (. . .). Where are you? Stand between (...) and (...). Where are you? Put your pen between two books. Where's your pen? Put your hand behind your head. Where's your hand? . on your arm. . behind your neck. . between your hands. . under your book. . next to your book. . above your book. Example : TEACHER student: 1. on 2. in 3. under 4. next to 5. on 6. next to 7. above 8. next to 9. between 10. between 11. behind 12. Follow USING BE AND HAVE ■ 19

1-8 SUMMARY: SENTENCE PATTERNS WITH BE SUBJECT

+ BE + NOUN The noun or pronoun that comes at the beginning of a (a) i am a student . sentence is called the “subject.” SUBJECT + BE + ADJECTIVE Be is a “verb.” Almost all English sentences have a subject (b) He is intelligent . and a verb. (c) SUBJECT We + BE are + A LOCATION in class . Notice in the examples: There are three basic completions for sentences that begin with a subject + the verb be: t a noun , as in (a) ■ an adjective, as in (b) € an expression of location y as in (c) ■ EXERCISE 25: Write the form of be U am , is, or are) that is used in each sentence. Then write the grammar structure that follows be. 1 . We're students. 2. Anna is in Rome. 3. I'm hungry. 4. Dogs are animals. 5. Jack is at home. 6. He's sick. 7. They're artists. 8. I'm in class. 9. Gina is upstairs. 10. My pockets are BE + _ are. _ + _ ii _ + jm _ + ► _ + -► _ + -> _ + -► _ + -*■ _ + + COMPLETION n (a aounl ioc C a lasMinnl API (m adjective) empty. 20 ■ CHAPTER 1

■ EXERCISE 26— ORAL: Is and are are often contracted with nouns in spoken English. Listen to your teacher say the contractions in the following sentences and practice saying them yourself. 1 . Grammar is easy. ("Grammar's easy.") 2. Rita is a student. 9. My money is in my wallet. 10, Mr. Smith is a teacher. 1 1 . Tom is at home now. 3. My book is on the table. 4. My books are on the table. 5. The weather is cold today. 6. My brother is twenty-one years old. 7. The window is open. 8. The windows are open. 12. The sun is bright today. 13. My roommate is from Chicago. 14. My roommates are from Chicago. 15. My sister is a student in high school. 1 -9 YES/NO QUESTIONS WITH BE In a question, be comes in front of the subject. Punctuation: A question ends with a question mark (?). A statement ends with a period (.). When people answer a question, they usually give only a "short answer" (but sometimes they give a "long answer" too). Notice in the short answers below: After yes, be is not contracted with a pronoun.* After no, two contractions of be are possible with no differences in meaning, QUESTION SHORT ANSWER 4(LONG ANSWER) (c) Is she a student? — ! > Yes, she is** (She's a student,) — 1 > No, she's not . (She's not a student.) OB; — 1 > No, she isn't. (She isn't a student,)

■ EXERCISE 27: Make questions and give short answers. i-
A: _ _ /Are you tired? _ B: _ NO I'm not. _ (I'm not tired.) 2. A: Is
Anrm in your class ? _ B: Yes, she is ■ _ (Anna is in my class.) 3. A: _
B: _ (I'm not homesick.) 4. A: _ B: _ (Boh is homesick.) 5. A: _ B: _
(Sue isn't here today.) 6. A: _ B: _ (The students in this class are
intelligent.) 7. A: _ B: _ (The chairs in this room aren't comfortable.)
8. A: _ B: _ (I'm not married.) 9. A: _ B: _ (Tom and I are
roommates.) 10. A: _ B: _ (A butterfly is not a bird.) 22 ■ CHAPTER
1

■ EXERCISE 28— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Ask and answer questions. STUDENT a: Your book is open. Ask a classmate a question. Use “Are you . . . ?” student B: Your book is closed. Answer Student A’s question. Example: hungry student a; (Yoko), are you hungry? student b: Yes, I am. or: No, I’m not. 1. hungry Switch roles . 2. sleepy 15. in the back of the room 3. thirsty 16, in the front of the room 4. married 17. in class 5. single 18. in bed 6. tired 19. at the library 7. homesick 20. at home 8. lazy 21. in (name of this city) 9. cold 22. in (name of another city) 10. comfortable 23. in Canada 11. a student 24. in the United States 1 2. a teacher 25. from the United States 13. a famous actor 26. from (name of country) 14. in the middle of the room 27. a student at (name of school) ■ EXERCISE 29— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Ask a classmate a question. STUDENT A: STUDENT B: Example: STUDENT a:

STUDENT B: Example: STUDENT A: STUDENT 13 : Your book is open. Ask a classmate a question. Use “Are you . . . Your book is closed. Answer Student A’s question, a ball \ round (...) > is a ball round? Yes. it is. a ball \ square (...), is a ball square? No, it isn’t, or: No, it’s not. 1. a mouse \ big 2. sugar \ sweet 3. lemons \ sweet 4. ice cream and candy \ sour 5. the world \ flat 6. the world \ round 7. your desk \ comfortable 8. your shoes \ comfortable 9. your eyes \ brown 10. the sun \ bright today 11. the weather \ cold today Switch roles . 12. your pen \ heavy 13. apples \ expensive 14. diamonds \ cheap 15. English grammar \ easy 16. the floor in this room \ clean 1 7. butterflies \ beautiful 18. turtles \ intelligent 19. your dictionary \ under your desk 20. your books \ on your desk 21 . your desk \ in the middle of the room 22. your pen \ in your pocket USING BE AND HAVE ■

| MO QUESTIONS WITH **Where** : USING **WHERE** **Where** asks about location. **Where** comes at the beginning of the question, in front of **be**. QUESTION SHORT ANSWER + (LONG ANSWER) **BE** + SUBJECT (a) Is the book on the table? * Yes, it is . (The book is on the table.) (b) Are the books on the table? * Yes> they are . (The books are on the table,) **WHERE** + **BE** + SUBJECT (c) Where is the book? > On the table * (The book is on the table.) On the table » (The books are on the table.) M EXERCISE 30: 1. A: B: 2. A: B: 3. A: B: 4. A: B: 5. A: B: 6. A: B: 7. A: B: 8. A: B: 9. A: B: 10. A: B: Make questions. Is Kate at home? _ Yes, she is. (Kate is at home.) Where is Kate? _ At home. (Kate is at home.) Yes, it is. (Cairo is in Egypt.) In Egypt. (Cairo is in Egypt.) Yes, they are. (The students are in class today.) In class. (The students are in class today.) On Main Street. (The post office is on Main Street.) Yes, it is. (The train station is on Grand Avenue.) Over there. (The bus stop is over there.) At the zoo. (Sue and Ken are at the zoo today.) 24 ■ CHAPTER 1

■ EXERCISE 31 —ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Ask a classmate a question. Use where. Example: your pen STUDENT a: Where is your pen? STUDENT b: (free response) 1. your grammar book 2. your dictionary 3. your money 4. your books 5. (...) 6. (...) and (...) 7. your sunglasses 8. your pen 9. your apartment 10. your parents 11. the post office 12. (the names of places in this city: a store, landmark, restaurant, etc.) ■ EXERCISE 32— ORAL: Ask and answer questions using where and the map of North America. Example: Washington, D.C. student A: Where's Washington, D.C.? STUDENT B: (Pointing at the map) It's here. > Suggestions: 1. New York City 2. Los Angeles 3. Montreal 4. Miami 5. Toronto \ 6. Washington, D. C. 7. the Great Lakes 8. the Rocky Mountains 9. the Mississippi River 10. Mexico City Z/_ 'A G\ to . ou (?C Sty A A \$/■ fJ'V\ V ^ t/'Nd yff h S'v, rfr " . § ■' o p) ~ / ^ O / O 0\ V; i \ { (W\ i yf \ V r •y Washington. D.C. / USING BE AND HAVE U 25

1-11 USING HAVE AND HAS SINGULAR PLURAL / (a) /

have a pen. (0 We have pens. you see 1 \ + have (b) You have a pen. (g) You have pens. they J 1 (O She has a pen. (h) They have pens. W He has a pen. she J I («■*) It has blue ink. he > + has u J

1 EXERCISE 33: Complete the sentences. Use have and has. 1 . We llQVe _ grammar books. 2. I _ 3. Kate. 4. You _ 5. Bob _ a dictionary. _ _ a blue pen. She 6. Anna and Bob a pen in your pocket. . a notebook on his desk. _ notebooks. They 7* Samir is a student in our class. He _ 8. I _ a grammar book. It a blue notebook too. a red grammar book, _ a red cover. pens too. 9. You and I arc students. We _ 10. Mike _ _ _ a wallet in his pocket. Sara books on our desks. a wallet in her purse. 1 1 . Nadia isn't in class today because she _ the flu. 12. Mr. and Mrs. Johnson _ two daughters. 26 ■ CHAPTER 1

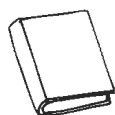
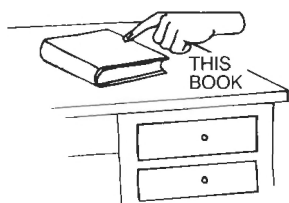
M2 USING MY, YOUR, HIS, HER, OUR, THEIR SINGULAR
PLURAL (a) I have a book. My book is red.

■ EXERCISE 35: Complete the sentences. Use have or has. Use my, your, her, his, our, or their. 1. I have a book. My book is interesting. 2. Bob has a bookbag. bookbag is green. 3. You have a raincoat. raincoat is brown. 4. Kate has a raincoat. raincoat is red. 5. Ann and Jim are married. They have a baby. baby is six months old. 6. Ken and Sue have a daughter. daughter is ten years old. 7. John and I have a son. son is seven years old. 8. I have a brother. brother is sixteen. 9. We have grammar books. grammar books are red. 10. Tom and you have bookbags. bookbags are green. 11. Ann has a dictionary. dictionary is red. 12. Mike has a car. car is blue. ■ EXERCISE 36: Complete the sentences with my, your, her, his, our, or their. 1. Rita is wearing a blouse. blouse is light blue. 2. Tom is wearing a shirt. shirt is yellow and brown. 3. I am wearing jeans. jeans are blue. 4. Bob and Tom are wearing boots. boots are brown. 5. Sue and you are wearing dresses. dresses are red. 6. Ann and I are wearing sweaters. sweaters are green. 7. You are wearing shoes. shoes are dark brown. 8. Sue is wearing a skirt. skirt is black. 9. John is wearing a belt. belt is white. 28 u CHAPTER 1

10. 11. 12. Sue and Ann are wearing slacks. Tom is wearing slacks. _ I am wearing earrings. _ _ slacks are dark gray. slacks are dark blue, earrings are gold. VOCABULARY CHECKLIST
COLORS CLOTHES JEWELRY black belt bracelet blue, dark blue, light blue blouse earrings blue green boots necklace brown, dark brown, light brown coat ring gray, dark gray, light gray dress watch/wristwatch green, dark green, light green gloves orange hat pink jacket purple jeans red pants tan, beige sandals white shirt yellow shoes gold skirt silver slacks suit sweater tie, necktie T-shirt

■ EXERCISE 37 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Name some of the colors and then some of the articles of clothing and jewelry in the room. Then describe an article of clothing/jewelry and its color, using this pattern: possessive adjective + noun + is + color + color
Examples: teacher: Look at Ali. Tell me about his shirt. What color is his shirt? student: His shirt is blue. teacher: Look at Rosa. What is this? student: A sweater. teacher: Tell me about her sweater. What color is it? student: Her sweater is red. teacher: Look at me. What am I touching? STUDENT: Your shoes. teacher: Tell me about the color. student: Your shoes are brown. USING BE AND HAVE 29

M3 USING THIS AND THAT (a) I have a book in my hand. This book is red, (b) I see a book on your desk. That book is blue (c) This is my book. (d) That is your book. this book ® the book is near me. that book - the book is not near me. (e) That \ her book. contraction: that is = that's ■ EXERCISE 38— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED) : Use this and that. Touch and point to things in the classroom. Example: book Response: This is my book. That is your book. 1 . book 2. pen 3. notebook 4. purse 5. dictionary 6. bookbag 7. coat 8. hat 9, pencil 10. pencil sharpener I 1 . watch 12. nose ■ EXERCISE 39— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Use this and that . Touch and point to things in the classroom. Example: red \ yellow Response: l'his (book) is red, That (shirt) is yellow. i. red \ blue 7. red \ pink 2. red \ green 8. dark blue \ light blu 3. red \ yellow 9. black \ gray 4. blue \ black 10. gold \ silver 5. white \ black 1 1 . dark brown \ tan 6. orange \ green 12. purple \ red 30 ■ CHAPTER 1



THAT BOOK

B EXERCISE 40: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. 1. (This, These) ThCSC _ _ books belong to me. (That , f Those) That . _ book belongs to Kate. 2. (This, These) _ coat is black. (Thai, "Those) _ coats are tan. 3. (This, These) _ _ _ earrings are gold. (That, Those) _ earrings arc silver. 4. (This, These) _ pencil belongs to Alex. (That, Those) _ pencil belongs to Alice. 5. (This, These) _ sunglasses belong to me. (That, Those) _ sunglasses belong to you. 6. (This, These) _ exercise is easy, (That, Those) _ exercises are hard. 7. Studenrs are sitting at (this, these) _ desks, but (that, those) _ desks are empty. 8. (This, These) _ book is on my desk. (That, Those) _ books are on your desk. ■ EXERCISE 41— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Use these and those . Touch and point to things in the classroom. Example: books Response: These are my books. Those are your books. 1. books 2. pens 3. shoes 4. earrings 5. jeans 6. things 7. glasses/sunglasscs 8. notebooks USING BE AND HAVE ■ 3/

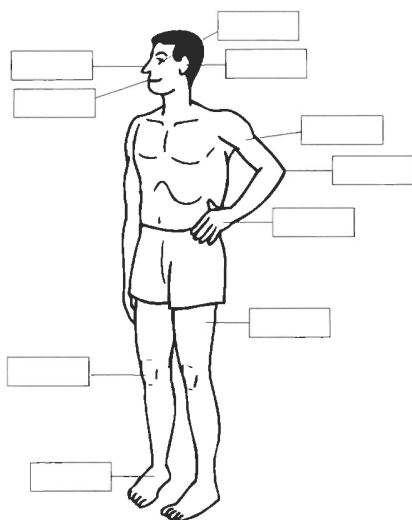
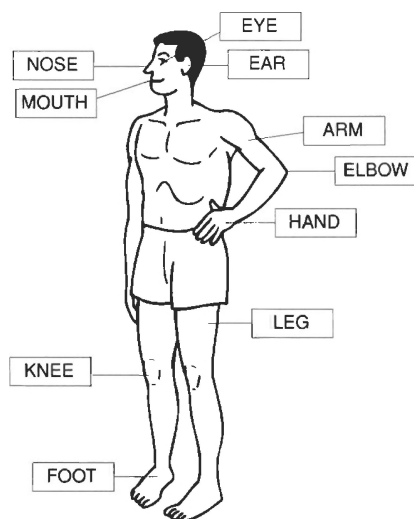
1-14 USING THESE AND THOSE

| | | | |
|---|-------------|---|--------------|
| | SINGULAR | | PLURAL |
| (a) My books are on my desk. These are my books. | <i>this</i> | ➤ | <i>these</i> |
| (b) Your books are on your desk. Those are your books. | <i>that</i> | ➤ | <i>those</i> |

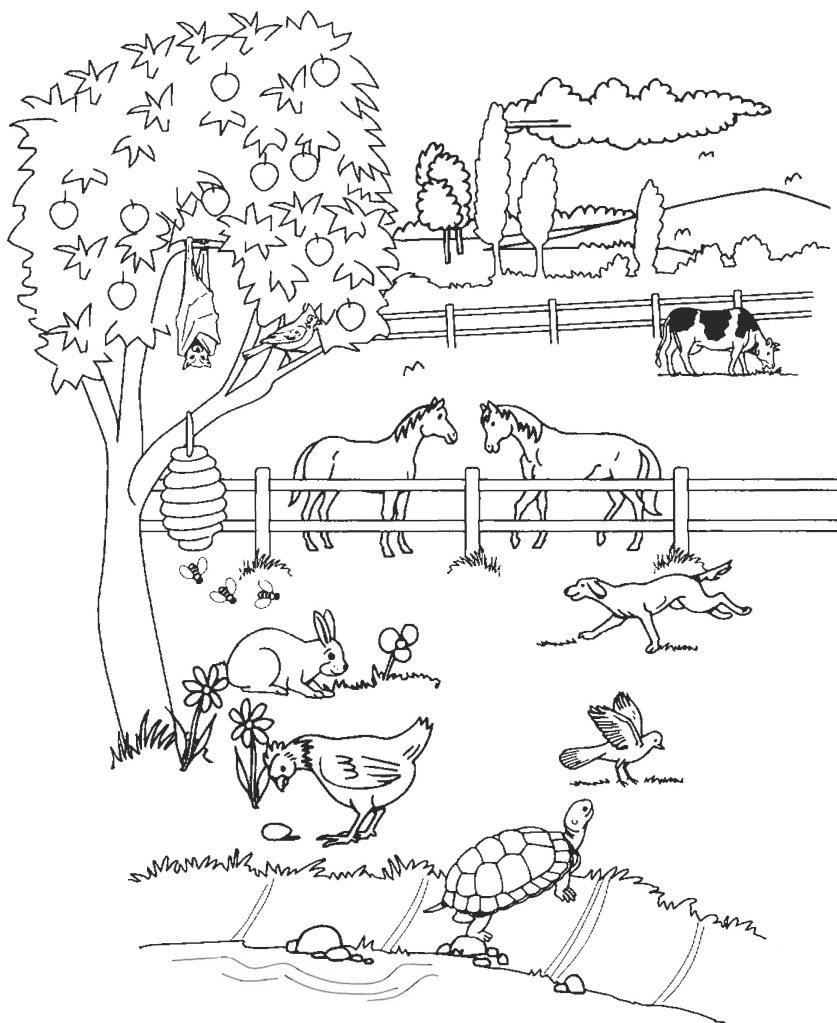
■ EXERCISE 42— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Use this, that, these, or those. Touch and point to things in the classroom.
 Example: book Response: This is my book. That is your book.
 Example: books Response: These are my books. Those are your books.
 book 6. coats books 7. shoes dictionary 8. wallet pens 9. purse pen 10. glasses 1-15 ASKING QUESTIONS WITH WHAT AND WHO + BE (a) What is this (thing)? -► It's a pen. What asks about things. (b) Who is that (man)? * That's Mr. Lee, Who asks about people. note: In questions with what and who , (c) What are those (things)? > They're pens. # is followed by a singular word. (d) Who are they? They're Mr. and Mrs. Lee. * are is followed by a plural word. (e) this? CONTRACTIONS (f) Who's that man? who is ~ who's what is - what's ■ EXERCISE 43: 1. A: B: 2. A: B: 3. A: B: 4. A: B: 5. A: B: Complete the questions with what or who and is or are. _ Who is _ that woman? She's my sister. Her name is Sonya. _ those things? They're ballpoint pens. _ that? That's Ms. Walenski. _ this? That's my new notebook. Look at those people over there. _ they? I'm not sure, but I think they're new students from Thailand, 32 CHAPTER 1

6. A: _ your name? B: Anita. 7. A; _ your grammar teacher?
B: Mr. Cook. 8. A: _ your favorite teachers? B: Mr. Cook and Ms.
Rosenberg. 9. A: _ a rabbit? B: It's a small furry animal with big
ears. 10. A: _ bats? • B; They're animals that can fly. They're not
birds. ■ EXERCISE 45— ORAL: Talk about things and people in the
classroom. Ask your classmates the given questions. Example :
STUDENT a: STUDENT B: Example: STUDENT A: STUDENT B:
What's this? What's this? (pointing at his/her grammar book) It's
your grammar book. Who's that? Who's that? (indicating a
classmate) That's Ivan. 1 . What's this? 2. What's that? 3. Who's
this? 4. Who's that? 5. What are those? 6. What are these? USING
BE AND HAVE 33

■ EXERCISE 46: Study the names of the parts of the body in Picture A. Then cover Picture A and write in the names of the body parts in Picture B. Picture A Picture B ■ EXERCISE 47—
 ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Use this, that, these, and those. Example:
 hand teacher: What is this? (The teacher indicates her or his hand.)
 student: That is your hand. OR teacher: What is that? (The teacher indicates a student's hand.)
 student: This is my hand. 1. nose 6.
 knee 2. eyes 7. foot 3. arm 8. shoulder 4. elbow 9. fingers 5. legs
 10. ears 34 m CHAPTER 1



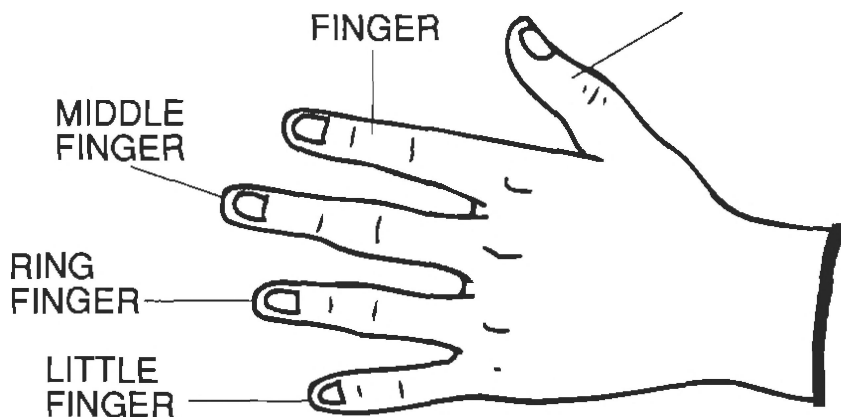
■ EXERCISE 48— ORAL: Ask a classmate questions about the picture. Use What's this? What's that? What are these? What are those? and any other questions you want to ask. Example: STUD] - NT A: STUDENT B: STUDENT A; STUDENT b: Etc. What's this? (pointing at the tree) That's a tree. What are those? (pointing at the horses) Those are horses. USING BE AND HAVE M 35



■ EXERCISE 49: Draw a picture and then answer a classmate's question about it. Use What's this? What's that? What are these? What are those? and any other questions you want to ask. Suggestions for the picture you draw: 1. this classroom 2. some of the people in this classroom 3. your family 4. your room / apartment / house 5. a scene at a zoo 6. an outdoor scene ■

EXERCISE 50— REVIEW: Underline the NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES, and PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES. PART I: Find the nouns and adjectives. noun adj. 1. Balls are round. 2. Flowers are beautiful. 3. Birds have wings. 4. Bats aren't birds. 5. Bats aren't blind. PART II: Find the pronouns and possessive adjectives. pronoun poss. adj. 6. Bats have wings, but they aren't birds. Bats use their wings to fly. 7. I have a grammar book. It's red. My dictionary is red too. 8. My book is red, and your book is red too. 9. An egg isn't square. It's oval. 10. Tina has three sons. She is at home today. They are at school. Her sons are good students. 36 ■ CHAPTER 1

PART III Find the prepositional phrases. prep. phr. 1 1 .
Libya is in Africa. 12. Po is from Beijing. 13. My books are on my
desk. 14. I'm at school. 15. My middle finger is between my index
finger and my ring finger. THUMB INDEX ■ EXERCISE 51 —
REVIEW: Correct the mistakes in the sentences. are 1. We -is-
students. 2. I no hungry. 3. I am student. He is teacher. 4. Yoko not
here. She at school. 5. I'm from Mexico. Where you are from? 6.
Roberto he is a student in your class? 7. Those pictures are
beautifuls. 8. This is you dictionary. It not my dictionary. USING BE
AND HAVE ■ 37



9. Mr. Lee have a brown coat. 10. They are n't here today.
 11. This books are expensive. 12. Cuba is a island. 13. Florida and Korea is peninsula. EXERCISE 52 — REVIEW: Choose the correct completion. Example : Those B expensive. A. book is B. books are C. books is 1. Ann a grammar book. A. have B. is c. has 2. This floor A. dirty is B. dirty c. is dirty 3. yellow. A. A banana are B. A banana is c. Bananas is 4. Bob: _ is your apartment? Ann: It's on Forest Street. A. What B. Where C. Who 5. Mike is engineer. A. a B. an C. on 6. Give this to Ann. It is dictionary. A. she B. an C. her 7. Yoke: these? Gina: My art books. Fm taking an art history course this semester. A. What is B. Who are C. What are 8. Tom: Are you hungry? Sue: Yes, A. I'm B. I'm not C. I am 9. _ books are really expensive. A. Those B. They C. This 38 ■ CHAPTER 1

B. What's C. Where's 10. Tina: _ that? Jim: That's Paul Carter. A. Who's 1 1 . That is _ . A. a mistakes 12. Paul: . in your class? Eric: No. A. Mr. Kim B. mistakes B. Is Mr. Kim C. a mistake C. Mr. Kim is he EXERCISE 53 — REVIEW: Complete the sentences with am, is, or are. Use not if necessary. 1 . Lemons _ vegetables. 2. A lemon _ a kind of fruit. 3. I _ 4. We 5. Eggs. 6. Chickens 7. Salt _ 8. Soccer . from the United States. _ _ human beings. _ oval. _ birds, but bats _ sweet. Sugar. _ a sport. 9. Soccer and basketball 10. Africa _ sports. . a country. It birds. sweet. a continent. ■ EXERCISE 54— REVIEW: Complete the sentences. 1. A: A[£L you a student at this school? B: Yes, A: Where you from? B: I Korea. 2. A: B; A: B: Where _ your book? Yoko _ it. Where _ your notebooks? AJi and Roberto _ my notebooks. USING BE AND HAVE ■ 39

3. A: _ this? B: It picture of mv familv. A: this? B: That's father. A: B: they? My brother and sister. 4. A: Are vou a ? B: No. not. I'm a 5. A: Are expensive? B: Yes. A: Is expensive? B: No. 6. A: B: What's ? I don't know. Ask someone else. A: What's ? B: It's 7. A: B: an animal? Yes. A: B: animals? Yes. A: B: an insect? No, it's not. It's an animal too. 8. A: B: countries in Asia? Yes, they are. A: B: a country in South America? Yes, it is. A: a countrv in Africa? B: No, it's not. It's a country in 40 U CHAPTER 1

9. A: Where _ ? B: He's _ . A: Where _ _? B: They're _ . 10. A: _ a turtle? B: Just a minute. Let me look in my dictionary. Okay. A turtle is a reptile. A: _ a reptile? B: _ an animal that has cold blood. A: _ snakes reptiles too? B: Yes. _ reptiles too. ■ EXERCISE 55—
 REVIEW: Work in pairs. student a: Give directions. Your book is open. student b: Draw what Student A tells you to draw. Your book is closed. 1 . Draw a ball on a box. 2. Draw a ball above a box. 3. Draw1 a ball next to a box. 4. Draw a ball under a box. 5. Draw a ball in a box. 6. Draw a banana between two apples. 7. Draw a square above a circle. 8. Draw a flower. Draw a tree next to the flower. Draw a bird above the tree. Draw a turde under the flower. Switch roles. 9. Draw a circle next to a triangle. 10. Draw a circle in a triangle. 1 1 . Draw a circle above a triangle. 12. Draw a triangle between two circles. 13. Draw a circle under a triangle. 14. Draw an apple on a banana. Draw an apple above a banana. 15. Draw a tree. Draw a person next to the tree. Draw the sun above the tree. 16. Draw a cloud. Draw a bird under the cloud. Draw a bird above the cloud. Draw a bird in the cloud. USING BE AND HAVE ■ 41

■ EXERCISE 56— REVIEW: Work in pairs. student a: Give directions. Use the given prepositions. student b: Perform the action. Example: in student a: Put your pen in your pocket. STUDENT B: (Student B puts her/his pen in her/his pocket.) Switch roles. 1. in 8. in 2. on 9. between 3. above 10. behind 4. under 11. above 5. between 12. on 6. next to 13. next to 7. behind 14. under

EXERCISE 57 — REVIEW: Complete the sentences in this composition by Carlos. (1) My name is _ Carlos. / QU1 »k /Vn from Mexico. (2) _ _ _ _ a student. _ twenty years old. (3) My family lives in Mexico City. _ father _ (6) (7) (8) (9) (10) (11) (12) (14) (15) (16) (4) businessman. (5) _ fifty-one years old. a housewife. forty-nine years old. mother I _ two sisters and one brother. The names of my sisters Rosa and Patricia. Rosa _ a teacher. _ a student. _ brother twenty-eight years old. Patricia eighteen years old. The name of. Pedro. an engineer. He is married. He two children. I live in a dormitory. (13) Pine Street. My address _ a tall building. on name is Bob. 3225 Pine St. I live with my roommate. _ from Chicago. _ nineteen years old. I like my classes. _ interesting. I like . (17) classmates. friendly. 42 ■ CHAPTER 1

■ EXERCISE 58 — REVIEW: Write a composition by completing the sentences. (Use your own paper.) note: A sentence begins with a capital letter (a big letter) and a sentence ends with a period (.)* My name _ . I _ from _ . _ a student. _ years old. My family lives in _ . _ father _ years old. _ mother _ years old. I have _ sister(s) and _ brother(s). The name(s) of my sister(s) _ . _ is a/an _ . _ years old. (Write about each sister.) The name(s) of my brother (s) _ . _ is a _ . _ years old. (Write about each brother.) I live in (a dormitory, a house, an apartment) _ . My address's _ . I live with _ . _ name(s) _ . I like _ classes. _ are _ and _ . I like _ classmates. They _ .

*In British English, a period is called a full stop.” USING BE AND HAVE 43

CHAPTER 2 Expressing Present Time (Part 1) 44 rn
CHAPTER 2

2-1 FORM AND BASIC MEANING OF THE SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE

| | | | |
|---|---|-------------------------|--|
| | SINGULAR | PLURAL | Notice: The verb after <i>she, he, it</i> (3rd person singular) has a final <i>-s</i> : <i>talks</i> . |
| 1st PERSON | I <i>talk</i> | we <i>talk</i> | |
| 2nd PERSON | you <i>talk</i> | you <i>talk</i> | |
| 3rd PERSON | she <i>talks</i>
he <i>talks</i>
it <i>rains</i> | they <i>talk</i> | |
| (a) I <i>eat</i> breakfast every morning .
(b) Ann <i>speaks</i> English every day .
(c) We <i>sleep</i> every night .
(d) They <i>go</i> to the beach every weekend . | | | The simple present tense expresses habits. In (a): Eating breakfast is a habit, a usual activity. <i>Every morning</i> = Monday morning, Tuesday morning, Wednesday morning, Thursday morning, Friday morning, Saturday morning, and Sunday morning. |



CHAPTER 2

Expressing Present Time
(Part 1)

■ EXERCISE 1 : What do you do every morning? On the left, there is a list of habits. On the right, make a list of your habits every morning. Put them in order. What do you do first, second, third, etc.? MY HABITS EVERY MORNING HABITS (a) eat breakfast (b) go to class (c) put on my clothes (d) drink a cup of coffee/tea (e) shave (f) put on my make-up (g) take a shower/bath (h) get up (i) pick up my books (j) walk to the bathroom (k) watch TV (l) look in the mirror ✓ (m) turn off the alarm clock (n) go to the kitchen/ the cafeteria (o) brush/comb my hair (p) say good-bye to my roommate/ wife/husband (q) brush my teeth (r) do exercises (s) wash my face (t) stretch, yawn, and rub my eyes (u) other habits 1 . The alarm clock rings. 2. / turn off the glarm clock. 3. _ 4. _ 5. _ 6. _ 7. _ 8. _ 9. _ 10. _ 11. _ 12. _ 13. _ 14. _ 15. _ 16. _ 17. _ 18. _ 19. _ 20. _ 21. _ 22. _ EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 45

*Some frequency adverbs can also come at the beginning or at the end of a sentence. For example: Sometimes I get up at seven. I sometimes get up at seven, I get up at seven sometimes. .Also: See Chart 2-3 for the use of frequency adverbs with be. Sun. Mon. Tues. Wed. Thurs. Fri. Sat. Ann always drinks tea with lunch. 3 3 3 3 < 3 3 3 Bob usually drinks tea with lunch. 3 s 3 < 3 3 3 Maria often drinks tea with lunch. s 3 3 3 3 Gary sometimes drinks tea with lunch. 3 3 3 Ali seldom drinks tea with lunch. 3 3 Georgia rarely drinks tea with lunch. 3 Joy never drinks tea with lunch. ■

EXERCISE 2— ORAL: Find the subjects and verbs in the sentences. Then add the frequency adverbs in italics to the sentences. 1. always 2. usually 3. often 4. never 5. seldom 6. sometimes 7. usually 8. rarely I eat breakfast. ^ / always eat breakfast . I get up at 7:00. 1 drink two cups of coffee in the morning. 1 eat carrots for breakfast. 1 watch TV in the morning. I have tea with dinner. Bob eats lunch at the cafeteria. Ann drinks tea. 46 ■ CHAPTER 2

2-2 USING FREQUENCY ADVERBS: ALWAYS, USUALLY, OFTEN, SOMETIMES, SELDOM, RARELY, NEVER

| <i>always</i>
100% | <i>usually</i>
99%–90% | <i>often</i>
90%–75% | <i>sometimes</i>
75%–25% | <i>seldom</i>
25%–10% | <i>rarely</i>
10%–1% | <i>never</i>
0% |
|--|---------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|-------------------------|--------------------|
| SUBJECT + FREQUENCY ADVERB + SIMPLE PRESENT VERB | | | | <i>Always, usually, often, sometimes, seldom, rarely and never</i> are called “frequency adverbs.” They come between the subject and the simple present verb.* | | |
| (a) Bob | <i>always</i> | <i>comes</i> to class. | | | | |
| (b) Mary | <i>usually</i> | <i>comes</i> to class. | | | | |
| (c) We | <i>often</i> | <i>watch</i> TV at night. | | | | |
| (d) I | <i>sometimes</i> | <i>drink</i> tea with dinner. | | | | |
| (e) They | <i>seldom</i> | <i>go</i> to the movies. | | | | |
| (f) Anna | <i>rarely</i> | <i>makes</i> a mistake. | | | | |
| (g) I | <i>never</i> | <i>eat</i> paper. | | | | |

9. always 10. often 11. never I do my homework. We listen to music after dinner. John and Sue watch TV in the afternoon. 12, always The students speak English in the classroom.

■ EXERCISE 3— ORAL Use always, usually, often, sometimes, seldom, rarely, and never to talk about your activities (your habits) after 5:00 pm. every day.

1. eat dinner 15. study 2. eat dinner at six o'clock 16. study English grammar 3. eat dinner at eight o'clock 17. drink milk 4. watch TV 18. play with my children 5. listen to music 19. kiss my husband/wife 6. go to a movie 20. have a snack 7. go shopping 21. go to bed 8. go dancing 22. go to bed at eleven o'clock 9. go swimming 23. go to bed after midnight 10. spend time with my friends 24. go to bed early 11. talk on the phone 25. go to bed late 12. speak English 26. turn off the lights 13. write a letter 27. dream 14. read a newspaper 28. dream in English

EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 47

2-3 USING FREQUENCY ADVERBS WITH *BE*

| | |
|---|---|
| SUBJECT + <i>BE</i> + FREQUENCY ADVERB | |
| Tom + <i>is</i> + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{always} \\ \text{usually} \\ \text{often} \\ \text{sometimes} \\ \text{seldom} \\ \text{rarely} \\ \text{never} \end{array} \right\}$ + late for class. | Frequency adverbs follow <i>be</i> . |
| SUBJECT + FREQUENCY ADVERB + OTHER SIMPLE PRESENT VERBS | |
| Tom + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{always} \\ \text{usually} \\ \text{often} \\ \text{sometimes} \\ \text{seldom} \\ \text{rarely} \\ \text{never} \end{array} \right\}$ + <i>comes</i> late. | Frequency adverbs come before all simple present verbs except <i>be</i> . |

■ EXERCISE 4: Add the frequency adverb in italics to the sentence. always 1. always Ann is on time for class. 2. always Ann comes to class on time. 3. often Sue is late for class. 4. often Sue comes to class late. 5. never Ron is happy. 6. never Ron smiles. 7. usually Bob is at home in the evening. 8. usually Bob stays at home in the evening. 9. seldom Tom studies at the library in the evening. 10. seldom Tom is at the library in the evening. 11. rarely I eat breakfast. 12. often I take the bus to school. 13. usually The weather is hot in July. 14. never Sue drinks coffee. 15. sometimes She drinks tea. ■ EXERCISE 5— WRITTEN: Describe a typical day in your life, from the time you get up in the morning until you go to bed. Use the following words to show the order of your activities: then, next, at .. o'clock, after that, later. Example: I usually get up at seven-thirty. I shave, brush my teeth, and take a shower. Then I put on my clothes and go to the student cafeteria for breakfast. After that I go back to my room. I sometimes watch the news on TV. At 8:15 I leave the dormitory. I go to class. My class begins at 8:30. I'm in class from 8:30 to 11:30. After that I eat lunch. I usually have a sandwich and a cup of tea for lunch. (Continue until you complete your day.) 48 ■ CHAPTER 2

2-4 PRONUNCIATION OF FINAL -S: /Z/ AND /S/ VOICED

VOICELESS Some sounds are “voiced.” You use your voice box to make voiced sounds. For example, the sound /b/ comes from your voice box. The final sounds in (a) are voiced. (a) /b/ rub (b) /p/ sleep /d / ride /t/ write /v/ drive /f/ laugh Some sounds are “voiceless.” You don’t use your voice box. You push air through your teeth and lips. For example, the sound /p/ comes from air through your lips. The final sounds in (b) are voiceless. (c) rubs = rub/z/ (d) sleeps = sleepis/ rides = ride/z/ writes = write/ s/ drives = drive/z / laughs = laugh/ s/ Final -s is pronounced /z / after voiced sounds, as in (c). Final -s is pronounced /s/ after voiceless sounds, as in (d). ■

EXERCISE 6: The final sounds of the verbs in these sentences are “voiced.” Final -s is pronounced /z/. Read the sentences aloud. 1. Cindy rides the bus to school. ride/z/ 2. Jack usually drives his car to school. drive/z/ 3. Rain falls. l'all/ z/ 4. Sally often dreams about her boyfriend. dream/z/ 5.

Sometimes Jim runs to class. run/z/ 6. Tina wears blue jeans every day. wear/z/ 7. Ann always sees Mr. Lee at the market. see/z/

EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 49

Find the verb in each sentence. Pronounce it. Then read the sentence aloud. 8. The teacher often stands in the front of the room. 9. George lives in the dormitory. 10. Jean rarely smiles. 11. Sam always comes to class on time. 12. It rains a lot in Seattle. 13. Jack always remembers his wife's birthday. 14. It snows in New York City in the winter. ■ EXERCISE 7: The final sounds of the verbs in these sentences are "voiceless." Final -s is pronounced /s/. Read the sentences aloud. 1. Mike sleeps for eight hours every night. stop p/s/ 2. Our teacher always helps us. stop t/s/ 3. Jack writes a letter to his girlfriend every day. stop t/s/ 4. Sara never laughs. stop t/s/ 5. Sue usually drinks a cup of coffee in the morning. stop t/s/ 6. Kate walks to school every day. stop t/s/ Find the vowel in each sentence. Pronounce it. Then read the sentence aloud. 7. My child often claps her hands. 8. Olga always bites her pencil in class. 9. Maria usually gets up at seven-thirty* 10. Yoko asks a lot of questions in class. 11. Ahmed always talks in class. 12. Sue coughs because she smokes. 50 ■ CHAPTER 2

2-5 SPELLING AND PRONUNCIATION OF FINAL -ES

SPELLING PRONUNCIATION -sh (a) push > pushes push/dzj -ch (b) teach > teaches teach jx/J -ss (c) kiss > kisses kissl^zi -x (d) fix > fixes jixhzj Ending of verb: - sh , -ch, -ss, - x . Spelling: add -es.

Pronouneiaiiion: ix/.i ■ EXERCISE 8: Use the viiRtts in italics to

complete the sentences. i. brush Anita brushes her hair everv morning. 2. teach Alex English. 3. fix A mechanic cars. 4. drink Sonya tea every afternoon. 5. watch Joon-Kee often television at night. 6. kiss Peter always his children goodnight. 7. u 'ear Tina usually jeans to class. 8. zvash Eric seldom dishes. 9. zvaik Jessica her doff twice each day. 10. stretch, When Don pets up in the

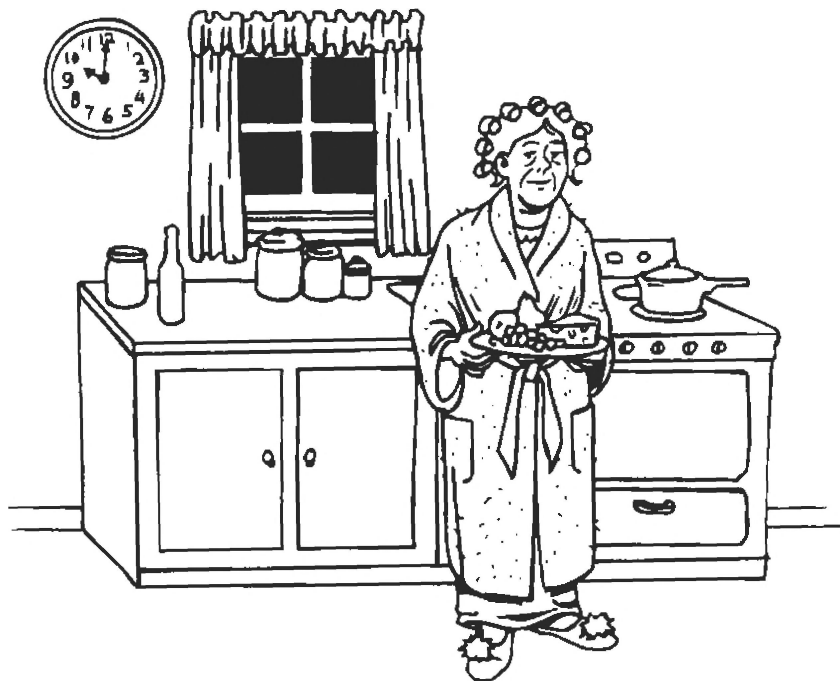
momma, he yawn and 2-6 ADDING FINAL -S/-FS TO WORDS THAT

END IN - Y (a) cry * cries tiy > tries End of verb: consonant + - y .

Spelling: change ,y to i, add -es. (b) pay ► pays enjoy r enjoys End of verb: vowel + -y. Spelling: add - s . EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 51

EXERCISE 9: Use the words in italics to complete the sentences. 1 . pay, always Boris OIWOVS pQVS _ 2. cry, seldom 3. study 4. stay, usually 5. fly Our baby . Paul _ Jean _ Kunio is a pilot. He . 6. carry, always Carol _ Jack _ Ann _ 7. pray 8. bay, seldom 9. worry Tina is a good student, but she about her grades. his bills on time. _ at night. at the library every day. _ home at night. _ a plane. her books to class. every day. new clothes. 10. enjoy Don . good food. 2-7 IRREGULAR SINGULAR VERBS: HAS, DOES, GOES (a) I have a book. *he 1 (b) He has a book. . e j 11 J | + has /haez/ Have , do, and go have irregular forms for third person singular: have has do -* does go * goes (c) I do my work. she] (d) She does her work. he k J | + does ;doz/ (e) They go to school. she (f) She goes to school. he il J | + goes /gowz/ 52 CHAPTER 2

■ EXERCISE 10: Use the given verbs to complete the sentences. 1. do Pierre always does his homework. 2. do We always do our homework. 3. have Yoko and Kunio their books. 4. fiave Ali a car. 5. go BUI to school every dav. 6. go My friends often to the beach. 7. do Anna seldom her homework. 8. do We exercises in class evrv day. 9. go, go Roberto downtown every weekend. He and his wife shopping. a snack every night around ten. 10. have Jessica EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) 53



■ EXERCISE 1 1— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): 'Talk about everyday activities using the given VERB. Example: teacher: student a: teacher: STUDENT b: eat I eat breakfast every morning. What does (...) do every morning? He/She eats breakfast. teacher: STUDENT a: teacher: STUDENT B: eat I always eat dinner at the student cafeteria. What does (. . .) always do? He/She always eats dinner at the student cafeteria. 54 ■ CHAPTER 2

2-8 SUMMARY: SPELLING AND PRONUNCIATION OF **-S** AND **-ES**

| SPELLING | PRONUNCIATION | |
|---|---|--|
| (a) rub → rubs
ride → rides
smile → smiles
dream → dreams
run → runs
wear → wears
drive → drives
see → sees
snow → snows | <i>rub/ɪz/</i>
<i>ride/ɪz/</i>
<i>smile/ɪz/</i>
<i>dream/ɪz/</i>
<i>run/ɪz/</i>
<i>wear/ɪz/</i>
<i>drive/ɪz/</i>
<i>see/ɪz/</i>
<i>snow/ɪz/</i> | To form a simple present verb in 3rd person singular, you usually add only -s , as in (a) and (b).

In (a): -s is pronounced /ɪz/. The final sounds in (a) are <i>voiced</i> . |
| (b) drink → drinks
sleep → sleeps
write → writes
laugh → laughs | <i>drink/s/</i>
<i>sleep/s/</i>
<i>write/s/</i>
<i>laugh/s/</i> | In (b): -s is pronounced /s/. The final sounds in (b) are <i>voiceless</i> . |
| (c) push → pushes
teach → teaches
kiss → kisses
fix → fixes | <i>push/əz/</i>
<i>teach/əz/</i>
<i>kiss/əz/</i>
<i>fix/əz/</i> | End of verb: -sh, -ch, -ss, -x
Spelling: add -es
Pronunciation: /əz/ |
| (d) cry → cries
study → studies | <i>cry/ɪz/</i>
<i>study/ɪz/</i> | End of verb: consonant + -y
Spelling: change y to i , add -es |
| (e) pay → pays
buy → buys | <i>pay/ɪz/</i>
<i>buy/ɪz/</i> | End of verb: vowel + -y
Spelling: add -s |
| (f) have → has
go → goes
do → does | <i>/hæz/</i>
<i>/ɡowz/</i>
<i>/dɒz/</i> | The 3rd person singular forms of <i>have</i> , <i>go</i> , and <i>do</i> are irregular. |

eat 6. study 1 1 . listen to go 7. get up 12. wash drink 8. watch 13. put on brush 9. speak 14. carry have 10. do 15. kiss ■

EXERCISE 12— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Tell a classmate about your usual habits in the morning. (Look at the list you made for Exercise 1 if you wish.) Your classmate will then write a summary of your daily morning habits. Directions: STUDENT a: Tell Student B ten to fifteen things you do every morning. student h: Take notes while Student A is talking. (You zwill use these notes later to write a paragraph about Student A's usual morning habits f Then switch roles. student B: Tell Student A fen to fifteen things you do every morning. STUDENT A: Take notes wliile Student B is talking. When you finish talking, each of you should write a paragraph about the other person's daily morning activities. Pay special attention to final - sf-es . EXERCISE 13: Complete die sentences. Use the words in parentheses. Use the simple present tens];. Pay special attention to singular and plural, to spelling, and to pronunciation of final -s/-es.

1 . The students (ask, often) often QSk 2. Pablo (study, usually) _ evening* 3 , Olga (bite) _ 4* Don (cash) _ questions in class. _ at die library every 5. Sometimes I (worry) . Sonya (worry, never) _ She (study) _ _ her fingernails when she is nervous. . a check at die bank once a week. _ about my grades at school. _ about her grades. . hard. 6. Ms. Jones and Mr. Anderson (teach) _ school. Ms. Jones (teach) _ 7. Birds (fly) _ . They (have) . at the local high math. wings. 8* A bird (fly) . _ . It (have) . wings. 9. Jason (do, always) . (go, never) _ his homework. He to bed until his homework is finished. EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 55

10. 11. 12. Mr. Cook (say, always) * _ neighbor in the morning. Ms. Chu (pay, always)* _ class. She (answer) _ hello to his attention in Sam (enjoy) . _ questions. She (listen) to the teacher. She (ask) _ questions. _ cooking. He (try, often) _ to make new recipes. He (like) . to have company for dinner. He (invite) . cook. He (have, usually) . _ me to dinner once a month. When I arrive, I (go) to the kitchen and (watch) _ him _ three or four pots on the stove. He (watch) . the pots carefully. He (make) (wash, always) . a big mess in the kitchen when he cooks. After dinner, he _ all the dishes and (clean) _ the kitchen. I (cook, never) _ It (be) _ too much trouble. But my friend Sam (love) _ to cook. •Pronunciation of says - /scz/. Pronunciation of pays = ,/ peyz/. 56 ■ CHAPTER 2



2-9 THE SIMPLE PRESENT: NEGATIVE (a) I do not drink coffee. negative: I We You do not do not drink coffee, drink coffee. we 1 you > + do not + main verb (b) They She do not does not drink coffee, drink coffee. they j He does not drink coffee. she) It does not drink coffee. he j it) 1 + does not + main verb Do and does are called "helping verbs/Notice in (b): In 3rd person singular, there is no -s on the main verb; the final s is part of does. incorrect: She does not drinks coffee. (c) J don't drink tea. contractions: do not = don't They don't have a car. does not ~ doesn't (d) He doesn't drink tea. People usually use contractions when they speak. Mary doesn't have a car. People often use contractions when they write. EXERCISE 14: Use the words in italics to make negative sentences. 1 . like, not 2. like , not Ingrid _ i don't like doesn't like 3. know, not Mary and Jim are strangers. Mary 4. need, not It's a nice day today. You umbrella. 5. snow, not It _ 6. speak, not I _ 7. be, not I _ 8. live, not Butterflies _ 9. have, not A butterfly . 10, be, not 11. be, not A butterfly Butterflies tea. tea. .Jim. your _ in Bangkok in the winter. French, hungry. _ long. _ a long life. _ large. _ large. 1 2. have, not We class every day. EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 57

13. have, not This city 14. be, not It _ 15. Tain, not It _ nice weather in the summer. . cold today. . every day. EXERCISE 15: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. Use the simple PRESENT TENSE. 1 . Alex (like) HkcS 2. Sara (know) _ , tea, but he (like, not) _ _ doesn'tlike. _ _ coffee. _ Ali, but she (know, not) _ Hiroshi. 3. Pablo and Maria (want) _ to stay home tonight. They (want, not) to go to a movie. 4. Robert (be, not) _ hungry. He (want, not) . a sandwich. 5. Mr. Smith (drink, not) _ (drink) _ twelve cups every day. coffee, but Mr. Jones 6. I (be, not) _ a lot of money. 7. This pen (belong, not) rich. I (have, not) . tome. It (belong) 8. My friends (live, not) to Pierre, in the dorm. They (have) _ an apartment. 9. It (be) _____ a nice day today. It (be, not) . (need, not) _ your coat. cold. You 10. Today (be) _ class today. a holiday. We (have, not) . 58 ■ CHAPTER 2

■ EXERCISE 16: Use verbs from the list to complete the sentences. Make all of the sentences negative by using **does + not** or **do + not**. carry go smoke do shave speak drink make eat put on
 1. Rob doesn't qq 2. My roommates are from Japan. They 3. Fred has a beard. He _ _ _ to school every day. Spanish. 4. Sue has a briefcase. She . 5. We _ in the morning. _ a bookbag to class. 6. Sally takes care of her health. She to class on Sunday. 7. Jane and Alex always have lunch at home. They cafeteria. cigarettes. _ at the 8. Sometimes I TV instead. 9. Jack is a careful writer. He spelling when he writes. 10. My sister likes tea, but she _ 11. I'm lazy. I _ my homework in the evening. I watch mistakes in coffee. 12. Sometimes Ann exercises in the morning. _ her shoes when she goes outside. She likes to walk barefoot in the grass. EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 59



■ EXERCISE 17— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Use not.
 teacher: STUDENT a: teacher: STUDENT B: eat breakfast every day I
 don't eat breakfast every day. Tell me about (Student A). She/He
 doesn't eat breakfast every day. 1 . walk to school every day 2.
 shave every day 3. read a newspaper every day 4. go shopping
 every day 5. study grammar every day 6. watch TV every day 7,
 write a letter every day 8, go dancing every day 9, drink coffee
 every day 1 0. eat lunch every day 1 1 . listen to music every day 1
 2. come to class every day EXERCISE 18 — ORAL: Use the given
 words to make truthful sentences. 1 . Grass \ be blue. -*■ Grass
 isn't blue. 2. Grass \ be green. Grass is green. 3. Dogs \ have tails, -
 ■ Dogs have tails. 4. People \ have tails. -► People don't have
 tails. 5. A restaurant \ sell shoes. 6. A restaurant \ serve food. 7.
 People \ wear clothes. 8. Animals \ wear clothes. 9. A child \ need
 love, food, care, and toys. 10. A child \ need a driver's license. 11.
 Refrigerators \ be hot inside. 12. Refrigerators \ be cold inside. 1 3.
 Electricity \ be visible. 14. Light \ be visible. 15. Fresh vegetables \
 be good for you. 16. Junk food** \ be good for you, 17. Cats \ have
 whiskers. 18. Birds \ have whiskers. 19. An architect \ design
 buildings. 20. Doctors \ design buildings. 2 1 . Doctors \ take care
 of sick people. 22. A bus \ carry people from one place to another.
 23. The weather \ be very hot today. 24. It \ be very cold today, 25.
 Glass \ break. 26. Rubber \ be flexible. 27. Rubber \ break. 28.
 English \ be an easy language to learn. People in this city \ be
 friendly. It \ rain a lot in this city. 3 1 . Apples \ have seeds. 32.
 Scientists \ have all the answers to the mysteries of the universe. 29
 30 * People is a plural noun. It takes a plural verb. ** Junk food is
 food that has a lot of fat and/or sugar, but little nutritional value.
 60 ■ CHAPTER 2

2-10 THE SIMPLE PRESENT: YES/NO QUESTIONS DO/
DOES + SUBJECT + (a) Do you MAIN VERB / *7re coffee?
QUESTION 1-ORMS, SIMPL.E PRESENT Do/ Do you Do iv e Do they
+ main verb (simple f own) (b) Does Bob like (c) Are you a
student? (d) incorrect: Do you be a student? coffee? Does s/ie] Does
he > + main verb (simple form) Does it) Notice in (b): The main
verb in the question does not have a final -s. The final -s is part of
does . incorrect: Does Bob likes coffee? When the main verb is a
form of be , do is not used. See Chart 1-9 for question forms with
be. QUESTION SHORT ANSWER + (LONG ANSWER) (e) Do you
like tea? ► Yes, I do. (I like tea,) No, I don't. (I don't like tea.) (0
Does Bob like tea? ► Yes, he does. (He likes tea.) No, he doesn't.
(He doesn't like tea.) Do, don't, does , and doesn't are used in the
short answers to yes / no questions in the simple present. ■

EXERCISE 19: Make questions. Give short answers. 1. A B 2. A B 3.
A B 4. A B 5. A B Do you like tea? Yes. I do. _ (I like tea.) Do you
like, coffee? No. / don't. _ (I don't like coffee.) (I don't speak
Japanese.) (Ann speaks French.) (Ann and Tom don't speak Arabic.)
EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 61

6. A: _ B: _ (I do exercises every morning,) 7. A: _ B: _ (I don't have a Spanish-English dictionary.) 8. A: _ B: _ (Sue has a cold.) 9. A: _ B: _ (The teacher comes to class every day,) 10. A: _ B: _ (Jim and Sue don't do their homework every day.) 11. A: _ B: _ (It rains a lot in April.) 12. A: _ B: _ (My parents live in Baghdad.) ■

EXERCISE 20— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Ask and answer questions. teacher; walk to school every day student A: Do you walk to school every day? STUDENT b: Yes, I do. or: No, I don't. student a: Does (Student B) walk to school every day? student c: Yes, he/she does, or: No, he/she doesn't. 1. walk to school every day 2. watch TV every day 3. eat breakfast every day 4. speak English every day 5. come to class every day 6. get up at seven o'clock every day 7. talk on the phone every day 8. go to the bank every day 9. wear blue jeans every day 10. have a car 11. have a bicycle 12. like ice cream 13. like (name of city) 14. live in (name of a hotel) 15. live in an apartment 16. go shopping every day ■

EXERCISE 21: Make questions. Give short answers. Use the names of your classmates in the questions. i. A: Does (Carlos) speak English? B: _ Yes/ he does. _ (He speaks English.) 62 ■

CHAPTER 2

2. A Poes (Yoko) speak Spanish! B; Nof she doesn't. _ (She doesn't speak Spanish.) 3. A: _ is (Alii in class today! _ _ B: A/or he isn't. _ (He isn't in class today.) 4. A: _ B: _ (He comes to class every day.) 5. A: _ B: _ (They're in class today.) 6. A: _ B: _ (She sits in the same seat every day.) 7. A; _ B: _ (He has a mustache.) 8. A: _ B: _ (She doesn't have a bicycle.) 9. A: _ B: _ (He's wearing blue jeans today.) 10. A; _ B: _ (He wears blue jeans every day.) 11. A: _ _ B: _ (They aren't from Indonesia.) 12: A: _ B: _ (They don't have dictionaries on their desks.) 13. A: _ _ B: _ (She's writing in her book right now.) 14. A: _ _ B: _ (She studies hard.) 15. A: _ B: _ (They speak English.) EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 63

2-1 1 THE SIMPLE PRESENT: ASKING INFORMATION
 QUESTIONS WITH WHERE (WHERE) + DO/DOES + SUBJECT +
 MAIN VERB SHORT ANSWER (a) Do they live in Tokyo" > y Yes ,
 they do. / No, they don't. (b) Where do they live? > In Tokyo . (c)
 Does Gina live in Rome? > Yes , she does, / No, she doesn't. (d)
 Where does Gina live? > In Rome. note: (a) and (e) are called
 yes/no questions.' ' The answer to these questions can b eyes or
 no. (b) and (d) are called "information questions. " The answer
 gives information. Where asks for information about place. Notice
 in the examples: The form of yes/no questions and information
 questions is the same: DO/DOES + SUBJECT - MAIN VERB ■
 EXERCISE 22: Make questions. 1. A: Does lean eat lunch at the
 cafeteria every, day? _ B: Yes, she does. (Jean eats lunch at the
 cafeteria every day.) 2. A: Where does lean eat lunch every/ day? _
 B: At the cafeteria. (Jean eats lunch at the cafeteria every day.) 3.
 A: _ B: At the post office. (Peter works at the post office,) 4. A: _ B:
 Yes, he does. (Peter works at the post office.) 5. A: _ B: Yes, I do, (I
 live in an apartment.) 6. A: _ B: In an apartment. (I live in an
 apartment.) 7. A: _ B; At a restaurant. (Bill eats dinner at a
 restaurant every day.) 8. A: _ B: In the front row. (I sit in the front
 row during class.) 9. A: _ B: At the University of Wisconsin. (Jessica
 goes to school at the University' of Wisconsin.) 10. A: _ B; On my
 desk. (My book is on my desk.) 64 CHAPTER 2

11. A: _ B: To class. (I go to class every morning.) 12. A: _ B: In class. (The students are in class right now.) 13. A: _ B: In Australia. (Kangaroos live in Australia.) ■ EXERCISE 23: — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Ask a classmate a question. Use where. Example: live student a: Where do you live? student b: (free response) 1. live 9. go after class 2. eat lunch every day 10. eat dinner 3* sit during class 11. be (name of a student in this room) 4. study at night 12. be (names of Vivo students) 5. go to school 13. be (name of a country or city) 6. buy school supplies 14. be (names of tzvo countries or cities) 7. buy your groceries 15. be (something a student owns) 8. go on weekends 16. be (some things a student owns) EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 65

2-12 THE SIMPLE PRESENT: ASKING INFORMATION

QUESTIONS WITH WHEN AND WHAT TIME Q-WORD* + no&sino + SUBJECT + MAIN VF-RB SHORT ANSWTR (a) When do you go to class? -> At nine o'clock. (b) What time do you go to class? -> At nine o'clock. (c) When does Anna eat dinner? At six p.m. ♦ (d) What time does Anna eat dinner? At six P.M. (e) What time do you usually go to class? The frequency adverb usually comes immediately after the subject in a question, QUESTION WORD + DOES/DO -\ - SUBJECT + USUALLY + MAIN VTRB *A "Q-word" is a "question word." Where, when, what, who, and why are examples of question words. ■ EXERCISE 24: Make questions.

1. A: B: When/What time do you eat breakfast? At 7:30 (I eat breakfast at 7:30 in the morning.) When/What time do you usually eat breakfast? At 7:00. (Alex usually eats breakfast at 7:00.) 3. A: _ B: At 6:45. (I get up at 6:45.) At 6:30. (Maria usually gets up at 6:30.) 5. A: _ B: At 8:15. (The movie starts at 8:15.) 6. A: B: U: A: B: Around 11:00. (I usually go to bed around 11:00.) 7. A: _ B: At half-past twelve. (I usually eat lunch at half-past twelve,) At 5:30. (The restaurant opens at 5:30.) 9. A: _ B: At 9:05. (The train leaves at 9:05.) Between 6:30 and 8:00. (I usually eat dinner between 6:30 and 8:00.) 66 ■ CHAPTER 2

11. A: _ B: At 10:00 km, (The library closes at 10:00 p.M. on Saturday.) 12. A: _ _ B: At a quarter past eight. (My classes begin at a quarter past eight.) ■ EXERCISE 25— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Ask a classmate a question. Use when or what time. Hxample: eat breakfast S'l'L'nnwT a: When/What time do you eat breakfast? S' it; ni- NT B: (free response) 1. get up 7. go back home 2. usually get up 8. get home 3. eat breakfast 9. have dinner 4. leave home in the morning 10. usually study in the evening 5. usually get to class 11. go to bed 6. eat lunch 2-13 SUMMARY: INFORMATION QUESTIONS WITH BE AND DO Q-WORD + hi-: + SUBIHCT long answer (a) Where is Thailand? ► Thailand is in Southeast Asia. (b) Where are your books? * My books are on my desk. (c) When is the concert? > The concert is on April 3rd. (d) What is your name? — > Mv name is Yoko. (e) What time is it? > It is ten- thirty. Q-WORD) + no + SLinjl'-CT + main: vt.ri \ LOW AN SWT. R (O Where do you live? > I live in Los Angeles. (g) What time does the plane arrive? > The plane arrives at six -fifteen. (h) What do monkeys eat? > Monkeys eat fruit, plants^ and insects. (O When does Boh study? > Bob studies in the evenings. Non or:: In questions with be as the main and only verb, the subject follows be . In simple present questions with verbs other than be, the subject comes between do! does and rhe main verb. EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 67

■ EXERCISE 26: Complete the questions in the dialogues by using is, are, does, or do. DIALOGUE ONE (1) A: What time the movie start? (2) B: Seven-fifteen. you want to go with us? (3) A: Yes, What time it now? (4) B: A: Almost seven o'clock. you ready to leave? Yes, let's go. DIALOGUE TWO (5) A: Where _ my keys to the car? (6) B: I don't know. Where _ _ _ you usually keep them? A: In my purse. But they're not there. B: Are you sure? (7) A: Yes. _ you see them? (8) B; No. _ they in one of your pockets? A: I don't think so. (9) B: _ your husband have them? A: No, He has his own set of car keys. B: Well, I hope you find them. A: Thanks. DIALOGUE THREE (10) A; _ you go to school? B; Yes. (1 1) A: _ your brother go to school too? B: No. He quit school last semester. He has a job now. 68 ■ CHAPTER 2

(12) A B (13) A B (14) A B (15) A B (16) A B ■ EXERCISE 27: 1. A B 2. A B 3. A B 4. A B 5. A B 6. A B 7. A B 8. A B 9. A B A B

_ it a good job? Not really. Where _ he work? At a restaurant. He washes dishes. _ he live with you? No, he lives with my parents. _ your parents unhappy that he quit school? They're very unhappy about it. _ they want him to return to school? Of course. They don't want him to be a dishwasher for the rest of his life. They have many dreams for him and his future. Complete the dialogues with appropriate questions. _ What time does the concert begin? _ At eight. (The concert begins at eight.) _ /5 Is San Francisco foggy in the winter? _ Yes, it is. (San Francisco is foggy in the winter.) In May. (The weather starts to get hot in May.) Yes. (I dream in color.) Yes. (Igor comes from Russia.) Russia. (Olga comes from Russia.) Yes, he is. (Ivan is from Russia.) In Moscow. (Red Square is in Moscow.) Yes. (Birds sleep.) In trees and bushes or in their nests. (They sleep in trees and bushes or in their nests.) EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 69

10. 11. 12. 13. 14. B: Yes. (A starfish has a mouth.) A: _ B:
In the middle of its underside. (It is in the middle of its underside.)
A: _ B: Clams, oysters, and shrimp. (A starfish eats clams, oysters,
and shrimp.) 70 ■ CHAPTER 2

A: _____

B: The blue whale. (The biggest animal on earth is the blue whale.)

A: _____

B: No, they aren't. (Whales aren't fish.)

A: _____

B: Yes, they are. (They are mammals.)

A: _____

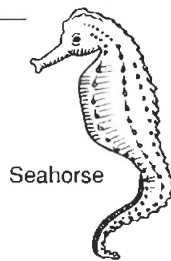
B: Yes, they do. (They breathe air.)

A: _____

B: No, it isn't. (A seahorse isn't a mammal.)

A: _____

B: A very small fish that looks a little like a horse.
(A seahorse is a very small fish that looks
a little like a horse.)



A: _____

■ EXERCISE 28: Complete die dialogues with your own words. 1. A B 2. A B 3. A B 4. A B 5. A B 6. A B 7. A B 8. A B 9. A B 10, A B Do _ No, I don't. Where are _ I don't know. What time does When do Is What is Are What are What do What does ■ EXERCISE 29— ORAL/WRITTEN: Interview someone (a friend, a roommate, a classmate, etc.) about her/his daily schedule. Use the information from the interview to write a composition. Some questions you might want to ask during the interview: What do you do every morning? What do you do every afternoon? What do you do every evening? What time do you . . . ? When do you . . . ? Where do you . . . ? EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 77

2-14 USING /no TALK ABOUT TIME QUESTION ANSWER

In English, people use it to (a) What day is it? It's Monday. express (to talk about) time. (b) What month is it? It's September. (c) What year is it? It's Look at Appendixes 2 and 3 in (d) What's the date today? It's September 15th. the back of the book for lists of It's the 15th of September. days, months, and numbers.

2- 1 5 PREPOSITIONS OF TIME at (a) We have class at one o'clock. at + a specific time on the clock (b) I have an appointment with the doctor at 3:00. (c) We sleep at night. at + night in (d) My birthday is in October. in + specific month (e) I was born in 1960. in + specific year (f) We have class in the morning. in + the morning (g) Bob has class in the afternoon. in + the afternoon (h) I study in the evening. in + the evening on (i) I have class on Monday, on + a specific day of the week (j) I was born on October 3 1975. on + a specific date from . . . to (k) We have class from 1:00 to 2:00, from (a specific time) to (a specific time) ■ EXERCISE 31 : Complete the sentences with prepositions of time. 1 . We have class at _ ten o'clock. 2. We have class _ ten _ eleven. 3. I have class _ the morning. 4. I work _ the afternoon. 5. I study _ the evening. 6. I sleep _ night. 7. I was born _ May. 8. I was born _ 1979. 9. I was born _ May 25. 10. I was born _ May 25, 1979. 11 . The post office isn't open _ Sunday. 12. The post office is open _ 8:00 a.m. _ 5:00 p.m. Monday. 13. The post office closes _ 5:00 p.m. EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 73

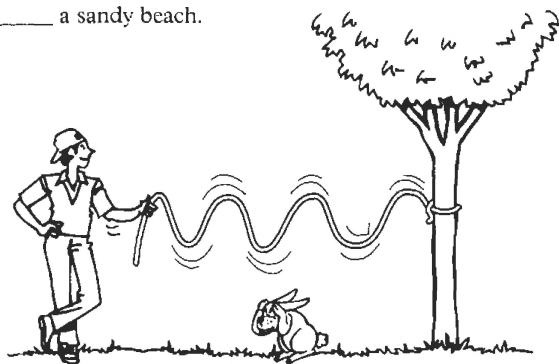
H EXERCISE 32: Complete the sentences with propositions
 optimh. 1. 2, 3. 4. 5. 6. 'J 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. Jane has an appointment
 with the dentist _ _ ten-thirty, We go to class _ the morning. The
 bank is open _ l;riday\ but it isn't open _ My birthday is _ February.
 I was born _ February 14, 1973. I watch television _ the evening. I
 go to bed _ night. The bank is open _ 9:00 a.m. _ 4:00 km. I was in
 high school _ 1 988. Our classes begin _ January 10. 1 study at the
 library _____ the afternoon. We have a vacation _ August. Saturday.
 i — — — — — H ■ M— ■—

■ EXERCISE 34— ORAL: Change the Fahrenheit temperatures to Celsius by choosing temperatures from the list. Then describe the temperature in words. 33° C 0° C 24° C 0° i t/ UEC FAKHNHIT CUI,SIUS 1. 50°F 1 QIC 2. 32°F 3. 100°F 4. 75°F 5. 0°F DESCRIPTION egoj chilly: above freezing freezing below freezing ■ EXERCISE 35: "Approximate" means "close but not exact." Here is a fast way to get an approximate number when you convert from one temperature system to another.* »To change Celsius to Fahrenheit: double the Celsius number and add 30. Examples: 12°C x 2 = 24 + 30 = 54°F (Exact numbers: 12°C = 53.6°F.) 20°C x 2 = 40 + 30 = 70°F (Exact numbers: 20°C = 68°F) 35°C x 2 = 70 + 30 = 100°F (Exact numbers: 35°C = 95°F.) »To change Fahrenheit to Celsius: subtract 30 from the Fahrenheit number AND then divide by 2. Examples: 60°F - 30 = 30 - 2 = 15°C. (Exact numbers: 60°F = 15.6°C.) 80°F - 30 = 50 - 2 = 25°C. (Exact numbers: 80°F = 26.7°C.) 90°F - 30 = 60 - 2 = 30°C. (Exact numbers: 90°F = 32.2°C.) Change the following from Celsius to Fahrenheit and Fahrenheit to Celsius. Calculate the approximate numbers. 1. 22°C 2. 2°C 3. 30°C 4. 10°C 5. 16°C 22°C = approximately 74°F (22°C x 2 = 44 + 30 = 74°F) 6. 45°F 7. 70°F 8. 58°F 9. 100°F »To get exact numbers, use these formulas: C = 5/9 (°F - 32) or F = 9/5 (°C) + 32. EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 75

■ EXERCISE 36— REVIEW: Add -s or -es where necessary. Discuss the correct pronunciation: /s/, /z/, or /az/. **ABDUL AND PABLO** S (lives - live + Izl) (1) My friend Abdul liveA in an apartment near school. (2) He walk to school almost every day. (3) Sometimes he catch a bus, especially if it's cold and rainy outside. (4) Abdul share the apartment with Pablo. (5) Pablo come from Venezuela. (6) Abdul and Pablo go to the same school. (7) They take English classes. (8) Abdul speak Arabic as his first language, and Pablo speak Spanish. (9) They communicate in English. (10) Sometimes Abdul try to teach Pablo to speak a little Arabic, and Pablo give Abdul Spanish lessons. (11) They laugh a lot during the Arabic and Spanish lessons. (12) Abdul enjoy having Pablo as his roommate, but he miss his family back in Saudi Arabia. **SNAKES** (13) Snakes eat all sorts of things. (14) Eggs are a favorite food of many snakes. (15) When a snake eat an egg, the snake first curl around the egg. (16) It don't want the egg to roll away. (17) Then the snake open its mouth and move the egg into its throat. (18) It squeeze the egg with muscles in its neck. (19) The egg break and go into the snake's stomach. (20) Then the snake spit out the eggshell. (21) Snakes love to eat eggs. ■ EXERCISE 37 — REVIEW: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Use the SIMPLE PRESENT of the verbs. 1 . (Anita, go) _ _ Does Anita . go. _ _ to her uncle's house every day? 2. (monkeys, eat) _ insects? 3. A: I usually (remember, not) _ my dreams, (you, remember) _ your dreams? 76 m **CHARIER 2**

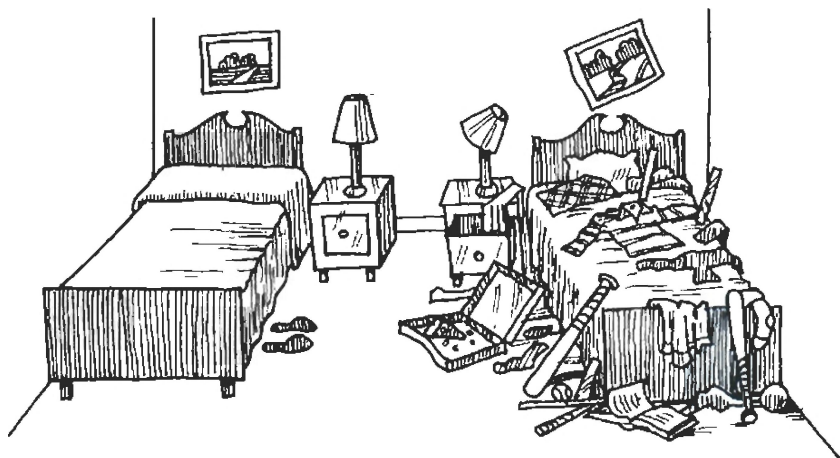
B: Sometimes. I often (write) _ my dreams down as soon as I wake up. I (like) _ to think about my dreams, I (try) _ to understand them. 4. I (understand) not) _ my brother. He (have, not) _ a job or a place to live. He (sleep) _ at his friends' apartments. He (lake, not) _ _ care of himself. I (worry) _ about him all the time. 5. Ocean waves (be) _ interesting. In an ocean wave, water (move) _ up and down, but the water (move, not) _ _ forward. This movement (be) _ the same as the movement you can see in a rope. If you shake one end of a rope, waves (run) _ along the rope, but the rope (move > not) _ _ forward. The water in an ocean wave (move) _ forward only when a wave (reach) _ land. Then an ocean wave (carry) _ sand and other things forward 6. A: (you > study) . B: I (study) _ (study) _ a lot? at least three hours every night. My roommate _ at least five hours. She's very serious about her education. How about you? (you, spend) . a lot of time studying? EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) 77

when it (*hit*) _____ a sandy beach.



A: No. I don't. I (spend) _ as little time as possible. I (like, tiotj _ to study. B; 'Then why (you, he) _ a student? A: My parents (ivaut) _ me to go to school. I (want, not) _ to be here. B: In that case, I (think) _ that you should drop out of school and find a job until you figure out what you want to do with your life. 7. I (have) _ two roommates. One of them, Sam. is always neat and clean. He (wash) _ his clothes once a week, (you, know) _ Matt, my other roommate? He (be) _ the opposite of Sam. For example. Matt (change } not) _ the sheets on his bed. He (keep) _ the same sheets week after week. He (wash, never) _ his clothes. He (wear) . room (he, always) _ (be, alzrnys) _ (say) _ the same dirty jeans every day. Sam's side of the _ neat, and Matt's side . , it (take) . a mess. As my mother always _ _ all kinds of people to make a world. 78 ■

CHAPTER 2



■ EXERCISE 38 — REVIEW: Complete the dialogues with your own words by asking questions. 1. A: _ B: No, I don't. 2. A: _ B: Yes, I am. 3. A: _ B: In an apartment. 4. A: _ B: Six-thirty. 5. A: _ B: Monday. 6. A: _ B: At home. 7. A: _ B: No, he doesn't. 8. A: _ B: No, she isn't. 9. A: _ B: South of the United States. 10. A: _ B: Yes, it is. 11. A: _ B: Yes, they do. 12. A: _ B: In Southeast Asia. 13. A: _ B: Hot in the summer. 14. A: _ B: September. 15. A: _ B: Yes, I do.

EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 79

■ EXERCISE 39— REVIEW: Correct the mistakes in the following sentences. lives 1. Yoko live in Japan. 2. Ann comes usually to class on time. 3. Peter watch TV every evening. 4. Anita carry a briefcase to work every day. 5. She enjoy her job. 6. I no know Joe. 7. Mike don't like milk. He never drink it, 8. Tina doesn't speaks Chinese. She speakes Spanish. 9. Do you are a student? 10. Does your roommate sleeps with the window open? 11. A: Do you like strong coffee? B: Yes, I like. 12. Where your parents live? 13. What time is your English class begins? 14. Olga isn't need a car. She have a bicycle. 15. Do Pablo does his homework every day? ■

EXERCISE 40— REVIEW: Choose the correct completion. 1. Alex know French. A. isn't B. doesn't C. don't 2. Alex speak Russian? A. Is B. Does C. Do 3. Alex from Canada? A. Is B. Does C. Do 4. When you usually study? A. are B. does C. do

80 U CHAPTER 2

5. Anita a job. A. no have B. no has C. doesn't have 6.
 Omar his new car every Saturday. A. wash B. washs C. washes 7.
 Where does Tina go to school? A. go B. goes C. to go 8. Fumiko English
 at this school. A. study B. studies C. studys 9. Fumiko and Omar
 students at this school. A. is B. are C. be 10. They speak the same
 language. A. aren't B. doesn't C. don't ■ EXERCISE 41 — REVIEW:
 Complete the sentences. A: Do you ✓ B: Yes, I do. How about you?
 Do you y A: A: don't B: I know. A: doesn't B: Really? Does y A: I
 don't know. A: Where is ✓ B: At home. A: Where does y B: On Fifth
 Avenue. A: y B. Yes, I do. A: y B: No, he doesn't. A: y B: Yes, I am.
 A: y B: No, he isn't. EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART t) ■ 81

6. A: Do you like _ B: Yes, of course I _ . Everybody 7, A: What _ snakes? B: They _ _ _ long, thin animals. They _ have legs. A: _ snakes reptiles? B: Yes, they _ . A: _ snakes eat eggs? B: Yes, they _ , 8. A: _ you usually _ in the morning? B: _ . A: When B; _ ■

EXERCISE 42 — REVIEW: Work in pairs. Follow the steps listed below. 1 . student a: Say five things about Student B's physical appearance (for example, describe hair color, eye color, straight or curly hair, glasses, a mustache, a beard, etc.). STUDHNT b: Agree or disagree with the description, Example: STUDENT A: You have dark hair. STUDHNT B: (Nods ill agreement.) STUDHNT a: You have black eyes. s tudent b; No, I have brown eyes. STUDENT a: You have dark brown eyes. student b: Okay. That's right. student A: You wear glasses. student b: Yes. Etc. Then switch roles, with Student B saying five things about Student A s appearance. 2. student A; Ask Student B five questions about things s/he has and doesn't have (for example, a car, a computer, a pet, children, a TV set, a briefcase, etc.). STUDENT b: Answer the questions. Example: s tudent a: Do you have a car? STUDENT B: No, student a: Do you have a computer. student r: Yes, but it's not here. It's in my country. Etc.

82 m CHAPTER 2

Then switch roles . 3. student a: Ask Student B five questions about things s/he likes and doesn't like (for example, kinds of food and drink, music, movies, books, etc.) student b: Answer the questions. Example: student a: Do you like pizza? STUDENT b: Yes. STUDENT a: Do you like the music of (name of a group or singer)? STUDENT b: No, I don't. Etc. Then switch roles . 4. Write about the other person. Give a physical description. Write about things this person has and doesn't have. Write about things this person likes and doesn't like. ■ EXERCISE 43— REVIEW: Find out information about your classmates' hometowns. Use the information to write a report. Ask questions about; the name of the hometown , its location , its population , its weather and average temperature in a particular month (of your choosing) Example: student a: STUDENT H: student a: STUDENT R: STUDENT A: STUDENT B: STUDENT A: STUDENT B: STUDENT A: STUDENT B: What's your hometown? Athens, Where is it located? In southwestern Greece on the Aegean Sea, What's the population of Athens? 3,507,000. What's the weather like in Athens in May? It's mild. Sometimes it's a little rainy. What's the average temperature in May? The average temperature is around 8° Celsius. Chart for recording information about your classmates' hometowns. Name S/ hometown Athens Location SIV Greece on Aegean Sea Population a/most A million Weather mild in May (around 8°C, in the mid- for ties Fahrenheit) EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 1) ■ 8\$

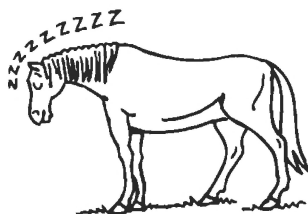
CHAPTER 3 Expressing Present Time (Part 2) 3-t BE + ING: THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE am + Ang (a) I am sitting in class right now. In (a): When I say this sentence, I am in class. is + - ing (b) Rita is sitting in class right now. I am sitting. I am not standing. The action are + -ing (c) You are sitting in class right now. (sitting) is happening right now, and I am saying the sentence at the same time. am, is > are - helping verbs sitting = the main verb am, is , are + -ing - the present progressive tense* *The present progressive is also called the "present continuous" or the "continuous present." ■ EXERCISE 1— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Practice using the present progressive by using am! is i are + wearing . PART I: Answer questions about what you are wearing today and what your classmates are wearing. Example: teacher: student: teacher: student: teacher: student: Rosa, what are you wearing today? Pm wearing a white blouse and a blue skirt. What is Jin Won wearing? He's wearing blue jeans and a sweat shirt. What color is his sweat shirt? It's gray with red letters. What else is Jin Won wearing? He's wearing sneakers, white socks, and a wristwatch, Etc. PART II: Identify who is wearing particular articles of clothing. Example: a (blue) shirt Response: Marco is wearing a blue shirt. 64 CHAPTER 3



CHAPTER 3

Expressing Present Time (Part 2)

(blue) shirts Marco and Abdul are wearing blue shirts.
 Example : Response: Suggestions: 1. (gold) earrings 2. blue jeans 3.
 a blouse 4. a (red) blouse 5. (gray) slacks 6. (brown) boots 7. a
 (black) belt 8. a necklace 9. running shoes ■ EXERCISE 2 — ORAL:
 What are the animals in the following pictures doing? EXPRESSING
 PRESENT TIME (PART 2) ■ \$5



■ EXERCISE 3— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE. Example: teacher: STUDENT A: TEACHER
 STUDENT A: teacher: STUDENT C: teacher: STUDENT B: 1 . Stand in the middle of the room. 2. Sit in the middle of the room. 3. Stand in the back of the room. 4. Smile. 5. Stand between (...) and (...). 6. Touch the floor. 7. Touch the ceiling. 8. Touch your toes. 9. Open/ Close the door/window. 10. Close/Open the door/window. (Student B), what is (Student A) doing? 1 1. Shake hands with (...). 1 2. Smile at (. . .). 13. Stand up and turn around in a circle. 14. Hold your book above your head. 1 5. Hold up your right hand. 16. Hold up your left hand. 1 7. Touch your right ear with your left hand. 18. Stand up. 19. Sit down. 20. Clap your hands. Act out the directions. Describe the actions using Sustain the action during the description. Smile. (Student A), please smile. What are you doing? I'm smiling. (Student A) and (Student B), please smile. (Student A), what are you and (Student B) doing? We're smiling. (Student C), what are (Student A and Student B) doing? They're smiling. (Student A), please smile. He/She is smiling. **■ EXERCISE 4— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED):** Practice using the present progressive by describing what your teacher and classmates are pantomiming, i.e., pretending to do. The pantomimist should sustain the action until the oral description is completed. Example : drink teacher: (The teacher pantomimes drinking.) What am I doing? student: You're drinking. Example: drive teacher: (Student A), drive, Pretend to drive. STUDENT A: (The student pantomimes driving.) teacher: What are you doing? student a: I'm driving. teacher: What is (. . .) doing? student b: He/She's driving. 1 . eat 8. smile 15. clap 2, read 9. laugh 1 6. kick 3. sleep 10. cry 17. count 4. write 11. dance 18. stand in back of (. . .) 5. walk 12. wave 19. touch (...) 6. run 13. push 20. shake hands with (. . .) 7. fly 14. pull 21. sit on the floor 86 **■**
 CHAPTER 3

3-2 SPELUNG OF -ING \\ NO or VI-Hli -IX G HORM Rule
 1: A CONSONANT* + -e drop Tin- -e and add -m# smite > smi/
 m# write > wrifin# Rule 2: ONH YOWHL* + OKU CONSONANT
 > DOL;hlh thk con son an']' and ADD -m#** Sit — v siffm# run —
 > running Rule 3: two vowas + OKU consonant > ADD -m#; DO
 NOT DOUHLT TUI: CONSONANT read > rain > ramwg Rule 4:
 TWO CONSONANTS > ADD -mg; DO NO'r DOULUT Till*
 CONSONANT stand > standing push > pushing M Vowels = a}
 c>, /, o, u . Consonants = b> c, d, J, gy h, j} k, !, my th p, 4, r,
 .v, r, &■, a, y\ c, ** Exception to Rule 2: Do not double a\ and y.
 snow ► snowing fix - > fixing say -> saying ■ EXERCISE 5: Write
 the -ing forms for the following words. i. stand standingq ii. ride 2.
 smile 12. cut 3. run 13. dance 4. rain 14. put 5. sleep 15. sneeze 6.
 stop 16. plan 7. write 17. snow 8. eat 18. fix 9. count 19. say 10.
 wear 20. erv EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) ■ 87

■ EXERCISE 6: Write the -ing forms for the following words. 1. dream 6. hit 2. come 7. hurt 3. look 8. clap 4. take 9. keep 5. bite 10. camp ii. shine 16. pay 12. win 17. study 13. join 18. get 14. sign 19. wait 15. fly 20. write EXERCISE 7— ORAL Practice using the present progressive to describe actions. student a: Act out the given directions. Sustain the action until Student B's description is completed. student b: Describe Student A's action using the present progressive. Example: erase the board student a: (Student A sustains the action of erasing the board.) student b: (. . .)/He/She is erasing the board. i. erase the board 10. bite your finger 2. draw a picture on the board 11. hit your desk 3. sneeze 12. drop your pen 4. cough 13. tear a piece of paper 5. wave at your friends 14. break a piece of chalk 6. sign your name on the board 15. fall down 7. clap your hands 16. sing, hum, or whistle 8. walk around the room 17. sleep 9. count your fingers 18. snore 86 m CHAPTER 3

19. chew gum 21. hold your grammar book between your feet 20. (two students) throw and 22. carry your book on the top of your head to the catch (something in the room) front of the room ■

EXERCISE 8 — WRITTEN (BOOKS CLOSED): Practice spelling using -ing. As the teacher performs or pantomimes actions, write descriptions. Example: wave tkacher: (Acts out waving and asks,

“What am I doing?”) Written: waving 1. smile 5. stand 9. eat 13. drink 2. cry 6. sleep 10. run 14. sneeze 3. laugh 7. clap 1 1 . sing

15. fly 4. sit 8. write 12. read 16. cut (a piece of paper) 3 3 THE

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: QUESTIONS QUESTION SHORT ANSWER

+ (LONG ANSWER) m ; + SUBJECT + -at; (a) Is Mary sleeping -► Yes, she is, (She's sleeping.) -> No, she's not . (She's not sleeping.) -

► No, she isn't . (She isn't sleeping.) (b) Are you watching TV? ->

Yes, / am. (I'm watching TV.) > No, Vm not (I'm not watching TV.)

Q-WORD + BE + SUBJECT + -ING (c) Where is Mary sleeping} -►

On the sofa * (She's sleeping on the sofa.) (d) Why are you

watching TV? > Because / like this program. (I'm watching TV

because I like this program.) ■ **EXERCISE 9:** Make questions. Give

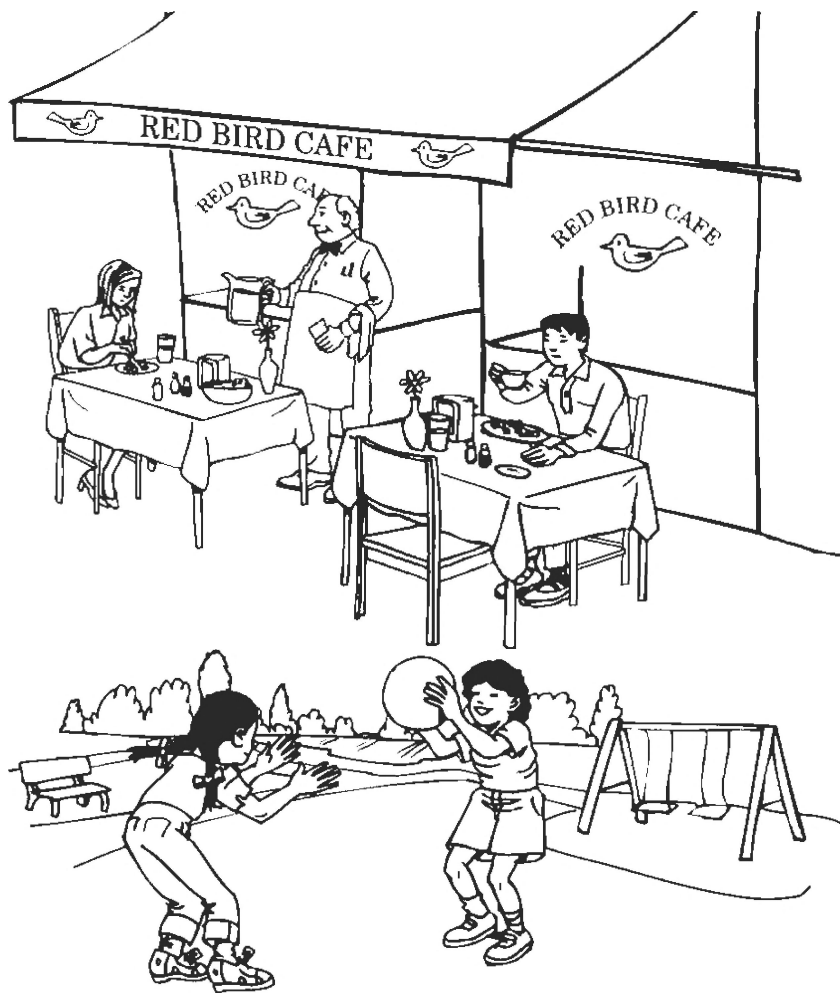
short answers to yes/no questions. 1. A: what are you writing? _ B:

A letter, (I'm writing a letter.) 2. A: _ /s AH [ending a book? _ B: No.

he isn't /he's not. _ (Ali isn't reading a book.) **EXPRESSING**

PRESENT TIME (PART 2) ■ 89

3. A: _ B: Yes, _ (Anna is eating lunch.) 4. A: Where _ B: At the Red Bird Calc. (She's eating lunch at the Red Bird Cafe.) 5. A: _ B: No, _ (Mike isn't drinking a cup of coffee.) 6. A: What _ _ B: A cup of tea. (He's drinking a cup of tea.) 7. A: _ B: No, _ . (The girls aren't playing in the street.) 8. A: Where _ B: In the park. (They're playing in the park.) 9. A: Why _ B: Because they don't have school today, (They're playing in the park because they don't have school today.) 90 a CHAPTER 3



10. A: Hi, kids, _ B: No, _ _ _ . (We aren't drawing pictures with our crayons.) A: Oh? Then what _ _ _ _ B: Maps to our secret place in the woods. (We're drawing maps to our secret place in the woods.) A: Why _ _ _ Because we have a buried treasure at our secret place in the woods. (We're drawing maps because we have a buried treasure at our secret place in the woods.) ■ EXERCISE 10—
 ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Practice yes/no questions using the present progressive. The teacher will hand out slips of paper on which are written the directions in Exercise 4 on page 86.
 STUDHNT A: Mime the directions on your slip of paper, student h: Ask Student A or another classmate a yes/no question using the present progressive, Example: drive (written on a slip of paper) student A: (Student A mimes driving.) student b: Are you driving? student a: Yes, I am. OR student b: (Student C), is (Student A) driving? STUDHNT c: Yes, he/she is. ■ EXERCISE 11:
 1. A: B: 2. A: B: Make questions with where, why, and what. What are you writing? A letter. (I'm writing a letter.) Because I'm happy. (I'm smiling because I'm happy.) EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME
 (PART 2) ■ 97

3. A: _ B: My grammar book. (I'm reading my grammar book.) 4. A: _ B: Because we're doing an exercise. (I'm reading my grammar book because we're doing an exercise.) 5. A: _ B: In the back of the room. (Roberto is sitting in the back of the room.) 6. A: _ B: Downtown. (I'm going downtown.) 7. A: _ B: Because I need to buy some shoes. (I'm going downtown because I need to buy some shoes.) 8. A: _ B: Blue jeans and a sweatshirt. (Akihiko is wearing blue jeans and a sweatshirt today.)

3-4 THE SIMPLE PRESENT vs. THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE STATEMENTS: (a) I sit in class every day. (b) I am sitting in class right now . (c) The teacher writes on the board on every* day . (d) The teacher is writing on the board right now. * The simple present expresses habits or usual activities, as in (a), (c), and (e). # The present progressive expresses actions that are happening right now, while the speaker is speaking, as in (b), (d), and (f). QUESTIONS: * The simple present uses do and does as (e) Do you sit in class every day? helping verbs in questions. (f) Are you sitting in class right now? • The present progressive uses am, is, and are in questions. (g) Does the teacher write on the board every day? (h) Is the teacher writing on the board right now? negatives: * The simple PRESENT uses do and does as (i) I don't sit in class every day. helping verbs in negatives. (j) I'm not sitting in class right now. • The present progressive uses am, is, and are in negatives. (k) The teacher doesn't write on the board every day. (l) The teacher isn't writing on the board right now. 92 rn CHAPTER

■ EXERCISE 12: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. 1 . I (walk) Walk _ to school every day. I (take, not) don't take _ the bus. 2. I (read) _ the newspaper every day, I (read, not) _ my grammar book every day. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. A: What (you, read) . B: I (read) _ right now? . my grammar book. Robert (cook) . his own dinner every evening. Right now Robert is in his kitchen. He (cook) . and beans for dinner. Robert is a vegetarian. He (eat, not). (you, cook) _ rice . meat. A: (you, want) . B: Yes. A: (be, this) _ your own dinner every day? _ your coat? . your coat? B: No, my coat (hang) . A: (Tom, have) . B: Yes. A: (he, wear). B: No. A: (he, wear). _ in the closet. . a black hat? it every day? it right now? _ . Why do you care about B: I (know, not) . Tom's hat? A: I found a hat in my apartment. Someone left it there. I (think) _ _ that it belongs to Tom. Ahmed (talk) (talk) _ Yoko and Ahmed (sit) . often (help) _ Yoko (help) _ to his classmates every day in class. Right now he _ to Yoko. _ next to each other in class every day, so they . each other with their grammar exercises. Right now _ Ahmed with an exercise on present verb tenses. EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) ■ 93

12. It (rain) _ a lot in this city, but it train, not) _ _ _ right now. The sun (shine) _ . (if, rain) _ a lot in your hometown? 13. A: Hello? B: Hello. This is Mike. Is Tony there? A: Yes, but he can't come to the phone right now. He (eat) _ dinner. Can he call you back in about ten minutes? B: Sure. Thanks. Bye. A: Bye. 14. Tony's family (eat) _ dinner at the same time every day. During dinner time, Tony's mother (let, not) _ the children talk on the phone. 15. A: What are you doing? (you , work) _ on your English paper? B: No, I (study, not) _ . I (write) a letter to my sister. A: (you, write) _ B: I (write, not) . A: (she, write) _ B: Yes. I (gel) _ to her often? a lot of letters to anyone, to you often? a letter from her about once a week, (you, write) _ a lot of letters? A: Yes. I Hi to write letters. 16. Olga Burns is a pilot for an airline company in Alaska. She (fly) _ almost every day. Today she (fly) _ from Juno to Anchorage. 17. A: Where (the teacher , stand, usually) _ every day? B: She usually (stand) _ A: Where (she, stand) _ B: She (stand) _ in the front of the room every day. _ today? . in the middle of the room. 94 U

CHAPTER 3

18, A: Excuse me, (you, wait) _____ for the downtown bus? B: Yes, I (be) _____. Can I help you? A: Yes. What time (the bus, stop) _____ here? B: Ten thirty-five. 19. A: (animals, dream) _____? B: I don't know, I suppose so. Animals (be, not) _____ very different from human beings in lots of ways. A: Look at my dog, She (sleep) _____. Her eyes (be) _____ closed. At the same time, she (yip) _____ and (shake) _____ her head and her front legs, I (be) _____

3-5 NONACTION VERBS NOT USED IN THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

(a) I'm hungry right now. I want an apple. (INCORRECT: I am wanting an apple.) (b) I hear a siren. Do you hear it too? (incorrect: I'm hearing a siren. Are you hearing it too?)

NON ACTION VERBS want need like love hate

Some verbs are not used in the present progressive. They are called "nonaction verbs". In (a): Want is a nonaction verb. Want expresses a physical or emotional need, not an action. In (b): Hear is a nonaction verb. Hear expresses a sensory experience, not an action. hear understand see know smell believe taste think (meaning believe) Sometimes think is used in progressive tenses. See Chart 3-10 for a discussion of think and think that.

EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) ■ 95

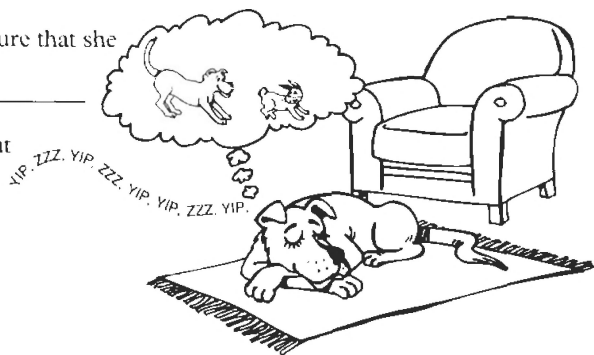
_____ sure that she

(dream) _____

right now. I'm sure that

animals (dream)

_____.



■ EXERCISE 13: Use the words in parentheses to complete the sentences. Use the simple PRESENT Or the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE. 1 . Alice is in her room right now. She (read) _ /S reading. _ a book. She (like) . _ Hk€S _ the book. 2. It (snow) _ right now. It's beautiful! I (like) _ _ this weather. 3. I (know) _ Jessica Jones. She's in my class. 4. The teacher (talk) _ to us right now. I (understand ') . everything she's saying. 5. Don is at a restaurant right now. He (eat) _ (like) _ the food. It (taste) . dinner. He . good. 6. (Sniff-sniff). I (smell) . . gas. (you, smell) 7. Jason (tell) 8. Ugh! That cigar (smell) . _ it too? _ us a story right now I (believe) his story. I (think) _ that his story is true. terrible. 9. Look at the picture. Jane (sit) . a chair. A cat (sit) . Jane (hate) _ the cat. 10. Look at the picture. Mr. Allen (hold) _ _ a cat. He (love) on her lap. the cat. The cat (lick) _ Mr. Allen's face 96 ■ CHAPTER 3

_____ terrible.

_____ in

_____ on her lap.

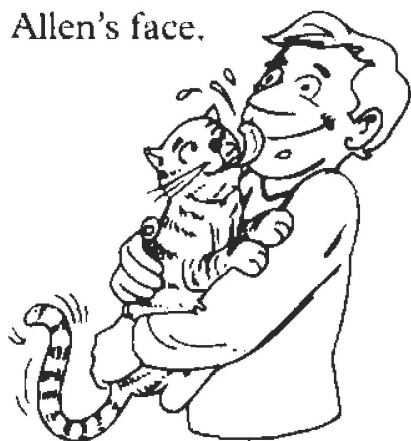
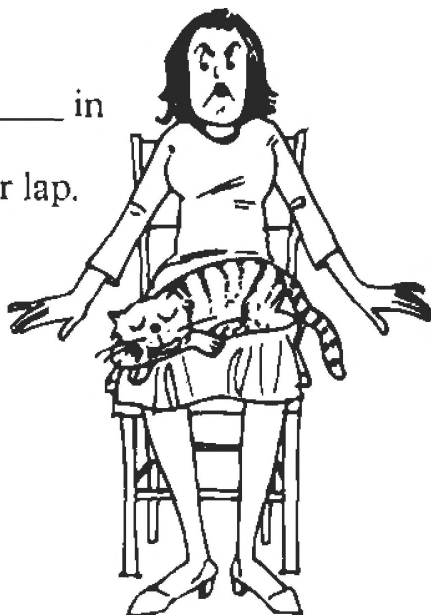
__ the cat.

1 (hold)

a cat. He (love)

cat (lick)

Allen's face.



3-6 SEE, LOOK AT, WATCH, HEAR, AND LISTEN TO SEE, LOOK AT, and WATCH (a) I see many things in this room, In (a): see = a nonaction verb. Seeing happens because my eyes are open. Seeing is a physical reaction, not a planned action. (b) I'm looking at the clock. I want to know the time. In (b): look at = an action verb. Looking is a planned or purposeful action, Looking happens for a reason, (c) Bob is watching TV. In (c); watch = an action verb. I watch something for a long time, but I look at something for a short time. HEAR and LISTEN TO (d) I'm in my apartment. I'm trying to study. I hear music from the next apartment. The music is loud. In (d): hear = a nonaction verb. Hearing is an unplanned act. It expresses a physical reaction. (e) I'm in my apartment. I'm studying. I have a tape recorder. I'm listening to music. I like to listen to music when I study. In (e): listen (to) - an action verb. Listening happens for a purpose. ■ EXERCISE 14 — ORAL: Answer the questions. 1 . What do you see in this room? Now look at something. What are you looking at? 2. Turn to page 85 of this book, What do you see? Now look at one thing on that page. What are you looking at? 3. Look at the floor. What do you see? 4. Look at the chalkboard. What do you see? 5. What programs do you like to watch on TV? 6. What sports do you like to watch? 7. What animals do you like to watch when you go to the zoo? 8. What do you hear right now? 9. What do you hear when you walk down the street? 10. What do you hear at night in the place where you live? 11 . What do you listen to when you go to a concert? 12. What do you listen to when you go to a language laboratory? EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) 97

3-7 NEED AND WANT + A NOUN OR AN INFINITIVE
 VHRB + NOUN (a) We need food. (b) I want a sandwich. VbRB +
 INHNITIVK (to help , to answer , to write. ■ EXERCISE 15: Use
 the words in the list or your own words to complete the sentences.
 Use an INFLNITlviv (to + verb) in each sentence. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7.
 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. buy do listen to play walk call get marry
 lake wash cash go pay talk to watch Anna is sleepy. She wants to
 go _ to bed. I want _ downtown today because I need a new coat.
 Mike wants Do you want . I need _ I want _ TV. There's a good
 program on Channel 5. _ soccer with us at the park this afternoon?
 Jennifer on the phone. to the bank because I need a check. James
 doesn't want My clothes are dirty'. I need John loves Mary. He
 wants _ his homework tonight. _ them. _ her. David's desk is full of
 overdue bills. He needs It's a nice day. I don't want _ . his bills. the
 bus home today. I want home instead. Do you want Helen needs
 Where do you want _ some music on the radio? an English course. _
 for lunch? 98 m CHAPTER 3

■ EXERCISE 16: Here are ten short conversations.

Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses and other necessary words. 1. A: (go \ you \ zvant) _ Do you want to go _ downtown this afternoon? B: Yes, I do. (I \ buy \ need) / need to buy _ . a winter coat, 2. A: Where (you \ go \ want) _ for dinner tonight? B: Rossini's Restaurant, 3. A: What time / he \ need \ you) _ _ _ at the airport? B: Around six. My plane leaves at seven. 4. A: (want not \ Jean \ go) _ baseball game, B: Why not? A: Because (she \ need \ study) 5. A: I'm getting tired, (take \ I \ team) _ _ a break for a few minutes. B: Okay. Let's take a break. We can finish the work later, 6. A: (go back \ Peter \ zvant) _ to his apartment, B: Why? A: Because (he \ zvant \ change) _ his clothes before he goes to the party. 7. A: (come \ zee \ need not) _ to class on Friday. B: Why not? A: It's a holiday. 8. A: Where (you \ go \ zvant) _ vacation? B: (7 \ want \ visit) _ York City, and Washington, D.C 9. A: May I see your dictionary? (I \ look up \ need) _ a word. B: Of course. Here it is. A: Thanks. 10. A: (come \ zvant \ you) _ with us to the park? B: Sure. Thanks, (I \ get \ need) _ some exercise. _ for your Niagara Falls, New to the for a test. EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) ■ 99

3-8 WOULD LIKE (a) I'm thirsty, I want a glass of water.
 (b) I'm thirsty. I would like a glass of water. (a) and (b) have the same meaning, but would like is usually more polite than want . / would like is a nice way of saying / want. (c) I would like \ You would like 1 She would like \ , ,, ij,*L / a glass of water. He would like | We would like I They would like } Notice in (c): There is not a final -s on would . There is not a final -s on like . (d)

CONTRACTIONS Td = / would you'd = you would she'd = she would he'd = he would we'd = we would they'd — they would
 Would is usually contracted to *d in speaking. Contractions of would and pronouns are often used in writing. WOULD IJKli + INFINITIVE (e) I would like to eat a sandwich. Notice in (e) : would like can be followed by an infinitive. WOULD + SUBJHCT + LIKE (f) Would you like some tea? In a question, would comes before the subject. (g) Yes, I would. (I would like some tea.) Would is used alone in short answers to questions with would like. ■ EXERCISE 17 — ORAL: Change the sentences by using would like. Discuss the use of contracted speech with would* 1 . Tony wants a cup of coffee. Tony would like a cup of coffee. 2. He wants some sugar in his coffee, 3. Ahmed and Anita want some coffee, too. 4. They want some sugar in their coffee, too, 5 . A: Do you want a cup of coffee? B: Yes, I do. Thank you. 6. I want to thank you for your kindness and hospitality. 7. My friends want to thank you, too. 8. A: Does Robert want to ride with us? B: Yes, he does. * Would is almost always contracted with pronouns in everyday speaking. The difference between Vd like to go and / like, to go is sometimes difficult to hear, In addition, would is often contracted with nouns in speaking (but not in writing). There is a difference between Myfricnds'd like to come with us and My friends like to come with u\$ > but the difference is sometimes hard to hear. 100 ■ CHAPTER 3

■ EXERCISE 18 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Answer the questions. 1 . Who's hungry right now? (...), are you hungry? What would you like? 2. Who's thirsty? (...), are you thirsty? What would you like? 3. Who's sleepy? What would you like to do? 4. What would you like to do this weekend? 5. What would you like to do after class today? 6. What would you like to have for dinner tonight? 7. What countries would you like to visit? 8. What cities would you like to visit in (the United States, Canada , etc.)? 9. What languages would you like to learn? 10. You listened to your classmates. What would they like to do? Do you remember what they said? 1 1 . Pretend that you are a host at a party at your home and your classmates are your guests. Ask them what they would like. 12. Think of something fun to do tonight or this weekend. Using would you like , invite a classmate to join you. B EXERCISE 19 — ORAL: Answer the questions. 1 . Do you like to go to the zoo? 2. Would you like to go to the zoo with me this afternoon? 3. Do you like apples? 4. Would you like an apple right now? 5. Do you like dogs? 6. Would you like to have a dog as a pet? 7. What do you like to do when you have free time? 8. What do you need to do this evening? 9. What would you like to do this evening? 10. What would you like to do in class tomorrow? ■ EXERCISE 20: Complete the sentences with your own words. 1 . I need to _ every day. 2. I want to _ today. EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) 101

3-9 WOULD LIKE vs. LIKE

- (a) I **would like to go** to the zoo.
 (b) I **like to go** to the zoo.

In (a): *I would like to go to the zoo* means *I want to go to the zoo*.

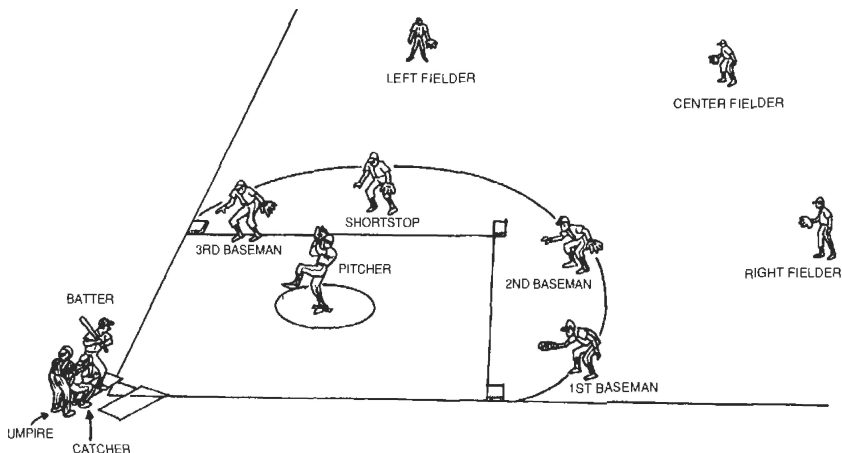
In (b): *I like to go to the zoo* means *I enjoy the zoo*.

Would like indicates that I want to do something now or in the future.

Like indicates that I always, usually, or often enjoy something.

3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. I like to _ I would like to _ I don't like to _
 I don't want to _ Do you like to _ Would you like to I need to _ every
 day. today. every day. today. } and today, 10. would you like to this
 evening? 3- 1 0 THINK ABOUT AND THINK THAT THIXK + AnoiT
 + A NOUN In (a): Ideas about my family are in my (a) I think
 about my family every day. mind every day. In (b): My mind is busy
 now. Ideas (b) I am thinking about grammar right now. about
 grammar are in my mind right now. THIKK + THAT + A
 STATHMHNT In (c): In my opinion. Sue is lazy. I (e) 1 think that
 Sue is lazy , believe that Sue is lazy. People use think that when
 they want (d) Sue thinks that / am lazy. to say (to state) their
 beliefs. The present progressive is often used (e) I think that the
 weather is nice. with think about . The present progressive is almost
 never used with think that ♦ INOORKKt: I am thinking that. Sue is
 lazy. (0 I think that Mike i s a nice person. (f) and (g) have the same
 meaning. (g) I think Mike is a nice person. People often often omit
 that after think , especially in speaking. ■ EXERCISE 21: Use /
 think (that) to give your opinion. 1. English grammar is easy / hard
 / fun / interesting. / tjiink (that} English grammar is 2. People
 in this city are friendly / unfriendly / kind / cold. 102 m CHAPTER
 3

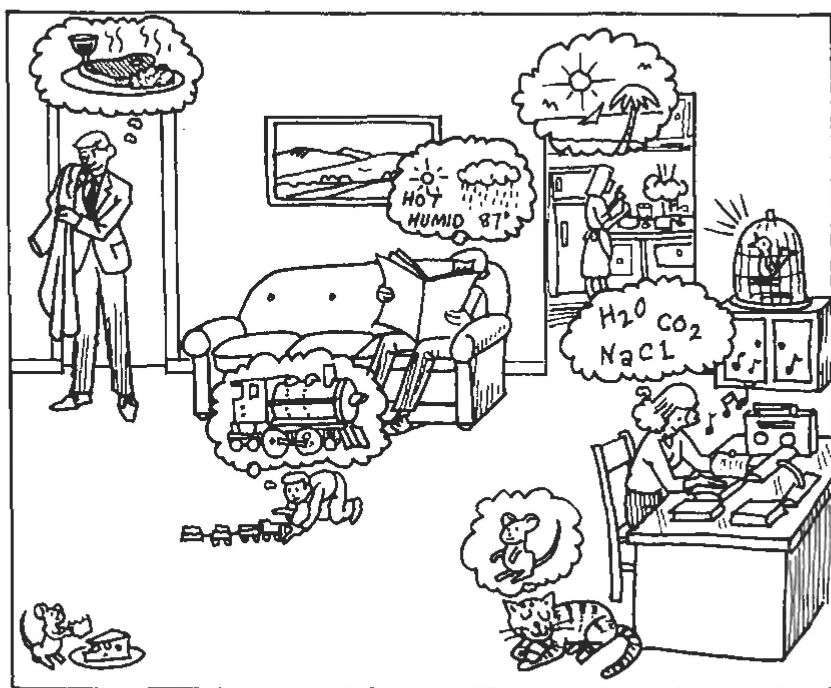
3. The food at (name of a place) is delicious / terrible / good / excellent / awful. 4. Baseball is interesting / boring / confusing / etc. ■ EXERCISE 22: Complete the sentences. 1 . I think that the weather today is _ 2. I think my classmates are _ 3. Right now I'm thinking about _ 4. In my opinion, English grammar is 5. In my opinion, soccer is _ 6. I think that my parents are ____ 7. I think this school _ . 8. I think about _ 9. I think that _ _ 10. In my opinion, _ EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) ■ 103



■ EXERCISE 23— ORAL: State an opinion about each of the following topics. Example: books Response: I think that War and Peace is an excellent novel. In my opinion, War and Peace is an excellent novel. 1. this city 4. movies 2. your English classes 5. food 3. music 6. a current local, national, or international news story ■

EXERCISE 24— REVIEW: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. Use the simple present or the present progressive. Use an infinitive where necessary. the baby the daughter the son the mother the father the cat the bird the mouse Bobby Ellen Paul Mrs. Smith Mr. Smith Pussycat Tweetie Mickey (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10) 104 ■ The Smiths are at home. It is evening. Paul (sit) _ on the sofa. He (read) _ a newspaper. Ellen (sit) _ at the desk. She (study) _ While she is studying, she (listen to) _ music on her radio. Paul (hear) _ the music, but he (listen to, not) _ it right now. He (concentrate) _ on the weather report in the newspaper. He (think about) _ the weather report. Ellen (study) _ her chemistry text. She (like) _ chemistry. She (think) _ that chemistry is easy.

CHAPTER 3



(11) (12) (13) (14) (15) (16) (17) (18) (19) (20) (21) (22)
 (23) (24) (25) (26) (27) (28) (29) (30) (31) (32) (33) (34) (35) (36)
 (37) (38) She (think about) . (understand) _ _ chemical formulas.
 She the formulas. She (like) . her chemistry course, but she (like,
 not) . Mrs. Smith is in the kitchen. She (cook) . her history course. _
 dinner. She (cut) . . up vegetables for a salad. Steam (rise) has to eat
 good food. While she (make) (think about) _ _ from the pot on the
 stove. Mrs. Smith (like, not) to cook, but she (know) _ that her
 family . dinner, Mrs. Smith a vacation on the beach. Sometimes
 Mrs. Smith (get) _ tired of cooking all the time, but she (love) _ her
 family very much and (want) _ to take care of their health. Her
 husband (know, not) _ how to cook. Mr. Smith (stand) . . near the
 front door. He (take, off) his coat. Under his coat, he (wear) . _ a
 suit. Mr. Smith is happy to be home. He (think about) _ dinner,
 After dinner, he (want) (watch) _ television. He (need) (go) . to bed
 early tonight because he has a busy day at work tomorrow. In the
 corner of the living room, a mouse (eat) . of cheese. The mouse
 thinks that the cheese (taste) . Pussycat (see, not) _ a piece good.
 the mouse. She (smell, not) the mouse. Pussycat (sleep) She (dream
 about) a mouse. the mouse because he Bobby is in the middle of the
 living room. He (play) _ with a toy train. He (see, not) _ (look at) _
 his toy train, The bird, Tweetie, (sing) _ . Bobby (listen to, not.) _
 EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) 105

(39) _ the bird. Bobby is busy with his toy train. But Mrs. (40) Smith can hear the bird. She (like) _ (listen to) (41) _ Tweetie sing. | 3-11 THERE + BE rnr.Rn + jus + sum lot + location (a) There is a bird in the tree. (b) There are four birds in the tree. There + be is used to say that something exists in a particular location. Notice: The subject follows be: there + is + singular noun {here + are + plural noun (c) There* s a bird in the tree. (d) There*re four birds in the tree. Contractions: there + is = there's there + are - there' re ■ EXERCISE 25: Complete the sentences with is or are. 1. There is a grammar book on Ahmed's desk. 2. There are many grammar books in this room. 3. There two pens on Pierre's desk. 4. There a pen on my desk. 5, There thirtv-one days in July. 6. There only one student from Singapore in our class 7. There three students from Argentina. 8. There ten sentences in this exercise. 9. There a wonderful restaurant on 33rd Avenue. 10. there many problems in the world today. 106 ■ CHAPTER 3

■ EXERCISE 26— ORAL: Make sentences with there is or there are . Use the given phrases (groups of words) in your sentences. 1 . a book \ on my desk - * There is (There's) a book on my desk . 2. on Ali's desk \ some books There are (There're) some books on Ali's desk. 3. on the wall \ a map 4. some pictures \ on the wall 5. in this room \ three windows 6. fifteen students \ in this room 7. in the refrigerator \ some milk 8. a bus stop \ at the corner of Main Street and 2nd Avenue 9. in Canada \ ten provinces 10. on television tonight \ a good program ■ EXERCISE 27— ORAL: After everybody puts one or two objects (e.g., a coin, some matches, a pen, a dictionary) on a table in the classroom, describe the items on the table by using there is and there are. Examples: Student A: There are three dictionaries on the table. Student B: There are some keys on the table. Student C: There is a pencil sharpener on the table. ■ EXERCISE 28 — ORAL /WRITTEN: Describe your classroom. Use there is and there are. Example: I would like to describe this room. There are three windows. There is a green chalkboard. Etc. 3- 1 2 THERE + BE: YES/NO QUESTIONS QUESTION SHORT ANSWER OH + THERE + SUBJECT (a) Is there any milk in the refrigerator? ► Yes, there is. y No, there isn't. (b) Are there any eggs in the refrigerator? > Yes, there are . No, there aren't. EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) ■ 107

■ EXERCISE 29— ORAL: Ask a classmate a question about the contents of the refrigerator in the picture. Use the nouns in the list in your questions. Use “Is there . . . ?” or “Are there . . . ?”

Example: student a: Is there any milk in the refrigerator? STUDENT

b: Yes, there is. Example: STUDENT a: Are there any onions in the refrigerator? STUDENT b: No, there aren't. J— [I rr^ 1. milk 6.

bread 1 1 . oranges 2. onions 7. apples 12. fruit 3. cheese 8.

potatoes 13. meat 4. butter 9. orange juice 14. roses 5. eggs 10.

strawberries 15. flour ■ EXERCISE 30— ORAL: Ask and answer

questions using there + be. student a: Ask a classmate questions

about this city'. Use “Is there . . . or “ Are there . . . ?” Your book is

open. student b: Answer the questions. Your book is closed.

Example: student a: Is there a zoo in (name of this city)} student b:

Yes, there is. or: No, there isn't, or: I don't know. i. a zoo 7. any

good restaurants 2. an airport 8. a good (Vietnamese) restaurant 3.

an aquarium 9. a botanical garden 4. any lakes 10. any swimming

pools 5. a train station 11. an art museum 6. a subway 12. a good

public transportation system B EXERCISE 31 — ORAL: Complete

the sentences with your own words. Example: There ... in this

building. Responses: There are five floors in this building. There are

many classrooms in this building. There is an elevator in this

building. Etc. i. There . . . , . in this building. 2. There in this

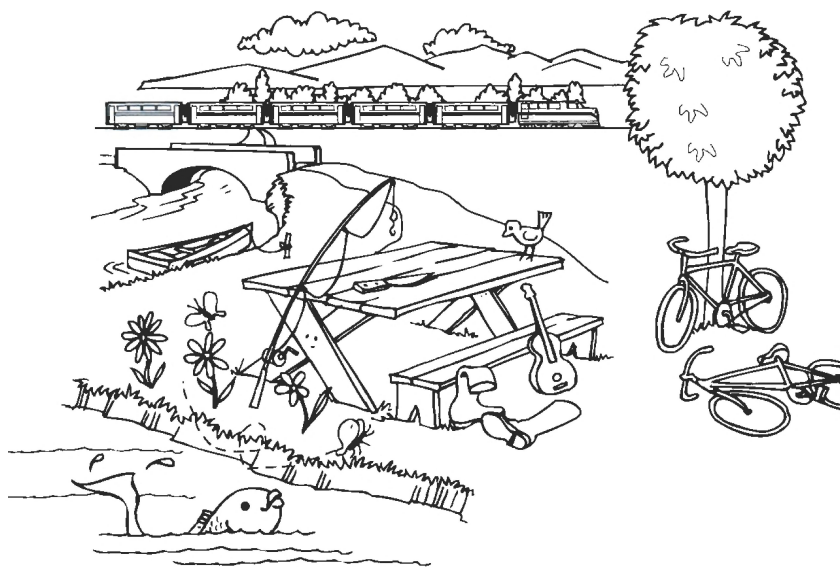
city. 3. There . . . in my country. 4. There . , > . in the world. 5.

There . , . in the universe. 108 ■ CHAPTER 3

■ EXERCISE 32— ORAL: Ask and answer questions using there is/there are and an expression of location (e.g., in this city, in India, on First Street, etc.). Example: any wild monkeys
STUDENT A: Are there any wild monkeys in New York City? **student b:** No. There aren't any wild monkeys in New York City', but there are monkeys at the Bronx Zoo. 1. any elephants 6. any skyscrapers 2. any high mountains 7. any famous landmarks 3. a movie theater 8. any students from Indonesia 4. a bookstore 9. any red grammar books 5. any apartments for rent 10. an elevator 3- 1 3 **THERE + BE:** ASKING QUESTIONS WITH HOW MANY QUESTION SHORT ANSWER + (LONG ANSWER) HOWM_sLVY + SUBJECT + ARh + THHRS + LOCATION (a) How many chapters are there in this book? > Twelve. (There are twelve > chapters in this book,) (b) How many provinces are there in Canada? ► Ten. (There are ten ► provinces in Canada.) **■ EXERCISE 33— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED):** Ask a classmate a question with how many. Example: days in a week **student a:** How many days are there in a week? **student b:** Seven. **OR:** There are seven days in a week. 1. pages in this book 6. countries in North America 2. chapters in this book 7. continents in the world 3. letters in the English alphabet 8. windows in this room 4. states in the United States 9. floors in this building 5. provinces in Canada 10. people in this room **■ EXERCISE 34— ORAL:** Pair up with a classmate. Ask and answer questions about this room. Use how many. Example: desks **student A:** How many desks are there in this room? **student b:** Thirty-two. **OR:** There are thirty-two desks in this room. **student a:** That's right, or: No, I count thirty-three desks. 1. windows 4. teachers 7. grammar books 2. doors 5. women 8. dictionaries 3. students 6. men 9, etc. **EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) ■ 109**

■ EXERCISE 35— ORAL: Pair up with a classmate. Ask and answer questions about the picture. Examples: STL'DHNT a: STUDHN'T b: STtJDHN'T a: studhxt b: STUDHXT a: studhxt b: Are there any dogs in the picture? No, there aren't any dogs in the picture. Where are the boots? The boots are next to the picnic bench. How many trees are there? There's only one tree. ■

EXERCISE 36— REVIEW: Complete the sentences with your own words. 1. I need . . . because 8. I'm listening to ... , but I also hear 2. I want . . . because 9. I'm looking at ... , but I also see . . 3. I would like 10. I'm thinking about 4. Would you like ... ? 11. I think that 5. Do you like . . . ? 12. In my opinion, 6. There is 13. How many . . . are there . . . ? 7. There are 14. Is there . . . ? 110 m CHAPTER 3

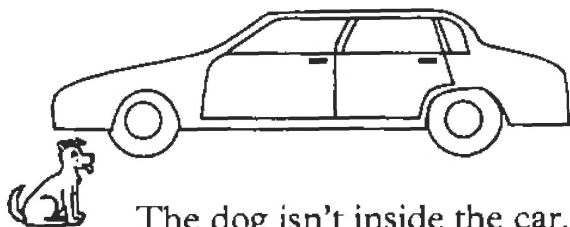


3-14 PREPOSITIONS OF LOCATION (a) My book is on my desk. In (a): on = a preposition my desk = object of the preposition 77/ v desk = a prepositional phrase (b) Tom lives in the United States, A person live; ■>: in a country and in a city He lives in New York City , ori a street avenue, road, etc. (c) He lives on Hill Street, at an address (d) He lives at 44 72 Hill Street. (See Chart 7■17 for more information about using in and at.) SOME PROPOSITIONS OF 'LOCATION' above far (away) from inside around in near at in back of next to behind in the back of on below in from of on top of beside in the front of outside hence in the middle of under *Prepositions of location are also called "prepositions of place," The book is beside the cup. The book is next to the cup. The book is near the cup* 'The cup is on the book. The cup is on top of the book. EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) ■ 7 7 7

The man is in back of the bus. The man is behind die bus.
 'The man is in the back of the bus. J. The man is in front of the bus.
 In H and J, the man is outside the bus. The man is In the front of
 the bus. In I and K? the man is inside the bus. e = ® — — P*3 The
 man is in the middle of the bus. EXERCISE 37: Describe the pictures
 by completing the sentences with prepositional expressions of
 location. There may be more than one possible completion. 1 apple
 is 0/7, 0/7 top of_ the plate. The apple is . the plate. The apple is
 the plate. 4. o The apple is , the glass. 112 a CHAPTER 3

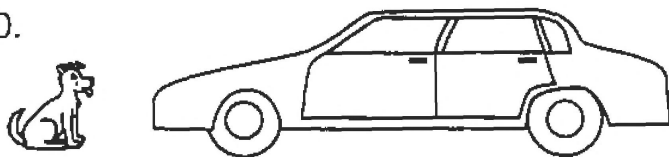
5. The apple isn't near the glass. It is the glass. 6. The apple is the glass. two glasses. the car. The dog is in of the car. ■
113 EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2)

9.



The dog isn't inside the car. The dog is

10.



12. of the car. of the car. ■ EXERCISE 38— ORAL: Pair up with a classmate. Choose objects in the classroom (a book, a pen, an eraser, a cup, your hand, etc.) to demonstrate the meaning of the propositions in the list. Example: student a: Can you show me the meaning of “under”? student b: Yes. The pen is under the book. Now it’s your turn to demonstrate the meaning of “under.” student a: Okay. My hand is under this table. 1 . under 2. above 3. next to 4. between 5. inside 6. on top of 7. in tire middle of 13. 8. around 14. 9. near 15. 10. far (away) from 16. 1 1 . behind 1 2. below in back of in front of in the back of in the front of EXERCISE 39: Complete the sentences with in, on, or at. 1 . Pablo lives Canada. 2. He lives Toronto. 3. He lives Lake Street. 4. He lives 554 1 Lake Street Toronto, Canada. Complete the sentences: 5. I live . (name of country) 6. I live . (name of city) 7. I live . (iiarne of street) 8. I live . (address) 114 U CHAPTER 3

■ EXERCISE 40 — REVIEW: Below are some pictures of John and Mary. A. VOCABULARY CHECKLIST eat dinner a bowl meat hold a knife and a fork a bowl of salad a piece of meat have a steak for dinner a candle a plate burn a cup a restaurant a cup of coffee a saucer a fork a spoon a glass a steak a glass of water a table a knife a waiter a vase of flowers B. ANSWER THE QUESTIONS. 1 . What is Mary doing? 2. What do you see on the table? 3. What is Mary holding in her right hand? in her left hand? 4. What is in the bowl? 5. What is on the plate? C. COMPLETE THE SENTENCES. ii. Marv is sitting a table. 12. There is a candle the table 13. There is coffee the cup. 14. Marv holding a knife her right hand. 15. She's a restaurant. 16. She at home. 17. She eating breakfast. 6. What is in the cup? 7. What is burning? 8. Is Mary eating breakfast? 9. Is Mary at home? Where is she? 10. What is she cutting? EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) ■ 7 75

A. VOCABULARY CHECKLIST study at the library the circulation desk read a book a librarian take notes a shelf (singular) shelves (plural)* B. ANSWER THE QUESTIONS. 1 . What is John doing? 2. What do you see in the picture? 3. Is John at home? Where is he? 4. Is John reading a newspaper? 5. Where is the librarian standing? 6. Is John right-handed or left-handed C. COMPLETE THE SENTENCES. 7. John is studying _ the library. 8. He is sitting _ a table. 9. He is sitting _ a chair. 10. His legs are _ the table. 11 . There are books _ the shelves. 12. John is writing _ a piece of paper. 13. He's taking notes _ a piece of paper, 14. He _ reading a newspaper. 15. The librarian _ standing _ the circulation desk. 16. Another student is sitting _ John. *See Chart 4-5 for information about nouns with irregular plural forms. 116 ■

CHAPTER 3



A. VOCABULARY CHECKLIST write a check* a bank name and address sign a check cash first name! given name sign her name a check middle initial the date last name ! family name / surname

B. ANSWER THE QUESTIONS. 1. What is Mary doing? 2. What is Mary's address? 3. What is Mary's full name? 4. What is Mary's middle initial? 5. What is Mary's last name? 6. How much money does Mary want? 7. What is in the upper left corner of the check? 8. What is in the lower left corner of the check? 9. What is the name of the bank? C. COMPLETE THE SENTENCES. 10. Mary is writing a _ . 11. She is signing _ name. 12. The name _ the bank is First National Bank. 13. Mary lives _ 3471 Tree Street. 14. Mary lives _ Chicago, Illinois. 15. Mary's name and address are _ the upper left corner the check. * Check (American English) is spelled cheque in British and Canadian English. The pronunciation of check and cheque is the same. EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) ■ 717

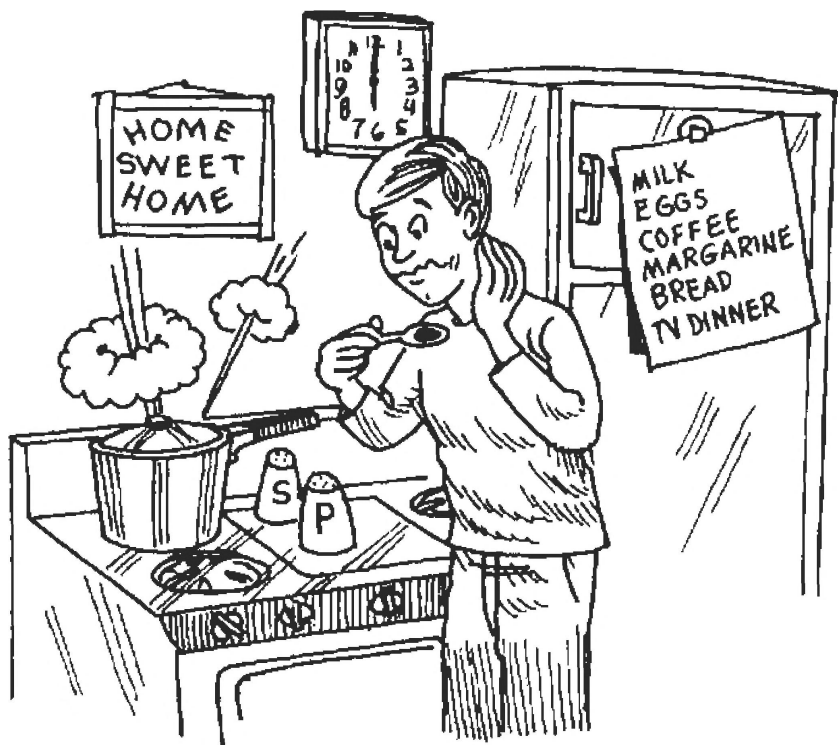
| | | |
|---|--|--|
| MARY S. JONES
3471 TREE ST.
CHICAGO, IL 60665 | | 212 |
| PAY TO THE ORDER OF <u>Cash</u> | | <u>May 31 95</u> |
| <u>Twenty five and 00/100</u> | | \$ 25 00 |
| FIRST NATIONAL BANK
605 MICHIGAN AVE.
CHICAGO, IL 60603 | | DOLLARS |
| ⑆021 200911 438 200 | | <u>Mary S. Jones</u> |

A. VOCABULARY CHECKLIST cash a check a bank teller a man { singular } stand in line a counter men (plural) * a line a woman (singular) 'women (plural)* people (plural) * B. ANSWER THE QUESTIONS. 1 . What is Mary doing? 6. How many men are there in the picture? 2. Is Mary at a store? Where is she? 7. How many women are there in the picture? 3. What do you see in the picture? picture? 4. Who is standing behind Mary, a man or a woman? picture? 5. Who is standing at the end of the line? 9. How many people are standing in line? line, a man or a woman? C. COMPLETE THE SENTENCES. 10. Mary is _ a bank. 11. Four people _ standing in line. 12. Mary is standing _ the counter, 13. The bank teller is standing _ the counter. 14. A woman _ standing _ Mary. 15. Mary _ standing _ the end _ the line. 16. A man _ standing _ the end _ the line. 17. A businessman _ standing _ the woman with the big hat and the young man in jeans. *Sec Char: 4-5 for information about nouns with irregular plural forms. 118 m CHAPTER 3

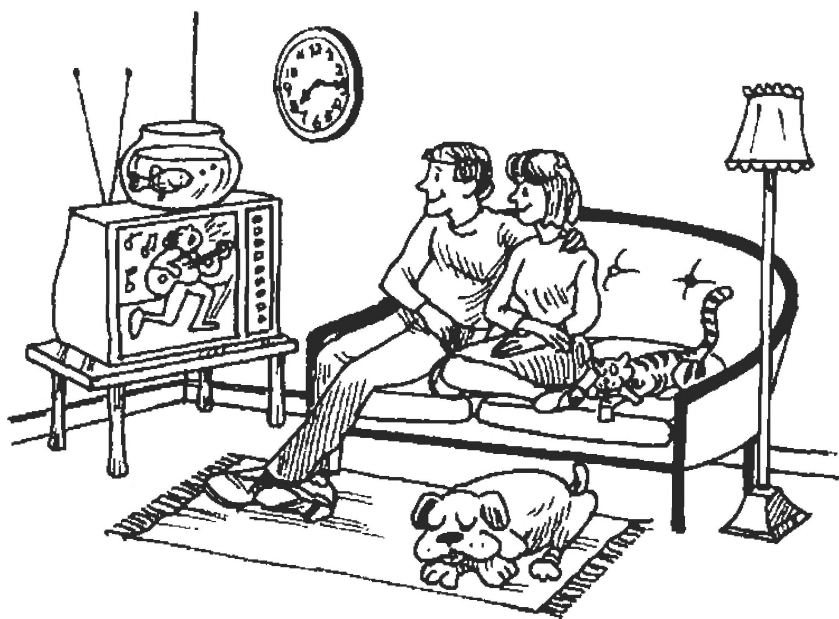


A. VOCABULARY CHECKLIST cook a kitchen bread cook dinner a list I a grocery list coffee make dinner a pot cm egg taste (food) a refrigerator butter a stove milk a pepper shaker pepper a salt shaker salt B. ANSWER THE QUESTIONS. 1 . What is John doing? 2. What do you see in the picture? 3. Where is John? 4. Is John tasting his dinner? 5. Is John a good cook? 6. Where is the refrigerator? 7. What is on the refrigerator? 8. Is the food on the stove hot or cold? 9. Is the food in the refrigerator hot or cold? C. COMPLETE THE SENTENCES. 10. John is making dinner. He's _ the kitchen. 11 . There is a pot _ the stove. 12. The stove is _ the refrigerator. 13. There is a grocery list _ the refrigerator door, 14. A salt shaker and a pepper shaker are the stove. 15. There is hot food _ top _ the stove. 16. There is cold food _ the refrigerator.

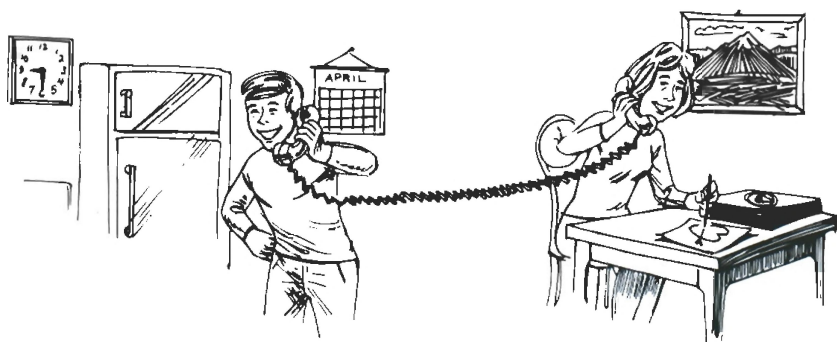
EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) ■ 779



A. VOCABULARY CHECKLIST watch TV / television a cat a living room sit on a sofa a dog a rag sing a singer sleep a fishboivl a sofa swim a floor a lamp a TV set 1 a television set ANSWER THE QUESTIONS. What are John and Mary doing? 8. Is the cat walking? What is the What do you see in the picture? cat doing? Are Mary and John in a kitchen? 9. What is the dog doing? Where are they? 10. What is on top of the TV set? Where is the lamp? 11. Is the fish watching TV? Where is the rug? 12. What is on the TV screen? Where is the dog? What are John and Mary watching? Where is the cat? C. COMPLETE THE SENTENCES. 13. John and Mary _ watching TV. 14. They sitting a sofa. 15. They sleeping. 16. There is a rug die floor. 17. A dog sleeping the rug. 18. A cat sleeping the sofa. 120 ■ CHAPTER 3

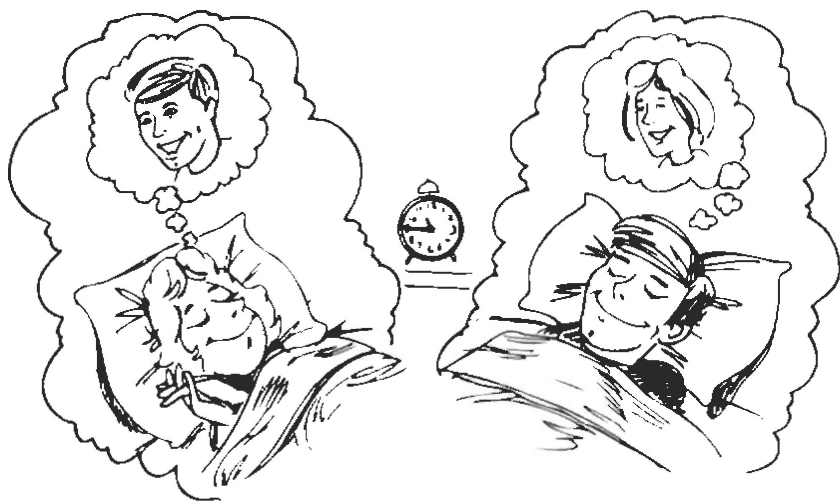


A. VOCABULARY CHECKLIST talk to (someone) an arrow a piece of paper talk on the phone a calendar a telephone book talk to each other a heart a zvall smile a phone/a telephone draw a picture a picture a picture of a mountain B. ANSWER THE QUESTIONS. 1 . What are John and Mary doing? 2. What do you see in the picture? 3. Is John happy? Is Mary happy? Are John and Mary smiling? 4. Are they sad? 5. Who is standing? Who is sitting? 6. Is John in his bedroom? Where is John? C. COMPLETE THE SENTENCES. 14. John and Mary _ talking _ the phone. 15. John _ talking _ Mary, Mary _ talking _ John, They _ talking to _ other. 16. John is _ the kitchen. He's standing _ the refrigerator, 17. There is a calendar _ the wall next to the refrigerator. 1 8. Mary _ sitting _ a table. She's _ a picture. 19. There is a telephone book _ the table. 20. There is picture _ a mountain _ the table. 7. What is Mary drawing? 8. W7hat is on Mary's table? 9. What is on the wall next to the refrigerator? 10. Where is the clock? 1 1 . What time is it? 12. What is on the wall above the table? EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) ■ 121



A. VOCABULARY CHECKLIST sleep a bed dream a dream dream about (someone/something) a head a pillow B. ANSWER THE QUESTIONS. 1 . What is Mary doing? 2. What is John doing? 3. What are Mary and John doing? 4. What do you see in the picture? 5. Is Mary in her bedroom? 6. Is John in class? Where is he? 7. Is John standing or lying down? 8. Is Mary dreaming? 9. Are Mary and John dreaming about each other? 10. Are John and Mary in love? C. COMPLETE THE SENTENCES. 11 . John and Mary _ sleeping. They are _ bed, 12. John _ dreaming _ Mary. Mary _ dreaming _ John. They _ dreaming _ each other. 13. Mary's head is _ a pillow. 14. John and Mary _ in the living room. 15. They _ asleep. They _ awake. 16. John and Mary love each other. They are _ _ love.

122 m CHAPTER 3



■ EXERCISE 41 — REVIEW: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Use the SIMPLE PRESENT or the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE.

1. I (sit) Off) sitting _ in class right now. I (sit, always) always sit _ in the same seat every day.
2. Ali (speak) _ _ _ Arabic, but right now he (speak) _ _ _ English.
3. Right now we (do) _ an exercise in class. We (do) _ exercises in class every day.
4. I'm in class now. I (look) _ _ at my classmates. Kim (write) _ in his book. Francisco (look) _ out the window. Yoke (bite) _ her pencil. Abdullah (smile) _ . Maria (sleep) _ . Jung-Po (chew) _ _ _ _ _ gum.
5. The person on the bench in the picture below is Barbara. She's an accountant. She (work) _ for the government. She (have) _ an hour for lunch every day. She (eat, often) _ lunch in the park. She (bring, usually) _ a sandwich and some fruit with her to the park. She (sit, usually) _ on a bench, but sometimes she (sit) _ on the grass. While she's at the park, she (watch) _ people and animals. She (watch)

EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) ■ 123



_ joggers and squirrels. She (relax) _ when she eats at the park. 6. Right now I (look) _ at a picture of Barbara. She (be, not) _ at home in the picture. She (be) _ at the park. She (sit) _ on a bench. She (eat) _ her lunch. Some joggers (run) _ _ on a path through the park. A squirrel (sit) _ on the ground in front of Barbara. The squirrel (eat) _ a nut. Barbara (watch) _ _ the squirrel. She (watch, always) _ _ squirrels when she eats lunch in the park. Some ducks (swim) _ in the pond in the picture, and some birds (fly) _ in the sky. A police officer (ride) _ a horse. He (ride) _ a horse through the park every day. Near Barbara, a family (have) _ a picnic. They (go) _ on a picnic every week. H EXERCISE 42 — ORAL: Bring to class one or two pictures of your country (or any interesting picture). Ask your classmates to describe the picture(s). ■ EXERCISE 43— WRITTEN: Choose one of the pictures your classmates brought to class. Describe the picture in a composition. EXERCISE 44 — REVIEW: Choose the correct completion. 1 . Jack lives A. in 2. Anita and Pablo A. watch China. B. at . TV right now. B. watching 3. “ _ you writing a letter to your parents?” “No. I’m studying.” A. Do B. Are 4. I _ like to write letters. A. no B. am not C. on C. are watching C. Don’t C. don’t 124 ■ CHAPTER 3

5. "Jack has six telephones in his apartment." "I _ you. No one needs six telephones in one apartment." A. am not believing B. believe C. 6. When I want to know the time, I _ a clock. A. see B. watch C. 7. I need _ a new notebook. A. buy B. to buy C. 8. " _ a cup of tea?" "Yes, thank you," A. Would you like B. Do you like C. 9. "Do you know Fatima?" "Yes, I do. I _ she is a very nice person." A. am thinking B. thinking C. 10. There _ twenty-two desks in this room. A. be B. is C. 11. Pilots sit _ an airplane. A. in front of B. in the front of C. 12. I live _ 6601 Fourth Avenue. A. in B. on C. ■

EXERCISE 45— REVIEW: Correct the mistakes. 1. It's raining today. I am needing my umbrella. 2. Do you want go downtown with me? 3. There's many problems in big cities today, 4. I like New York City. I am thinking that it is a wonderful city. 5. Does Abdul be sleeping right now? 6. Why you are going downtown today? 7. I'm listening you. 8. Are you hearing a noise outside the window? 9. I'd like see a movie tonight. don't believe look at buying Like you think are front of at EXPRESSING PRESENT TIME (PART 2) 125

10. Kunio at a restaurant right now. He usually eat at home, but today he eatting dinner at a restaurant. 11. I am liking flowers. They are smelling good. 12. Mr. Rice woulds likes to have a cup of tea, 13. How many students there are in your class? 14. Alex is siting at his desk. He writting a letter. 1 5. Yoko and Ivan are study grammar right now. They want learn English. 16. Where do they are sitting today? 126 ■ CHAPTER 3

CHAPTER 4 Nouns and Pronouns ■ EXERCISE I: Name things that belong to each category. Make a list. Compare your list with your classmates' lists. All of the words you use in this exercise are called "nouns."

1. Name clothing you see in this room, (shin)
2. Name kinds of fruit, (apple)
3. Name things you drink, (coffee)
4. Name parts of the body, (head)
5. Name kinds of animals, (horse)
6. Name cities in the United States and Canada. (New York, Montreal . . .)
7. Name languages. (English)
8. Name school subjects, (history)

4-1 NOUNS: SUBJECTS AND OBJECTS

NOUN A noun is used as the subject of a sentence. A (a) Birds

1. **ny-** 1 noun is used as the object of a verb.*

subject verb In (a): Birds is a noun, It is used as the subject of the sentence.

NOUN NOUN In (b): pen is a NOUN. It has the article a in (b) | John | is holding a pen. | from of it; a pen is used as the object of the verb subject verb object is holding .

NOUN NOUN A noun is also used as the object of a (0 | Birds { fly 1 in 1 the sky. I preposition. subject verb prep. object of prep. In (e): in is a preposition (prep.). The noun sky (with the article the in front) is the object of NOUN NOUN NOUN the preposition in. (c) 1 John is holding | a pen | in | his hand. |

Examples of some common prepositions: about. subject verb object prep. object of prep. across , at , between, by, for, from, in, of on, to, with. *Some verbs are followed by an object. These verbs are called transitive verbs (v,t. in a dictionary). Some verbs are not followed by an object. These verbs are called intransitive verbs (v,i. in a dictionary).

NOUNS AND PRONOUNS ■ 127



CHAPTER 4

Nouns and Pronouns

| EXERCISE 2: Describe the grammatical structure of the sentences as shown in items 1 and 2. Then identify each noun. Is the noun used as; • the subject of the sentence? • the object of the verb? • the object of a preposition? 1 . Marie studies chemistry. | _ Marie _ | _ studies _ | chemistry I _ (none) _ | _ (none) _ | subject verb object preposition object of prep. Marie = a noun, subject of the sentence chemistry = a noun, object of the verb “studies” 2. The children are playing in the park. | The children \ are playing | _ (none) _ | _ in _ | _ the park _ | subject verb object preposition object of prep. + children = a noun, subject of the sentence park - a noun, object of the preposition, “in” 3. Children like candy. subject verb object preposition object of prep. 4. The teacher is erasing the board with her hand. subject verb object preposition object of prep. . xMike lives in Africa. 1 1 1 1 1 1 subject verb object preposition object of prep. i. The sun is shining. 1 1 1 I 1 1 subject verb object preposition object of prep. r. Robert is reading a book about butterflies, l_ 1_ 1 1 I 1 subject verb object preposition object of prep. >. Tom and Ann live with their parents. i_ i_ i 1 1 1 subject verb object preposition object of prep. 128 ■ CHAPTER 4

9. Monkeys eat fruit and insects. subject verb object
 preposition object of prep. 10. Mary and Bob help Sue with her
 homework. I _ I _ I _ I _ I _ . _ subject verb object preposition object
 of prep. 11. Ships sail across the ocean. I _ : _ I _ I _ I _ 1 _ . _ subject
 verb object preposition object of prep. 12. Water contains hydrogen
 and oxygen. i _ i _ i _ i _ i _ subject verb object preposition object of
 prep. 4-2 ADJECTIVE + NOUN (a) I don't like cold weather. (adj)
 + (noun) (b) Alex is a happy child. (adj) + (noun) (c) The hungry
 boy has a fresh apple. (adj) + (noun) (adj) + (noun) Adjectives
 describe nouns. In grammar, we say that adjectives "modify" nouns.
 The word "modify" means "change a little." Adjectives give a little
 different meaning to a noun: cold weather , hot weather > nice
 weather , bad weather , Adjectives come in front of nouns. (d) The
 weather is cold . (noun) + (be) + (adj) Reminder: An adjective can
 also follow be ; the adjective describes the subject of the sentence.
 (See Chart 1-6.) COMMON ADJECTIVES beautiful-ugly big-little
 big-small cheap-expensive clean-dirty cold-hot dangerous-safe dry^
 wei easy-hard easy-difficult good-bad angry important Nationalities
 happy-sad bright intelligent American larger-small busy interesting
 Canadian long-short delicious kind Chinese noisy-quiet famous lazy
 Egyptian old-new favorite nervous Indonesian old-young free nice
 Italian poor-rich fresh ripe Japanese sour-szveet honest serious
 Korean strong-weak hungry wonderful Malaysian Mexican Saudi
 Arabian NOUNS AND PRONOUNS ■ 129

■ EXERCISE 3: Find the adjix: nvus and nouns in the following sentences. 1 . Jim has an expensive bicycle* Jim - a noun; expensive = an adjective; bicycle - a noun 2. My sister has a beautiful house. 3, We often eat at an Italian restaurant. 4, Maria sings her favorite songs in the shower. 5. Olga likes American hamburgers. 6. You like sour apples, but I like sweet fruit* 7. Political leaders make important decisions. 8. Heavy traffic creates noisy streets, 9. Poverty causes serious problems in the world, 10. Young people have interesting ideas about modern music. ■

EXERCISE 4: Add adjectives to the sentences. Use any adjectives that make sense. Think of at least three possible adjectives to complete each sentence. 1 . I don't like . cold /hot/ wet L rainy_ / bad / etc weather. 2. Do you like _ food? 3. I admire _ people. 4. _ people make me angry. 5. Pollution is a/an _ problem in the modern world. 6. I had a/an _ experience yesterday. ■

EXERCISE 5: Find each noun. Is the noun used as: • the subject of the sentence? • the object of the verb? • the object of a preposition? 1 . Bob and his wife like coffee with their breakfast. -* Bob = a noun, used as a subject of the sentence coffee — a noun, used as a subject of the sentence coffee - a noun, object of the verb “like” breakfast = a noun, object of the preposition “with” 130 U CHAPTER 4

2. Jack doesn't have a radio in his car. 3. Monkeys and apes have thumbs. 4. Scientists don't agree on the origin of the earth. 5. Does Janet work in a large office? 6. Egypt has hot summers and mild winters. 7. Many Vietnamese farmers live in small villages near their fields. 8. Large cities face many serious problems. 9. These problems include poverty, pollution, and crime. 10. An hour consists of sixty minutes. Does a day consist of 1440 minutes?

4-3 SUBJECT PRONOUNS AND OBJECT PRONOUNS

SUBJECT PRONOUNS OBJECT PRONOUNS SUBJECT - OBJECT (a) I speak English. (b) Bob knows me . / - me (e) You speak English. (d) Bob knows you . you - you (e) She speaks English. (f) Bob knows her. she - her (g) He speaks English. (h) Bob knows him. he - him (i) It starts at 8:00. (j) Bob knows it. it - it (k) We speak English. (l) Bob talks to us. we - us (m) You speak English. (n) Bob talks to you. you - you (o) They speak English. (p) Bob talks to them . they — them (q) I know Tony . He is a friendly person. A pronoun has the same meaning as a noun. In (q) : he has the same meaning as Tony. In (r) : him has the same meaning as Tony. In grammar, (r) I like Tony. I know him well. we say that a pronoun "refers to" a noun. The pronouns he and him refer to the noun Tony. (s) I have a red book. It is on my desk. Sometimes a pronoun refers to a noun phrase." K — In (s) : it refers to the whole phrase a red book .

NOUNS AND PRONOUNS ■ 131

EXERCISE 6: Complete the sentences. Use pronouns (/ , me, he, him, etc.). 1 . Rita has a book. She _ bought it _ last week. 2. I know the new students, but Tony doesn't know _ yet. 3. I wrote a letter, but I can't send 4. Tom is in Canada. _ . because I don't have a stamp. , is studying at a university. 5. Bill lives in my dorm. I eat breakfast with _ 6. Ann is my neighbor. I talk to _ every day. _ and _ have interesting conversations together. 7. I have two pictures on my bedroom wall. I like _ _ are beautiful. 8. Ann and I have a dinner invitation. Mr. and Mrs. Brown want _ to come to dinner at their house. every morning. 9. Judy has a new car. . is a Toyota. 10. My husband and I have a new car. month. got last EXERCISE 7:

Complete the sentences. Use PRONOUNS. 1 . A: Do you know' Kate and Jim? B: Yes, / _ do. I live near 2. A: Is the chemical formula for w'ater H3O? B : No, _ isn't. _ them , is H2O. 3. A: Would Judy and you like to come to the movie with us? B: Yes, _ w'ould. Judy and _ going to the movie w'ith 4. A: Do Mr. and Mrs. Kelly live in the city? B: No, _ don't. _ w'ould enjoy live in the suburbs. I visited last month. 5. A: Do you know how to spell "Mississippi"? B: Sure! I can spell _ . is easy to spell. 132 rn CHAPTER 4

6. A: Is Paul Cook in your class? B: 7. A: B: 8. A: B: A: B: A:
9. A: B: A: B: Yes, _ is. I sit next to _ . Yoko and I are going to go
downtown this afternoon. Do you want to come with I don't think
so, but thanks anyway. Chris and _ are going to go to the library. _
need to study for our test. Do you and Jack want to join me for
dinner tonight at a Chinese restaurant? Jack and _ usually eat at
home. _ _ need to save our money. _ is not an expensive restaurant,
and the food is really good. Okay. Can you meet Jack and _ there
around six? Great! See you then. Do George and Mike come over to
your house often? Yes, _ do. I invite _ to my house often. We like to
play cards together. Who usually wins your card games? Mike. _ is a
really' good card player. We can't beat _ . NOUNS AND PRONOUNS
133



10. A: Hi, Ann, How do you like your new apartment? B: _ is very nice. A: Do you have a roommate? B: Yes. Maria Hall is my roommate. Do you know _ ? _ is from Miami. A: No, I don't know _ . Do you get along with _ B: Yes, _ _ _ enjoy living together. You must visit _ sometime. Maybe _ can come over for dinner sometime soon. A: Thanks. I'd like that.

4-4 NOUNS: SINGULAR AND PLURAL

SINGULAR PLURAL To make the plural form of most nouns: add -s.

(a) one pen one apple one cup one elephant two pens three apples four cups five elephants (b) baby babies

End of noun: consonant + -y city cities Plural form: change ^ to E add -es . (c) boy boys End of noun: vowel + -y key keys Plural form: add -s. (d) wife wives End of noun: -fe or -/ thief thieves Plural form: change /to u, add -es. (e) dish dishes End of noun: -sh -ch, -ss, -x match matches Plural form: add -es. class classes Pronunciation: /oz/ box boxes (0 tomato tomatoes End of noun: consonant + -o potato potatoes Plural form: add -es. zoo zoos End of noun: vowel + -o radio radios Plural form add -s.

134 m CHAPTER 4

■ EXERCISE 8: Complete the sentences. Use the plural form of the words in the lists. Use each word only one time. LIST A: baby cowboy lady ✓ boy dictionary party city key tray country 1. A'lr. and Mrs. Parker have one daughter and two sons. They have one girl and two boys . 2. The students in my class come from many _ . 3. Women give birth to _ . 4. My money and my _ are in my pocket. 5. I know the names of many _ in the United States and Canada. 6. I like to go to _ . 7. People carry their food on _ 8. We always use our _ 9. Good evening, _ 10. _ ride horses. because I like to meet and talk to people. _ at a cafeteria. _ when we write compositions. and gentlemen. NOUNS AND PRONOUNS ■ 135



LIST B: knife life wife leaf thief 1 1 . Please put the , on the table. 12. Sue and Ann are married. They are . They have husbands. 13. We all have some problems in our . 14. Police officers catch _ 15. It is fall. The _ forks, and spoons . are falling from the trees.

LIST C: bush match tax class potato tomato dish sandwich zoo glass sex 1 6. Bob drinks eight _ of water every day. 17. There are two _ : male and female. 18. Please put the _ and the silverware on the table. 1 9. All citizens pay money to the government every year. They pay their 20. I can see trees and _ outside the window. 21. I want to light the candles, I need some _ . 22. When I make a salad, I use lettuce and _ . 23. Sometimes Sue has a hamburger and French-fried _ for dinner. 24. Some animals live all of their lives in 25 . Mehmet is a student. He likes his 26. We often eat _ for lunch. 136

■ CHAPTER 4

EXERCISE 9: Practice the pronunciation of -s/~es.*

GROUP A: Final -s is pronounced /z/ after voiced sounds. 1.

taxicabs 7. years 2. beds 8. lives 3. dogs 9. trees 4. balls 10. cities 5.

rooms 11. boys 6. coins 12. days GROUP B: Final -s is pronounced /

s/ after vo 13. books 16. groups 14. desks 17. cats 15. cups 18.

students GROUP Cr Final - sf-es is pronounced /a z/ % after “s”

sounds: 19. classes 20. glasses 21. horses 22. places 23. sentences

24. faces 25. offices 26. pieces 27. boxes 28. sexes • after “z”

sounds: 29, sizes 30. exercises 31. roses 32. noises • after “sh”

sounds: 33. dishes 34. bushes . after “ch” sounds: 35. matches 36.

sandwiches • after “ge/dge” sounds: 37. pages 38. ages 39. oranges

40. bridges 41. edges *For more information, see Chart 2-8. NOUNS

AND PRONOUNS ■ 137

■ EXERCISE 10: Practice the pronunciation of - s/-es ,
Find the plural NOUN(s) in each sentence. Pronounce the noun(s).
Then read the sentence aloud. 1 . There are twenty desks in the
room, 2. Oranges are usually sweet. 3. Roses are beautiful flowers.
Rose bushes are beautiful. 4. The weather is terrible. It's raining
cats and dogs. 5. We are reading sentences aloud, 6. I like to visit
new places. 7. We do exercises in class. 8. I need two pieces of
paper. 9. Don wants three sandwiches for lunch. 10. At the zoo you
can see tigers, monkeys, birds, elephants, bears, and snakes. 11 .
Department stores sell many sizes of clothes. 12. The students are
carrying books and bookbags. 13. The teachers have their offices in
this building. 14. Engineers build bridges. 15. People have two ears,
two eyes, two arms, two hands, two legs, and two feet. 16. Square
tables and rectangular tables have four edges. 17. My dictionary has
350 pages. 18. I like apples, bananas, strawberries, and peaches. 19.
There are three colleges in this city. 20. My apartment has
cockroaches in the kitchen. 138 ■ CHAPTER 4

4-5 NOUNS: IRREGULAR PLURAL FORMS SINGULAR PI

URAL HXAMPLLS (a) ch ild children Mr. Smith has one child. Mr, Cook has two children , (b) fool feet I have a right fool and a left fool, I have two feet . (c) man men I see a man on the street. I see two men on the street. (d) mouse mice My cat sees a mouse. Cats like to catch mice. (e) r oo th teeth My tooth hurts. My teeth arc white. (f) zoom an women There's one woman in our class. There are ten women in your class. (g) m fish Bob has an aquarium. He has one fish . Sue has an aquarium. She has seven fish . (h) (none)* people There are fifteen people in this room. (Notice: people does not have a final -s.) * People is always plural. It has no singular form. ■

EXERCISE 1 1— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Use two and the plural form of the NOI-'N. Example: one ehild Response: two children i. one child 7^ one fish 13. one sentence 19. one girl 2. one woman 8. one page 14. one man 20. one exercise 3. one tooth 9, one place 15. one orange 21. one tooth 4. one foot 10. one banana 16. one foot 22, one woman 5. one man 11. one ehild 17. one knife 23. one boy and 6. one mouse 12. one desk 18. one sex one woman ■

EXERCISE 12: The object of the game on the following page is to fill in each list with nouns. Write one noun that begins with each letter of the alphabet if possible. The nouns must belong to the category of the list. When you finish one list, count the number of nouns in your list. That is your score. NOUNS AND PRONOUNS ■

List 1 List 2 List 3 List 4 Things in nature Things you eat
Animals and Things for and drink insects sale at (name of local
store) A air A A A B bushes B B B C C C C D D D D E earth E E E F
fish F F F G grass G G G H H H H I /'ce I I I T 1 T T K K K K L
Leaves L L L M M M M N N N N O oceans O O O P plants P P P Q 0
0 o R rain R R R S stars S S S T trees T T T U U U U V V V V W
water w w w X X X X Y Y Y Y Z Z Z Z Score: U Score: Score: Score:
140 ■ CHAPTER 4

4-6 NOUNS: COUNT AND NONCOUNT SINGULAR

PLURAL COUNT NOUN a book books one book two books some books a lot of books many books a few books NONCOUNT NOUN money some money a tot of money (none) much money a tittle money A COUNT NOUN singular: plural: a + noun noun + -s one + noun A NONCOUNT NOUN singular: plural: Do not use a. A noncount noun does Do not use one . not have a plural form. COMMON NONCOUNT NOUNS advice mail bread pepper furniture money cheese rice help music coffee salt homework peace food soup information traffic fruit sugar jewehy weather meat tea luck work milk water ■ EXERCISE 13: Look at the italicized words. Underline the noun. Is the noun count or NONCOUNT? i.(COUNT) NONCOUNT He sits on a diair. 2. COUNT Cnoncount) He sits on furniture. 3. COUNT NONCOUNT She has a coin . 4. COUNT NONCOUNT She has some money . 5. COUNT NONCOUNT She has some letters , 6. COUNT NONCOUNT She has some mail 7. COUNT NONCOUNT The street is full of traffic . 8. COUNT NON COUNT There are a lot of cars in the street. 9. COUNT NONCOUNT I know a fact about bees. 10. COUNT NONCOUNT I have some information about bees. 11. COUNT NONCOUNT The teacher gives us homework NOUNS AND PRONOUNS ■ 147

12. COUNT NON COUNT We have an assignment.. 13. COUNT NONCOUNT I like music. 14. COUNT NONCOUNT Would you like some coffee? 15. COUNT NONCOUNT Our school has a library . 16. COUNT NONCOUNT People want peace in the world, 17. COUNT NONCOUNT I need some advice . 18. COUNT NONCOUNT Torn has a good job . 19. COUNT NONCOUNT He likes his work. 20. COUNT NONCOUNT Would you like some water with your food? 21. COUNT NONCOUNT Maria wears a lot of jewelry. 22. COUNT NONCOUNT She wears earrings, rings , necklaces, and bracelets . ■ EXERCISE 14— ORAL: Most nouns are count nouns. Complete the following by naming things you see in the classroom. 1 . I see a _ . I see a _ I see a _ and a _ 2. I see two _ . 3. I see three / four / five / six / etc. _ . 4. I see some _ . 5. I see a lot of _ . 6. I see many _ . 142 ■ CHAPTER 4

4-7 USING AN vs. A (a) A dog is an animal. A and an are used in front of singular count nouns. In (a): dog and animal are singular count nouns. Use an in front of words that begin with the vowels a, e, i, (b) I work in an office. and o: an apartment, an elephant, an idea, an ocean, In (e): Notice that an is used because the adjective (old) (c) Mr. Lee is an old man. begins with a vowel and comes in front of a singular count noun (man). (d) I have an uncle. Use an if a word that begins with "it" has a vowel sound: compare: an uncle, an ugly picture. (e) He works at a university. Use a if a word that begins with 'V' has a /vu/ sound: a university* a usual event. (f) I need an hour to finish my work. In some words that begin with "h" the /h/ is not pronounced. Instead the word begins with a vowel sound compare: an hour and an is used: an hour, an honor. (g) I live in a house. He lives in a hotel. In most words that begin with the "h" is pronounced. Use a if the "h" is pronounced. ■

EXERCISE 15: Complete the sentences. Use a or an. 1. Bob is eating _ apple. 2. Tom is eating banana. 3. Alice works in office. 4. I have idea. 5. I have good idea. 6. Sue is talking to _ man. 7. Sue is talking to _____ old man. 8. I need to see _ doctor. 9. Cuba is _ island. 10. Mary is reading _ _ article in the newspaper. 11. Bill is _ uncle. He has _ niece and two nephews, 12. _ hour has sixty minutes. 13. _ horse has hooves. **NOUNS AND PRONOUNS ■ 143**

14. Miss Anderson has _ job. 15. She has _ unusual job.
 16. _ university is _ educational institution. B EXERCISE 16:
 Complete the sentences. Use a or an. 1. Carol is _ nurse. 2. I live in
 _ apartment building. 3. I live in _ noisy apartment building. 4. Jake
 has _ honest face. 5. Does Mark own _ horse? 6. A fly is _ insect, 7.
 Sonya's English class lasts _ hour. 8. I had _ interesting experience.
 9. My father has _ office downtown. It's _ insurance office. 10. Gary
 and Joel are having _ argument in the cafeteria. It is _ unpleasant
 situation. 11. Are you _ responsible person? 12. _ angry woman is
 complaining to the store's manager. 13. _ healthy person gets
 regular exercise. 14. Janet is _ honorable person. 15. My uncle Jake
 has never said _ unkind word. He is _ very special man. 4-8 USING
 A/AN vs. SOME (a) I have a pen. (b) I have some pens. A! An is
 used in front of singular count nouns. In (a); the word pen is a
 singular count noun. Some is used in front of plural count nouns. In
 (b); the word pens is a plural count noun. (c) I have some rice.
 Some is used in front of noncount nouns.* In (c) : the word rice is a
 non count noun. ♦Reminder: Noncount nouns do not have a plural
 form. Noncount nouns are grammatically singular. 144 U CHAPTER

EXERCISE 17: Use a/ati or some with the count nouns in the following sentences. Are the nouns singular or plural? 1 . Bob has . 2. Bob has. 3. I see _ 4. I see _ 5. Are _ 6. Is _ a some . book on his desk, books on his desk. book = a singular count noun ' books — a plural count noun desk in this room, desks in this room. . students standing in the front of the room? 7. I'm hungry. I would like . student standing in the middle of the room? apple. 8. The children are hungry. They would like . . apples. 9. 10. I I . We are doing . 12. We are doing. . children are playing in the street, child is playing in the street. _ exercise in class. _ exercises in class.

EXERCISE 18: Use a, an, or some with the nouns in the following sentences. Are they singular count nouns or noncount nouns? 1 . I need 2. I need some 3. Alice has . 4. Alice has , 5. I'm hungry. I would like. 6. I would like _ . money. * money = a noncount noun . dollar. " dollar = a singular count noun _ mail in her mailbox. _ letter in her mailbox. _ fruit. . apple. 7. Jane is hungry. She would like 8. She would like _ food. 9. I'm thirsty. I'd like . 10. I'd like _ sandwich. _ water. I I . Ann would like . 12, I need _ . glass of water. _ milk. . sugar for my coffee. Please hand me the sugar. Thanks. NOUNS AND PRONOUNS ■ 745

13. I want to make . 14. I need _ sandwich. bread and cheese. 15. I'd like to have . soup with my sandwich. EXERCISE 19: Use *an* or *some*. 1. Sonya is wearing 50/77C _ silver jewelry. She's wearing Q _ necklace and S0I716 _ earrings. 2. We have _ table, _ sofa, and _ chairs in our living room. 3. We have _ furniture in our living room. 4. Sue has a CD player. She is listening to _ music. 5. I'm busy. I have _ homework to do. 6. Jane is very busy. She has _ _ _ work to do. 7. Jane has _ job. She is _ teacher. 8. I'm hungry. I would like orange. 9. The children are hungry. They would like would like _ fruit. 10. I need _ oranges. They 1 1 . I'm confused. I need information about the bus schedule, advice. _ cars, _ 12. I'm looking out the window; I see _ bus, and _ trucks on the street. I see traffic. 13. Bob is having. beans, meat, and bowl of soup for dinner. EXERCISE 20: Use the word in *italics* to complete the sentence. Add -s to a COUNT NOUN (or give the irregular plural form). Do not add -s to a NONCOUNT NOUN. 1. money 2. desk 3. man I need some I see some _ Some _ money desks in this room. men are working in the street. 146 m CHAPTER 4

4. music 5. flower 6. information 7. jewelry 8. furniture 9. chair 10. child 11. homework 12. advice 13. something 14. help 15. leaf 16. food 17. sandwich 18. animal 19. banana I want to listen to some __. Don wants to buy some _ for his girlfriend. I need some _____. hYed wants to buy some __. We need to buy some ____ ■ We need to buy some ____ Some __, are playing in the park. I can't go to the movie because I have some _ to do. Could you please give me some _? I have some _____ for you. I need some _____ with my homework. I'm thirsty. I would like some __. I'm hungry. I would like some __. We're hungry. We want to make some __. I see some __ in the picture. The monkeys are hungry. They would like some __. NOUNS AND PRONOUNS ■ 7 47



20. fruit 2 1 . weather 22. picture 23. rice, bean I'm hungry. I would like some _ . We're having some hot _ right now. I have some _ of my family in my wallet. I usually have some _ and _ for dinner. ■ EXERCISE 21: Change the italicized noun to its plural form if possible, changing a to some. Make other changes in the sentence as necessary. 1 . There is a chair in this room, plural form * There are some chairs in this room. 2. There is some furniture in this room, plural FORM ^ (none) 3. I have a coin in my pocket. 4. I have some money in my wallet. 5. There is some mail in my mailbox. 6. There is a letter in my mailbox. 7. There's a lot of traffic on Main Street. 8. There's a air on Main Street. 9. Our teacher assigns a lot of homework. 10. I like rock music. 1 1 . Hong Kong has hot -weather. 12. I need some information and some advice from you. 13. There's a dictionary on the shelf. 14. I'd like to put some cheese on my bread. 15. I hope you do well on your exam. Good luck! 148 ■ CHAPTER 4

■ EXERCISE 22— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Use a, an, or some with the given word. Example: book Example: books Example: money Response : a book Response: some books Response: some money
 1. desk 14. apple 27. window 40. bread 2. desks 15. man 28. horse 41. office 3. animal 16. old man 29. hour 42. food 4. animals 17. men 30. dishes 43. table 5. chair 18. bananas 31. women 44. cheese 6. chairs 19. banana 32. oranges 45. matches 7. furniture 20. fruit 33. orange 46. adjective 8. child 21. island 34. place 47. advice 9. children 22. jewelry 35. places 48. house 10. music 23. university 36. water 49. people 1 1 . homework 24. uncle 37. mail 50. potatoes 12. flower 25. rice 38. letter 51. potato 13. information 26. boys 39. letters 52. sugar • EXERCISE 23: Make the nouns plural where necessary. 1 . Toronto and Bangkok are big city. cities 2. I need some information. ” (no change) 3. Horse are large animals. 4. I like to listen to music when I study. 5. I have two small child. 6. I like to tell them story. 7. There are sixty minute in an hour. 8. Korea and Japan are country in Asia. 9. Children like to play with toy. 10. Our teacher gives us a lot of homework. 1 1 . My bookcase has three shelf. 12. There are five woman and seven man in this class. 13. Bangkok has a lot of hot weather. NOUNS AND PRONOUNS ■ 149

14. Are you hungry? Could I get you some food? 15. Taiwan and Cuba are islands. 16. I drink eight glasses of water every day. 17. Tomatoes are red when they are ripe. 18. There is a lot of traffic at five o'clock. 19. Before dinner, I put dishes, spoon, fork, knife, and napkin on the table. 20. I have many friends. I don't have many enemies. *In British English: a tin of corn. ISO ■ CHAPTER 4

4-9 MEASUREMENTS WITH NONCOUNT NOUNS

- (a) I'd like **some** water.
- (b) I'd like **a glass of** water.
- (c) I'd like **a cup of** coffee.
- (d) I'd like **a piece of** fruit.

Units of measure are used with noncount nouns to express a specific quantity, for example: *a glass of, a cup of, a piece of*.
 In (a): *some water* = an unspecified quantity.
 In (b): *a glass of water* = a specific quantity.

COMMON EXPRESSIONS OF MEASURE

a bag of rice
a bar of soap
a bottle of beer
a bowl of cereal
a box of candy

a bunch of bananas
*a can of corn**
a carton of milk
a glass of water
a head of lettuce

a jar of pickles
a loaf of bread
a piece of cheese
a sheet of paper
a tube of toothpaste



bag



bar



bottle



box



can



carton



jar



tube



bunch

■ EXERCISE 24: Complete the following. Use a piece of a cup of a glass of or a bowl of You are hungry and thirsty'. What would you like? 1. a cup_ ofJ_a glass of _ _ tea 2. _ bread 3. _ water 4. _ coffee 5. _ cheese 6. _ soup 7. _ meat 8. _ wine 9. _ fruit 10. _ rice

■ EXERCISE 25: Complete the sentences with nouns. 1. At the store, I bought a carton of _ orange juice / milk / etc 2. I also bought a tube of _ and two bars of 3. I got a can of _ and a jar of _ 4. I also got a loaf of _ and a box of _ 5. I wanted to get a head of _ , but none of it looked fresh. 6. I got a couple of bottles of _ and a jar of _ ,

■ EXERCISE 26— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Use / would like . Use a/ an or some . Example: coffee Response: I would like some coffee, or: I would like a cup of coffee. Example: new pen Response: Td like a new pen. 1. coffee 9. apple 17. sandwich 25. new shirt/ blouse 2. money 10. oranges 18. meat 26. new shoes 3. dollar 11. water 19. roast beef 27. tea 4. paper 12. new pencil 20. soup 28. cheese 5. new book 13. information 21. salt 29. rice 6. new books 14. help 22. sugar 30. bread 7. fruit 15. advice 23. fish 31. chicken 8. banana 16. food 24. new car 32. new furniture NOUNS AND PRONOUNS ■ 757

| EXERCISE 27 — ORAL: Change a lot of to many or much in the following sentences. Use many with count nouns. Use much with noncount nouns,* (See Chart 4-6.) 1 . I don't have a lot of money. -*• I don't have much money. 2. Tom has a lot of problems. 3. I want to visit a lot of cities in the United States and Canada. 4. I don't put a lot of sugar in my coffee. 5. I have a lot of questions to ask you. 6. Sue and John have a small apartment. They don't have a lot of furniture. 7. You can see a lot of people at the zoo on Sunday. 8. Dick doesn't get a lot of mail because he doesn't write a lot of letters. 9. Chicago has a lot of skyscrapers. Montreal has a lot of tall buildings too. 10. Mary is lazy. She doesn't do a lot of work. 11. I don't drink a lot of coffee. 12. Don is a friendly person. He has a lot of friends. 13. Do you usually buy a lot of fruit at the market? 14. Does Don drink a lot of coffee? 15. Do you write a lot of letters? ■

EXERCISE 28: Complete the questions with many or much. 1. How much money do you have in your wallet? 2. How many roommates do you have? 3. How many languages do you speak? 4. How much homework does your teacher usually assign? 5. How much tea do you drink in a day? 6. How much sugar do you put in your tea? 7. How many sentences are there in this exercise? 8. How much water is there in an Olympic-size swimming pool? *Much is usually used only in negative sentences and in questions. Much is rarely used in statements* 152 ■ CHAPTER 4

■ EXERCISE 29— ORAL: Ask questions with how many or how much and are there or is there. Example: students in this room Question: How many students are there in this room? Example: coffee in that pot Question: How much coffee is there in that pot? 1 . restaurants in this city 2. desks in this room 3 . furniture in this room 4. letters in your mailbox today 5. mail in your mailbox today 6. cheese in the refrigerator 7. bridges in this city 8. traffic on the street right now 9. cars on the street 10. people in this room ■

EXERCISE 30: Change some to a few or a little. Use a few with count nouns. Use a little with noncount nouns. (See Chart 4-6.) 1 . I need some paper. -* I need a little paper. 2. I usually add some salt to my food. 3. I have some questions to ask you. 4. Bob needs some help. He has some problems. He needs some advice. 5. I need to buy some clothes. 6. I have some homework to do tonight. 7. I usually get some mail every day. 8. I usually get some letters every day. 9. When I'm hungry in the evening, I usually eat some cheese. 10. We usually do some oral exercises in class every day. NOUNS AND PRONOUNS 753

■ EXERCISE 31 : Use these words in the sentences. If necessary, use the plural form. Use each word only once. bush foot information page child fruit knife paper city furniture ✓ match piece country help money sex edge homezeork monkey traffic 1 . I want to light a candle. I need some _ f71Qtch€S _ . 2. I have a lot of _ _ _ in my wallet. Ini rich. 3. There are two _ : male and female. 4. I would like to visit many _ _ _ in the United States. I'd like to visit Chicago, Los Angeles, Dallas, Miami, and some others. 5. There are some _ , forks, and spoons on the table. 6. I want to take the bus downtown, but I don't know the bus schedule. I need some _ _ about the bus schedule. 7. I want to write a letter. I have a pen, but I need some _ 8. There are three _ in North America: Canada, the United States, and Mexico. 9. "There are a lot of trees and _ in the park. 10. Bob is studying. He has a lot of _ _ _ to do. 11. I like to go to the zoo. I like to watch animals. I like to watch elephants, tigers, and 12. There is a lot of _ on the street during rush hour. 13. My dictionary has 437 _ . 14. This puzzle has 200 _ . 754 ■ CHAPTER 4

1; > . Barbara has four suitcases. She can't carry all of them. She needs some _ . 16. Susie and Bobby are seven years old. "They aren't adults. They're 17. A piece of paper has four _ . 18. We need a new bed, a new sofa, and some new chairs. We need some new _ . 19. People wear shoes on their _ . 20. I like apples, oranges, and bananas. I eat a lot of ■

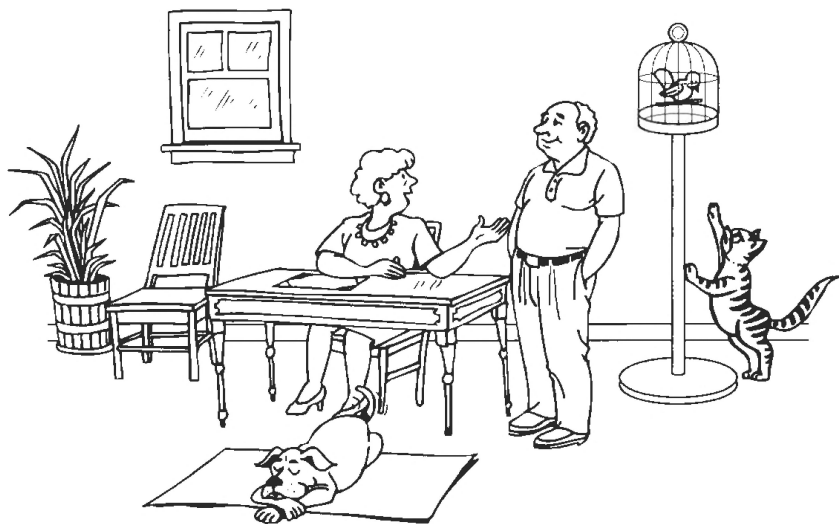
EXERCISE 32: Use these words in the sentences. Use the plural form if necessary. advice glass potato tray centimeter horse sentence valley dish inch size zweather fish leaf strazvberry woman foot man thief work 1 . _ fall from the trees in autumn. 2. Sometimes I have a steak, a salad, and French-fried _ for dinner. 3. When the temperature is around 35°C (77°F), I'm comfortable. But I don't like very hot _ . 4. Cowboys ride _ . 5. Plates and bowls are called _ . 6. Married _ are called wives. 7. _ steal things: money, jewelry, ears, etc. 8. _ are small, red, sweet, and delicious. 9. People carry their food on _ _ _ at a cafeteria. 10. I'm not busy today. I don't have much _ to do. 11. Sweaters in a store often have four _ : small, medium, large, and extra large. **NOUNS AND PRONOUNS ■ 755 OO**

12. I have a problem. I need your help. I need some _ from you. 13. Some _ have mustaches. 14. Mountains are high, and _ are low. 15. Ann has five _ in her aquarium. 16. In some countries, people use cups for their tea. In other countries, they usually use _ for their tea. 17. There are 100 _ in a meter. 18. There are 12 _ in a foot * 19. There are 3 _ in a yard.* 20. There are twenty-five _ in this exercise. 4-10 USING THE (a) A; Where's David? B: He's in the kitchen, (b) A: I have two pieces of fruit for us, an apple and a banana. Which do you want? B: I'd like the apple , thank you, (c) A: It's a nice summer day today. The sky is blue. The sun is hot. B: Yes, I really like summer. A speaker uses the when the speaker and the listener have the same thing or person in mind. The shows that a noun is specific. In (a): Both A and B have the same kitchen in mind. In (b): When B says "the apple," both A and B have the same apple in mind. In (c): Both A and B are thinking of the same sky (there is only one sky for them to think of) and the same sun (there is only one sun for them to think of). (d) Mike has a pen and a pencil The is used with: The pen is blue. • singular count nouns, as in (d). The pencil is yellow. • plural count nouns, as in (e). • noncount nouns, as in (f). (e) Mike has some pens and pencils . In other words, the is used with each of the three kinds of The pens are blue. nouns. The pencils are yellow. (f) Mike has some rice and some cheese. Notice in the examples: the speaker is using the for the The rice is white. second mention of a noun. When the speaker mentions The cheese is yellow. a noun for a second time, both the speaker and listener are now thinking about the same thing. First mention: I have a pen. Second mention: The pen is blue. *1 inch = 2,54 centimeters. 1 foot = 30.48 centimeters. 1 yard = 0.91 meters.

■ EXERCISE 33: Complete the sentences with the or a/an.

1. I have Q notebook and _ grammar book. _ notebook is brown. _ grammar book is red. 2. Right now Pablo is sitting in class. He's sitting between _ woman and _ man. _ woman is Graciela. _ man is Mustafa. 3. Susan is wearing _ ring and _ necklace. _ ring is on her left hand. 4. Tony and Sara are waiting for their plane to depart. Tony is reading _ magazine. Sara is reading _ newspaper. When Sara finishes _ newspaper and Tony finishes _ magazine, they will trade. 5. In the picture below, there are four figures: _ circle, _ triangle, _ square, and _ rectangle. _ circle is next to _ triangle. _ square is between _ triangle and _ rectangle. 6. Linda and Anne live in _ apartment in _ old building. They like _ apartment because it is big. _ building is very old, It was built more than one hundred years ago. 7. I gave my friend „ _ card and _ flower for her birthday. _ card wished her "Happy Birthday." She liked both _ card and _ flower. 8. We stayed at _ hotel in New York. _ hotel was very expensive.

■ EXERCISE 34: Complete the sentences with the or a/an,
(1) A: Look at the picture on this page of your grammar book.
What do you see? (2) B: I see _ chair, _ desk, _ window, ____ plant.
(3) A: Where is _ chair? (4) B: _ chair is under _ window. (5) A:
Where is _ plant? (6) B: _ plant is beside _ chair. (7) A: Do you see
any people? (8) B: Yes. I see _ man and _ woman. ____ man is
standing. _ woman is sitting down. (9) A: Do you see any animals?
(10) B: Yes. I see _ dog, _ cat, and __ bird in _ cage. (11) A: What is
dog doing? (12) B: It's sleeping. (13) A: How about _ cat? (14) B: _
cat is watching _ bird. 158 ■ CHAPTER 4



EXERCISE 35: Complete the sentences with the or a/ an. 1.

A: I need to go shopping. I need to buy coat. B: I'll go with you. I need to get umbrella. 2. A: Hi! Come in! B: A: B: Hi! weather is terrible today! It's cold and wet outside. Well, it's warm in here. What should I do with my coat and umbrella? A: You can put coat in that closet. I'll take umbrella and put it in kitchen where it can dry. My cousin Jane has _ good job. She works in _ office. She uses _ computer. 4. A: B: A: B: How much longer do you need to use computer? Why? I need to use it too. Just five more minutes,, then you can have it. 5. A: B: A: I need stamp for this letter. Do you have one? Yes. Here. Thanks. 6. A: Would you like egg for breakfast? B: No thanks. I'll just have Glass of juice and some toast. 7. A: Do you see my pen? I can't find it. B: A: There it is. It's on floor. Oh. I see it. Thanks. 8. A: B: Be sure to look at moon tonight. Why? A: moon is full now, and it's beautiful. 9. A: Can I call you tonight? B: No. I don't have telephone in my apartment yet. I just moved in yesterday. 10. A: Could you answer _ telephone? Thanks. B: Hello? "

NOUNS AND PRONOUNS ■ 759

4-1 1 USING 0 (NO ARTICLE) TO MAKE

GENERALIZATIONS (a) 0 Apples are good for you. (b) 0 Students use 0 pens and 0 pencils. (c) 1 like to listen to 0 music. (d) 0 Rice is good for you. No article (symbolized by 0) is used to make generalizations with: * plural count nouns, as in (a) and (b), and * noncount nouns, as in (c) and (d). (e) Tom and Ann ate some fruit. compare: In (a), the word apples is general. It refers to all The apples were very good, but apples, any apples. No article (0) is used. the bananas were too ripe. In (e), the word apples is specific, so the is used in front of it. It refers to the specific apples that Tom and Ann ate. (f) We went to a concert last night. The compare: In (c), music is general. In (f), the music is music was very good. specific. ■ EXERCISE 36: Complete the sentences with the or 0 (no article). 1 . 0 _ sugar is sweet. 2. Could you please pass me tlle _ sugar? 3. Oranges are orange, and _ bananas are yellow. 4. There was some fruit on the table. I didn't eat _ bananas because they were soft and brown. 5. Everybody needs _ food to live. 6. We ate at a good restaurant last night. _ food was excellent. 7. _ salt tastes salty, and _ pepper tastes hot. 8. Could you please pass me _ salt? Thanks. And could I have _ pepper too? 9. _ coffee is brown. 10. Steven made some coffee and some tea. _ coffee was very good, I didn't taste _ tea. 11. I like _ fruit. I also like _ vegetables, 1 2. There was some food on the table. The children ate _ fruit, but they didn't want _ vegetables. 13. _ pages in this book are full of grammar exercises, 14. _ books consist of _ pages. 160 ■ CHAPTER 4

4-12 USING SOME AND ANY statement: (a) Alice has some money . Use some in a statement. negative: (b) Alice doesn't have any money. Use any in a negative sentence. QUESTION!: (c) Does Alice have any money ? (d) Does Alice have some money? Use either some or any in a question. (e) I don't have any money . (noncount noun) (f) I don't have any matches . (plural count noun) Any is used with noncount nouns and plural count nouns.

EXERCISE 37: Use some or any to complete the sentences, 1 . Sue has _ money, 2. I don't have any _ money. 3. Do you have _ money? 4. Do you need _ help? 5. No, thank you, I don't need _ help. 6. Ken needs _ help. 7. Anita usually doesn't get _ help. 8. We don't have _ mail. 9. There are _ apples, _ fruit in the apartment. We don't have _ bananas, or _ oranges. 10. The house is empty. There aren't _ people in the house. 11. I need to go to the grocery store. I need to buy _ paper. Do you have _ paper? 12. Steve is getting along fine. He doesn't have _ paper? 13. I need to go to the grocery store. I need to buy _ groceries? 14. I'm not busy tonight. I don't have _ problems. _ food. Do you have _ food? 15. I don't have _ money in my purse. 16. There are _ beautiful flowers in my garden this year. NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

EXERCISE 38 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Ask a classmate a question about what he or she sees in this room. Use any in the question. Example : desks student a: Do you see any desks in this room? student n: Yes, I do, I see some desks / a lot of desks / twenty desks. Example: monkeys student a: Do you see any monkeys in this room? student B: No, I don't. I don't see any monkeys. 1. books 6. food 11. hats 16. red sweaters 2. flowers 7. curtains 12, signs on the wall 17. dogs or cats 3. dictionaries 8. paper 13. bicycles 18. bookshelves 4. birds 9, bookbags 14. erasers 19. women 5. furniture 10. children 15. pillows 20. light bulbs

EXERCISE 39: Use any or a . Use any with noncount nouns and plural count nouns. Use a with singular count nouns. any money. Q pen. 1 . I don't have _ 2. I don't have _ 3. I don't have QtlV brothers or sisters. 4. We don't need to buy _ new furniture. 5. Mr, and Mrs, Kelly don't have _ children. 6. I can't make _ 7. Ann doesn't want coffee. There isn't . _ cup of coffee. coffee in the house. 8. I don't like this room because there aren't _ windows. 9. Amanda is very unhappy because she doesn't have _ friends. 10. I don't need _ help. I can finish my homework by myself. 11. I don't have _ comfortable chair in my dormitory room, 12. I'm getting along fine. I don't have _ problems. 13. Joe doesn't have _ car, so he has to take the bus to school. 14. I don't have ^ _ homework to do tonight. 15. I don't need _ new clothes.* 16. I don't need new suit. *C hikes- is always plural, I Tie word "dorhes" docs noi have a singular form. 162 ■ CHAPTER

4-13 INDEFINITE PRONOUNS: SOMETHING, SOMEONE, ANYTHING, ANYONE STATEMENT; (a) Alary bought something at the store. (b) Jim talked to someone alter class. In a statement, use soma king or someone negative: (e) Mary didn't buy anything at the store, (d) Jim didn't talk to anyone after class. In a negative sentence, use anything or anyone. QUESTION: (e) Did Mary buy something at the store? I'd Mary buy anything at the store? (f) Did Jim talk to someone after class? Did Jim talk to anyone after class? In a question, use either something! someone or anyth ingjanyone. ■ EXERCISE 40: Complete the sentences. Use something , someone , anything , or anyone .*

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8.
9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. I have _ something Do you have _ Ken doesn't have _ I bought _ Rosa didn't buy _ Did you buy _ My roommate is speaking to Yuko didnh tell _ I talked to _ Did you talk to _ Kim gave me _ Paul didn't give me _ Did Paul give you _ in my pocket. _ in your pocket? _ in his pocket, _ when I went shopping yesterday. _ when she went shopping. _ when you went shopping? _ on the phone. _ her secret. _ at the phone company about my bill. _ about your problem? _ for my birthday. _ for my birthday. ____ for your birthday? My brother is sitting at his desk. He's writing a letter to The hall is empty. I don't see _

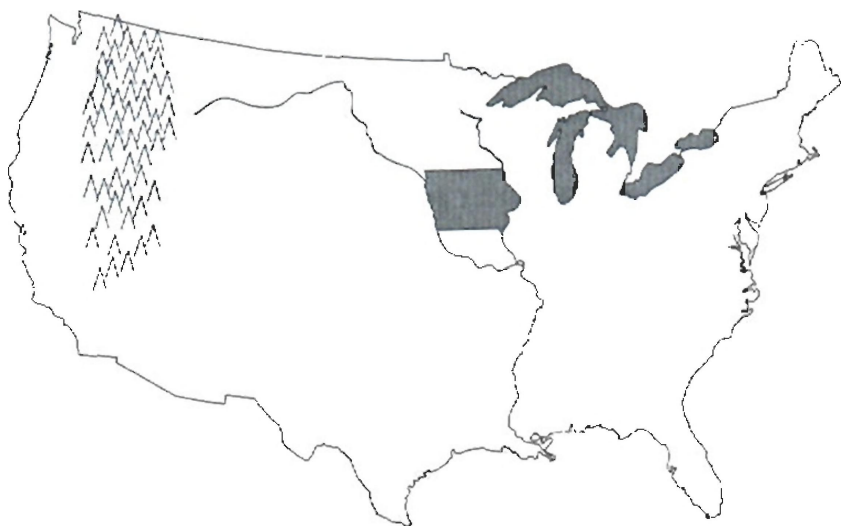
* Someone and somebody have the same meaning. Anyone and anybody have the same meaning. You may also wish to include practice with somebody and anybody in this exercise. NOUNS AND PRONOUNS ■ 163

16. A: Listen. Do you hear a noise? B: No, I don't. I don't hear _ _ . 17. A: Did you talk to Jim on the phone last night? B: No. I didn't talk to _ . 18. A: Where's your bicycle? B: _ stole it. 19. A: Does _ have some change? I need to use the pay phone. B: Here. A: Thanks. I'll pay you back later. 20. A: What did you do last weekend? B: I didn't do _ . I stayed home.

4-14 INDEFINITE PRONOUNS: NOTHING AND NO ONE (a) I didn't say anything. (b) I said nothing. (a) and (b) have the same meaning. Anything is used when the verb is negative. Nothing is used when the verb is affirmative.* (c) Bob didn't see anyone at the park. (d) Bob saw no one at the park. (c) and (d) have the same meaning. Anyone is used when the verb is negative. No one is used when the verb is affirmative.* • incorrect: I didn't say nothing . INCORRECT: Bob didn't see no one at the park , EXERCISE 41: Complete the sentences by using anything , nothing , anyone , or no one. 1 . Jim doesn't know _ about butterflies. 2. Jim knows _ about butterflies. 3. Jean didn't tell . 4. Jean told _ 5. There's _ about her problem. . about her problem. 6. There isn't . in my pocket. It's empty. _ in my pocket.

164 rn CHAPTER 4

7. Liz went to a shoe store, but she didn't buy _ . 8. Liz bought _ at the shoe store. 9. I got _ in the mail today. My mailbox was empty. 10. George sat quietly in the corner. He didn't speak to _ 11. The office is closed from 12:00 to 1:00. _ is there during the lunch hour. 12. I know _ about nuclear physics. 13. _ was at home last night. Both my roommate and I were out. 14. Joan has a new apartment. She doesn't know _ in her apartment building yet. 15. A: Do you know _ about Iowa? B: Iowa? I know _ about Iowa. A: It's an agricultural state that is located between the Mississippi and Missouri rivers. ■ EXERCISE 42— REVIEW: Describe the grammatical structure of the sentences as shown in item 1 . 1 . Mr. Cook is living in a hotel. | Mr Cook _ | _ is | Mng _ | _ (none) _ | _ in _ | _ a hotel _ subject verb object preposition object of prep. 2. Anita carries her books in her bookbag. i _ i _ i _ i _ i _ subject verb object preposition object of prep. NOUNS AND PRONOUNS ■ 165



3. Snow falls. subject verb object preposition object of prep. 4. Monkeys sleep in trees. 1 1 1 1 1 subject verb object preposition object of prep. 5. The teacher is writing words on the chalkboard. subject verb object preposition object of prep. 6. I like apples. 1 1 1 1 I 1 subject verb object preposition object of prep. ■

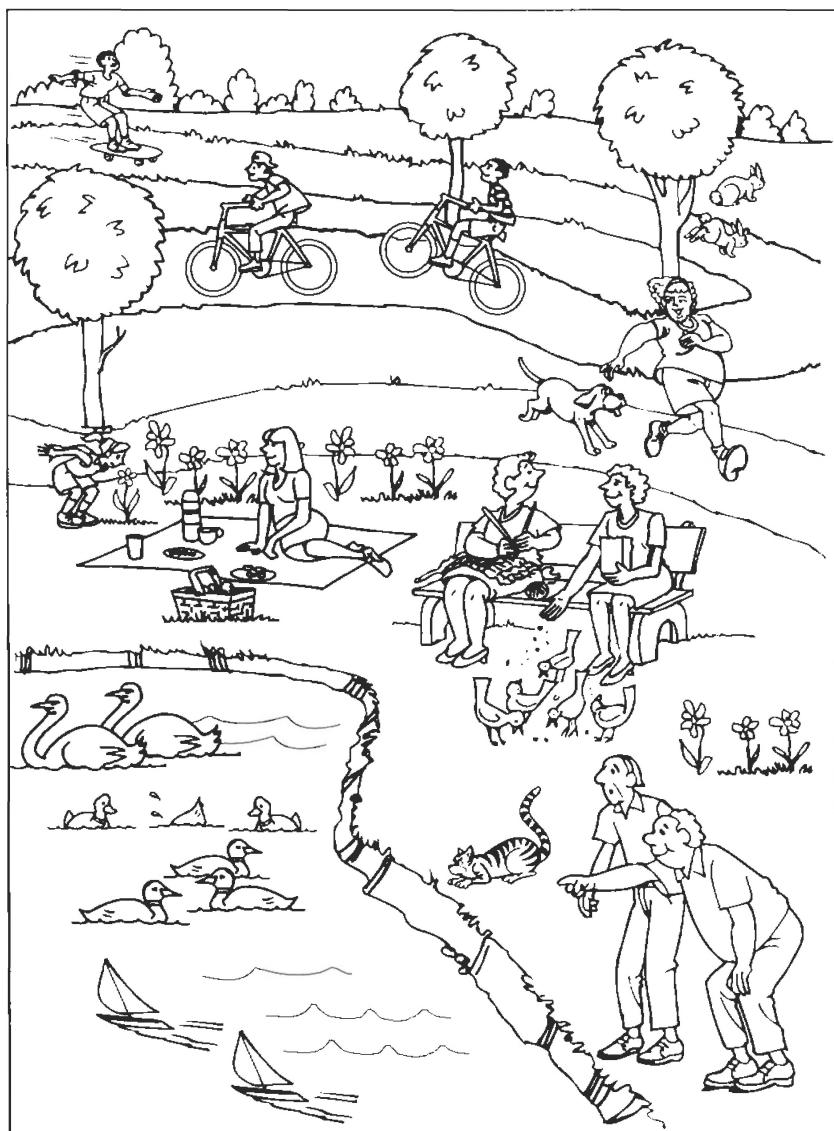
EXERCISE 43 — REVIEW: A complete sentence has a subject and a verb. An incomplete sentence is a group of words that does not have a subject and a verb. If the words are a complete sentence, change the first letter to a capital letter (a big letter) and add final punctuation (a period or a question mark). If the words are an incomplete sentence, write “Inc.” to mean “Incomplete.” 1 . monkeys like bananas -* Action keys like bananas . 2. in my garden Inc. 3. do you like sour apples -* D,Jo you like sour apples? 4. rain falls 5. teaches English 6. this class ends at two o'clock 7. do the students go to class on Saturdays 8. in the classroom 9. my mother works in an office LO. my father to foreign countries on business every month 166 ■ CHAPTER 4

11. in Spain this month 1 2. docs your brother have a job
 13. does not work 14. where do you work 1 5. my brother lives in
 an apartment 16. has a roommate 1 7. the apartment has two
 bedrooms 18. a small kitchen and a big living room 19. on the third
 floor 20. pays the rent on the first day of every month ■ EXERCISE
 44 — REVIEW: Choose the correct completion. 1 . My sister and I
 live together. Our parents call A on the telephone often. A. us B.
 them C, we D, they 2. Tom has a broken leg, I visit _ in the hospital
 every day. A. he B. him C. them D. it 3. Sue and I are good friends. _
 spend a lot of time together A. They B. You C. We D. She 4. Our
 children enjoy the zoo. We take _ to the zoo often. A. it B. they C.
 them D. him 5. Mary drives an old car. She takes good care of _ . A.
 her B. them C. it D. him 6. Jack and _ don't know Mr. Bush. A. I B.
 me C. us D, them 7. Ms. Gray is a lawyer in Chicago. Do you know _
 ? A. them B. it C. him D. her 8. Ahmed lives near Yoko and _ . A. I
 B. me C, him D. her 9. My sister and a friend are visiting me. _ are
 visiting here for two days. A. She B. "They C. We D. "Them 1 0. Do _
 have the correct time? A. you B. them C. him D, her NOUNS AND
 PRONOUNS ■ 167

■ EXERCISE 45 — REVIEW: Correct the errors in the following. 1 . Omar a car has. -*■ Omar has a car. 2. Our teacher gives tests difficult. 3. I need an advice from you. 4. Alex helps Mike and I. 5. I like rock musics. I listen to them every day. 6. Babys cry. 7. Mike and Tom in an apartment live. 8. There are seven woman in this class. 9. I don't like hot weathers. 10. I usually have a egg for breakfast, 1 1 . There are nineteen peoples in my class. 12. Sun rises every morning. 13. Olga and Ivan has three childrens. 14. The students in this class do a lot of homeworks every day. 15. How many language do you know? 16. I don't have many money. 17. There is twenty' classroom in this building. 1 8. I don't know nothing about ancient history. 168 m CHAPTER 4

■ EXERCISE 46— REVIEW: In pairs, pretend that tomorrow you are moving into a new apartment together. What do you need? Ask each other questions. Discuss your needs. In writing, list the things you need and indicate quantity (tzvo, some, a lot of, a little, etc.). List twenty to thirty things. Be sure to write down the quantity. You are completing this sentence: “Wfe need . . . Example: We need . . . 1. a sofa. 2. two beds. 3. a can opener. 4. some spaghetti. 5. a little fruit. 6. some bookcases, etc. ■ EXERCISE 47— REVIEW: Make a list of everything in the picture by completing the sentence “I see . . . Try to use numbers (e.g., three spoons) or other units of measure (e.g., a box of candy). Use a for singular count nouns (e.g., a fly). Example: I see three spoons, a box of candy, a fly, etc. StT ■ EXERCISE 48— REVIEW: In pairs, ask and answer questions about the things and people in the picture on the following page. Example: STUDENT a: STUDENT B: STUDENT A: STUDENT B: STUDENT A'. STUDENT B: STUDENT A: How many boys are there in the picture? There are three boys in the picture. Are there any flowers? No, there aren't any flowers in the picture. Are you sure? Well, hmmm. I don't see any flowers. Oh? NOUNS AND PRONOUNS 169





5-1 USING BE: PAST TIME PRESENT TIME PAST TIME (a) I am in class today . (b) I was in class yesterday . (c) Alice is at the library today . (d) Alice was at the library yesterday . (e) My friends are at home today * (f) My friends were at home yesterday .

SIMPLE PAST TENSE

| Subject | 1st Person Singular | 2nd Person Singular | 3rd Person Singular | 1st Person Plural | 2nd Person Plural | 3rd Person Plural |
|---------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| I | was | was | was | were | were | were |
| you | were | were | were | were | were | were |
| he | was | was | was | were | were | were |
| she | was | was | was | were | were | were |
| it | was | was | was | were | were | were |
| we | were | were | were | were | were | were |
| you | were | were | were | were | were | were |
| they | were | were | were | were | were | were |

EXERCISE 1 — ORAL: Change the sentences to the past.

- Bob is in class today. * He was in class yesterday too.
- I'm in class today. > I was in class yesterday too.
- Mary is at the library today.
- We're in class today.
- You're busy today.
- I'm happy today.
- The classroom is hot today.
- Ann is in her office today.
- Tom is in his office today.
- Ann and Tom are in their offices today.

EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 777



CHAPTER 5

Expressing Past Time

| EXERCISE 2 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Talk about today and yesterday. Example: Response: Example: Response: I'm in class. I'm in class today. I was in class yesterday too. (. . .) is in class. (. . .) is in class today. She/He was in class yesterday too. 1 . We're in class. 6. 2. I'm in class. 7. 3. (...) is in class 8. 4. (...) and (...) are in class. 9. 5. (...) is here. 10. (...) is absent. I'm tired. (...) and (...) are (in the front row) . The door is open/closed. It's hot/cold. 5-2 PAST OF BE: NEGATIVE (a) I was not in class yesterday. (b) I wasn't in class yesterday. NEGATIVE CONTRACTIONS: was + not = wasn't were + not = weren't (c) They were not at home last night. (d) They weren't at home last night. I \ ive j she t vou } + weren't .) + wasrt l “ he they J it) ■ EXERCISE 3: Study the time expressions. Then complete the sentences. Use wasn't or weren't. Use a past time expression. PRESENT PAST today > yesterday this morning y yesterday morning this afternoon yesterday afternoon tonight — ► last night this week ■ + last week 1 . Ken is here today, but he wasn't here yesterday, 2. I'm at home tonight, but / WQSnI Qj home (PSt night 3. Olga is busy today, but _ 4. We're in class this morning, but _ 5. Tom is at the library tonight, but _ 6. It's cold this week, but _ _ 7. Alex and Rita are at work this afternoon, but _ 172 ■ CHAPTER 5

8. Mr. and Mrs. Jones are at home tonight, but _ 9. You're in class today, but _ 10. Dr. Ruckman is in her office this afternoon, but 5-3 PAST OF BE: QUESTIONS YES/NO questions SHORT ANSWER + (LONG ANSWER) (a) Were you in class yesterday? { be) + (subject) (b) Was Carlos at home last night? (be) + (subject) > Yes, I was . (I was in class yesterday.) -> No, I wasn't. (I wasn't in class yesterday.) -> Yes, he was . (He was at home last night.) No, he wasn't . (He wasn't at home last night.) INFORMATION QUESTIONS SHORT ANSWER + (LONG ANSWER) (c) Where were you yesterday? Where + (be) + (subject) (d) Where was Jennifer last night? Where + (be) + (subject) In class . (I was in class yesterday.) -> At home . (She was at home last night.) ■ EXERCISE 4: Make questions and give short answers. 1 . (you \ at home \ last night) A: Were you Qt home. iQSi night l B: No. / wasn't. _ 2. (Mr Yamamoto \ absent from class \ yesterday) A: _ B: Yes, _ 3. (Alex and Sue \ at home \ last night) A: _ B: Yes, _ 4. (you \ nervous \ the first day of class) A: _ B: No, _ EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 173

(Ahmed \ at the library \ last night) A: _ B: Yes, _ 6. (Mr. Shin \ in class Yesterday) A: _ B: No, _ A: Where _ B: At home. 7. (you and your wife \ in Canada \ last year) A: _ B: No, _ A: Where _ B: In Ireland. ■ EXERCISE 5: Make questions and give short answers. 1 . (you \ in class \ yesterday) A: Were you in class yesterday? _ B: Yes. / WQS. _ 2. (Anita \ in class \ today) A: Is Anita in class today? _ B: No. she isn't. _ She's absent. 3. (you \ tired \ last night) A: _ B: Yes, _ . I went to bed early. 4. (you \ hungry \ right now) A: _ B: No, _ , but I'm thirsty. 174 ■ CHAPTER 5

5. (the weather \ hot in New York City\ last summer) A: _
B: Yes, _ . It was very hot. 6. (the weather \ cold in Alaska \ in the
ivinter) A: _ B: Yes, _ . It's very cold. 7. (Yoko and Mohammed \
here \ yesterday afternoon) A: _ B; Yes, _ 8. (the students in this
class \ intelligent) A: _ B: Of course _ ! They are very intelligent! 9.
(Mr. Tok \ absent \ today) A: _ B: Yes, _ A: Where _ B: _ 10. (Tony
and Benito \ at the party \ last night) A: _ B: No, _ A: Where _ B: _ 1
1 . (Mr. and Mrs. Rice \ in town \ this -week) A: _ B: No, _ . They're
out of town. A: Oh? Where _ B: _ EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 175

12. (Anna \ out of town \ last week) A: _ B: Yes, _ A: Where B: _ ■ EXERCISE 6 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Pair up with a classmate and ask questions. If Student B answers yes, the exercise item is finished. If Student B answers no > Student A should follow with a zu/zere-question. Example: in class \ now student a: (. . .), are you in class now? (Student A's book is open,) student b: Yes, I am. (Student B's book is closed,) Example: STUDENT A: student b: STUDENT a: student b: at the library \ last night (...), were you at the library last night? No, I wasn't. Where were you? I was (at home / in my room / at a party, etc.) 1 . at home \ now 2. at home \ yesterday morning 3. at home \ last night 4. in class \ two days ago 5. in (name of a place in this city) \ now 6. in (name of this city) \ last year 7. (name of your teacher) \ in class \ yesterday 8. (names of two classmates) \ here \ yesterday Change roles , Student B should note ask Student A questions. 9. in (name of this country) \ two weeks ago 10. in (name of this country) \ two years ago 11. in (name of a city) \ now 12. at (name of a park in this city) \ yesterday afternoon 13. at (name of a famous place in this city) \ this morning* 14. at (name of a popular place where students like to go) \ last night 1 5. (name of the teacher)' \ at home \ last night 16. (names of two students) \ (name of this building) \ yesterday afternoon ^Student B: If you are asking this question in the morning, use a present verb. If it is now afternoon or evening, use a past verb. 1 76 m CHAPTER 5

5-4 THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE: USING -ED SIMPLE present:

(a) I walk to school every day , verb + ed - the simple past tense

SIMPLE PAST: (b) I walked to school yesterday . / \ SIMPLE

PRESENT: (c) Ann walks to school every day . you SIMPLE PAST:

(d) Ann walked to school yesterday. she he it we they J \ + walked

(verb + -ed) H EXERCISE 7: Complete the sentences. Use the words

in the list; use the simple present or the SIMPLE PAST. ask y/ rain

wait cook shave walk dream smile watch erase stay work 1 . It often

CQiDS _ in the morning. It r dined _ yesterday. 2. I _ to school every

morning. I _ to school yesterday morning. 3. Sue often _ questions.

She _ a question in class yesterday. 4. I _ a movie on television last

night. I usually _ TV in the evening because I want to improve my

English. 5. Mike _ his own dinner yesterday evening. He _ his own

dinner every evening. 6. I usually _ home at night because I have to

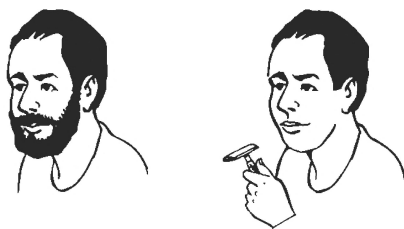
study. I _ home last night. 7. I have a job at the library. I _ at the

library every evening. I _ there yesterday evening. 8. When I am

asleep, I often _ . I _ about my family last night.* *Thc past of dream

can be dreamed or dreamt. EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 777

9, Linda usually _ for the bus at a bus stop in front of her apartment building. She _ _ _ for the bus there yesterday morning. 10. The teacher _ some words from the board a couple of minutes ago. He used his hand instead of an eraser. 1 1. Our teacher is a warm, friendly person. She often _ when she is talking to us. 1 2. Rick doesn't have a beard anymore. He _ five days ago. Now- he _ _ every morning. notice: In (a) : yes it is used with morning , afternoon, and evening. In (b): last is used with night > with long periods of time (week, month, year^ with seasons (spring , summer, etc), and with days of the week. In (e): ago means "in the past." It follows specific lengths of time (e.g., two minutes + ago, five years + ago) YESTERDAY LAST AGO (a) Bob was here . . . (b) Sue was here , . . (c) Tom was here . . . yesterday. last night. five minutes ago. yesterday morning. last evening. two hours ago . yesterday afternoon. last month. three days ago. yesterday evening. last year. a (one) week ago, six months ago. last spring . last summer, last fall, last winter. last Monday, last Tuesday, last Wednesday, etc. a (one) year ago. 178 m CHAPTER 5



5-5 PAST TIME WORDS: YESTERDAY, LAST, AND AGO

■ EXERCISES: I' sc yesterday or last. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8.
 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. I dreamed about you _ last I was
 downtown _ Two students were absent _ Ann wasn't at home _ Ann
 wasn't at home _ Carmen was out of town _ I visited my aunt and
 uncle _ Roberto walked home _ My sister arrived jn Miami _ We
 watched TV _ _ night. morning. _ Friday. _ night. _ evening. _ week. _
 fall. _ afternoon. _ Sunday. night. Ali played with his children _
 evening. Yoko arrived in Los Angeles _ summer. I visited my
 relatives in San Francisco _ _ month. My wife and I moved into a
 new house _ year, Mrs. Porter washed the kitchen floor _ morning.

■ EXERCISE 9: Complete the sentences. Use ago in your
 completion. 1. Pm in class now, but I was at home t€H HlinutCS
 QCfO/tWO hOUfS QQp/ctC. 2. Pm in class today, but I was absent
 from class _ 3. Pm in this country now, but I was in my country _ 4.
 I was in (mime of a city) _ _ _ 5. I was in elementary school _ _ 6. I
 arrived in this city _ _ _ 1. There is a nice park in this city. I was at
 the park _ 8. We finished hxi-rcisk 2 _ _ _ 9, I was home in bed _ _ _ _
 10. It rained in this city _ _ _ EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 179

5-6 PRONUNCIATION OF -ED: /t/, /d/, AND /əd/ Final -ed has three pronunciations: Mi /d/, and /əd/. END OF VERB SIMPLE FORM SIMPLE PAST PRONUNCIATION VOICELESS* (a) help helped helpjii • Final - ed is pronounced /t / if laugh laughed ~y laugh! t / a verb ends in a voiceless guess guessed -* guess-fa}** sound, as in (a). VOICED* (b) rub rubbed -> rub/ d/ • Final - ed is pronounced /d/ live lived -> livjdj if the simple form of the verb seem seemed -> seem/dj ends in a voiced sound, as in (b). -d or -l (c) need needed -> needed/ • Final -ed is pronounced fed/ want wanted -* want fed/ if a verb ends in the letters “d” or “t,” as in (c). * See Chart 2-4 for information about voiced and voiceless sounds. ** The words guessed and guest have die same pronunciation. ■

EXERCISE 10: Read the words aloud. Then use the words to complete the sentences. GROUP A: Final -ed is pronounced /t/ after voiceless sounds: I. walked i^5. watched 9. kissed 13. laughed 2. worked 6. touched 10. erased 14. coughed 3. cooked 7. washed 1 1 . helped 4. asked 8. finished 12. stopped 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. I watched Anna I . TV last night. _ to class yesterday instead of taking the bus. Jim . Robert loves his daughter. He The joke was funny. We _ The rain _ the dirty dishes after dinner last night. _ the board with an eraser. _ her on the forehead. at the funny story. I worked for three hours last night. I nine o'clock. a few minutes ago. The sky is clear now. _ mv homework about Steve my shoulder with his hand to get my attention. 180 ■ CHAPTER 5

24. Mr. Wilson _ in his garden yesterday morning. 25. Judy _ because she was sick. She had the flu. 26. Don is a good cook. He _ some delicious food last night. 27. Linda _ a question in class yesterday. 28. I had a problem with my homework. The teacher _ me before class. GROUP B: Final - ed is pronounced /d/ after voiced sounds: 1. rained 5. smiled 9. remembered 2. signed 6. killed 10. played 3. shaved 7. sneezed 11. enjoyed 4. arrived 8. closed 12. snowed 13. It's winter. The ground is white because it _ yesterday. 14. Anita _ in this city three weeks ago. She _ at the airport on September 3rd.* 15. The girls and boys _ baseball after school yesterday. 16. When Ali got a new credit card, he _ his name in ink on the back of the card. 17. Rick used to have a beard, but now he doesn't. He _ _ _ this morning. 1 8. The students' test papers were very good. The teacher, Mr. Jackson, was very pleased. He _ when he returned the test papers. 19. I _ _ the party last night. It was fun. I had a good time. 20. The window was open. Mr. Chan _ it because it was cold outside. 2 1 . The streets were wet this morning because it _ last night. 22. "Achoo!" When Judy _ , Ken said, "Bless you." Oscar said, "Gesundheit!" *Notice preposition usage after arrive : I arrive in a country or in a city. I arrive at a particular place (a building, an airport, a house, an apartment, a party, etc.) Arrive is followed by either in or at. Arrive is not followed by to. INCORRECT: She arrived to the United States. INCORRECT: She arrived to the airport. EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 181

23. I have my books with me. I didn't forget them today. I _
to bring them to class. 24. Mrs. Lane was going crazy because there
was a fly in the room. The fly was buzzing all around the room.
Finally, she _ it with a rolled up newspaper. GROUP C: Final -ed is
pronounced /ad/ after /t/ and /d /: 1. waited 5. invited 2. wanted
6. needed 3. counted 7. added 4. visited 8. folded 9. The children _
some candy after dinner. 10. Mr. Miller _ to stay in die hospital for
two weeks after he had an operation. 11. I _ the number of students
in the room. 12. Mr. and Mrs. Johnson _ us to come to their house
last Sunday, 13. Last Sunday we _ the Johnsons. 14. I _ the letter
before I put it in the envelope. 15. Kim _ for the bus at the corner of
5th Avenue and Main Street. 16. The boy _ the numbers on the
chalkboard in arithmetic class yesterday. 182 ■ CHAPTER 5

■ EXERCISE 11— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Practice pronouncing -ed Example: STUDENT A; teacher: S TUDENT B: teacher: STUDENT a: walk to the front of the room (Student A walks to the front of the room.) What did (...) do? She/He walked to the front of the room. What did you do? I walked to the front of the room. 1. smile ii. 2. laugh 12. 3. cough 13. 4. sneeze 14. 5. shave (pantomime) 15. 6. erase the board 16. 7. sign your name 17. 8. open the door 18. 9. close the door 19. 10. ask a question 20. wash your hands (pantomime) touch the floor point at the door fold a piece of paper count your fingers push (something in the room) pull (something in the room) yawn pick up your pen add two and two on the board 5-7 SPELLING Of -ED VERBS END OF VERB > -ED FORM Rule 1: END OF VERB: A CONSONANT + -e > ADD -d smile smiled era se era sed Rule 2: ONE VOWEL + ONE CONSONANT* ► DOUBLE THE CONSONANT, ADD -ed slop slopped rub rubbed Rule 3: TWO VOWELS + ONE CONSONANT > ADD - ed ; DO NOT DOUBLE THE CONSONANT" rain rained need needed Rule 4: TWO CONSONANTS > ADD -ed; DO NO T DOUBLE THE CONSONANT court* counted help helped Rule 5: CONSONANT' + -y > CHANCE -V TO -I, ADD -ed study studied carry carried Rule 6: vowel + -y > add -ed; do no t change -y TO -i play played enjoy enjoyed Exceptions: Do not double x (fix + -ed = fixed). Do not double tv (snow + - ed = snowed). note: For two-syllable verbs that end in a vowel and a consonant (e.g., visit, open), see Chart 5-8. EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 183

B EXERCISE 12: Give the -ed and -ing forms of these words.* 1. count 2. stop 3. smile 4. rain 5. help 6. dream 7. clap 8. erase 9. rub 10. yawn 11. study 12. stay 13. worry 14. enjoy -ED -ING counted counting ■ EXERCISE 13: Use the correct form of the words in the list to complete the sentences. carry finish slay clap learn stop cry rub taste enjoy smile wait fail 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. i finished _ _ my homework at nine last night. We _ some new vocabulary yesterday. I _ the soup before dinner last night. It was delicious. Linda _ for the bus at the corner yesterday. The bus _ at the corner. It was on time. *See Chart 5-8 for the spelling of -ing forms. 184 ■

CHAPTER 5

6. We _ the play at the theater last night. It was very good.
 7. At the theater last night, the audience _ when tile play was over.
 8. Ann _ her suitcases to the bus station yesterday. They weren't heavy.
 9. The baby _ her eyes because she was sleepy.
 10. I _ home and watched a sad movie on TV last night. I _ at the end of the movie.
 11. Mike _ his examination last week. His grade was "F."
 12. Jane _ at the children. She was happy to see them. ■ EXERCISE 14: Write the correct spelling of the -ed form. Then write the correct pronunciation of the -ed form: /t/, /d/, or /ad/.
 1. wait -ED FORM waited PRONUNCIATION wait + /dd/
 2. spell spelled spell + /d/
 3. kiss kissed kiss + N
 4. plan plan +
 5. join join +
 6. hope hope +
 7. drop drop +
 8. add add +
 9. point point +
 10. pat pat +
 11. shout shout +
 12. reply replv +
 13. play playv +
 14. touch touch +
 15. end end + EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 185

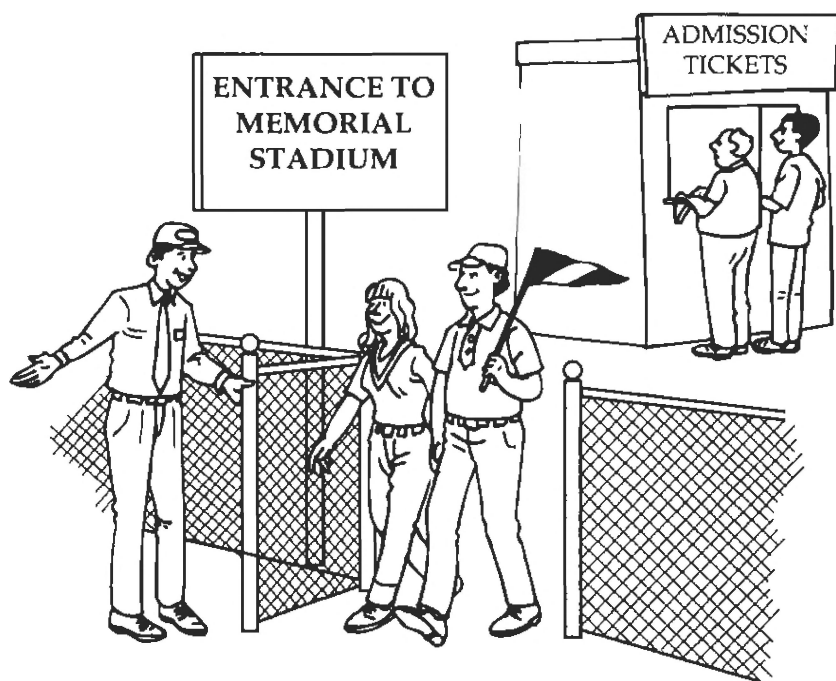
You may not know the meanings of the following words. Figure out the spelling and pronunciation of the - ed forms even if you don't know the meanings of the words. 16. mop mop + 17. droop droop + 18. cope cope + 19. rant rant + 20. date date + 21. heat heat + 22. bat bat + 23. trick trick + 24. fool fool + 25. reward reward + 26. grab grab + 27. dance dance + 28. paste paste + 29. earn earn + 30. grin grin + 31. mend mend + 5-8

SPELLING OF - ED AND - ING : TWO-SYLLABLE VERBS (a) (b) VHKJ3 visit admit SPEAKING S'J VIS - it ad * MIT I'RHSS Some verbs have two syllables. In (a): visit has two syllables; vis + it. In the word visits the stress is on the first syllable. In (b): the stress is on the second syllable in the word admit . VHRH STKFSS -1:1) FORM -!\`G FORM For two-syllable verbs that end in a vowel and a (c) visit VIS * it visited visiting consonant; (d) open O * pen opened opening • The consonant is not doubled if the stress is on the first syllable, as in (c) and (d). (e) admit ad • MIT admitted admitting • The consonant is doubled if the stress is on (f) occur oc • CUR occurred occurring the second syllable, as in (e) and (f). 186 ■

CHAPTERS

■ EXERCISE 15: Write the -ed and -ing forms of the given verbs. VERB STRESS 1. answer AN *,s\ver* 2. prefer pre sFER 3. happen HAP • pen 4. visit VIS -it 5. permit per • MIT 6. listen LIS iten** 7. offer OF • fer 8. occur oc • CUR 9. open O • pen 10. enter EN • ter 11. refer re • FER 12. begin be . GIN -ED FORM answered. (none)*** -ING FORM answering. ■ EXERCISE 16: Complete the sentences with the verbs in the list. Use the -ed forms. Use each verb only one time. admit listen open answer occur permit happen offer visit 1 . The teacher answered _ a question for me in class. 2. Yesterday I _ my aunt and uncle at their home. 3. We _ to some music after dinner last night. 4. It was okay for the children to have some candy after lunch. Mrs. King _ them to have a little candy. 5. I _ the window because the room was hot. * The “w” is not pronounced in answer. **The “t” is not pronounced in listen. *** Tile verb begin does not have an -ed form. Its past form is irregular: began. EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 187

6. A car accident yesterday. at the corner of 5th Street and Main 7. A bicycle accident _ on Forest Avenue yesterday. 8. My friend poured a glass of water and held it toward me, She asked me if I wanted it. She _ me a glass of water, 9. A man unlocked the gate and stadium, the sports fans into the ■ EXERCISE 17— ORAL/ WRITTEN (BOOKS CLOSED): This is a spelling test. Give the -ed form of each word. 1. stop 2. wait 3. study 4. smile 5. enjoy 6. rain 7. permit 8. listen 9. rub 10. visit 11. carry 12. open 13. fold 14. offer 15. happen 16. occur 17. stay 18. help 19. drop 20. count B EXERCISE 18: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. Use the simple present, present progressive, or simple past. Pay attention to spelling and pronunciation. 1. 2. 3. 4. I (walk) WQiked _ to school yesterday. I (sit) am sitting, _ in class right now. I usually (go) QO _ to bed at eleven o'clock every night. Sally (finish) _ her homework at ten o'clock last night. 188 ■ CHAPTER 5



5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 1 (study) . 1 (study) . at the library yesterday. English every day. I am in class right now. 1 (study) , I need an umbrella because it (rain) . It (rain) _ English. _ right now. My roommate (help) . yesterday morning. _ me with my homework last night. We can go outside now. The rain (stop) _ minutes ago. The children are in the park. They (play) _ 1 (play) _ soccer last week. Yesterday morning I (brush) _ . a few baseball. my teeth, (wash) my face, and (shave) . Ann is in her living room right now. She (watch) . television. Ann usually (watch) . She (icatch) _ We (do) _ TV in the evening. a good program on TV last night. an exercise in class right now. We (use) 1 (arrive) . Matt (listen) _ getting ready to go to school. A: Where's Man? B: He's in his room? A: What (do, he) B: He (listen) _ A: (you, listen) _ verb tenses in sentences. _ in this city a month ago. _ to music every morning while he's B: Yes. 1 (like) . 1 usually (listen) . to sleep at night, but last night I (listen) . news on the radio. to music. . to the news every day? _ to know about e%rents in the world. _ to the news on TV before I go _ to the EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 189

5-9 THE SIMPLE PAST: IRREGULAR VERBS Some verbs do not have -ed forms. The past form is irregular. PRJiSHNT PAST come — came (a) I come to class every day. do - did (b) I came to class yesterday. eat - ate get - got (c) I do my homework every day. go - went (d) I did my homework yesterday. have - had put - put (e) Ann eats breakfast every morning. see — saw (f) Ann ate breakfast yesterday morning. sit - sat sleep - slept stand - stood write - wrote ■ EXERCISE 19 — ORAL: Change the sentences to the past. 1 . Tom gets some mail every day. > Iorn got some mail yesterday, 2. They go downtown every day. 3. We have lunch every day. 4. I see my friends every day. 5. Hamid sits in die front row every day. 6. I sleep for eight hours every night. 7. The students stand in line at the cafeteria. 8. I write a letter to my parents every week. 9. Wai-Leng comes to class late every day. 10. We do exercises in class every day. 11. I eat breakfast every morning. 12. I get up at seven every day. 1 3. Robert puts his books in his briefcase every day. ■ EXERCISE 20— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Change the sentences to the past. Example: 1 come to class every day. Response; I came to class yesterday. 1 . I eat lunch every day. 2. I see you every day. 3. 1 sit in class every day. 4. I write a letter every day. 5. I do my homework every day. 6. I have breakfast every day. 7. I go downtown every day. 8. I get up at eight every day. 9. I stand at the bus stop every day. 1 0. 1 sleep for eight hours every night. 11. I come to school every day. 1 2. I put my pen in my pocket every day 190 ■ CHAPTER 5

EXERCISE 21: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. Use simple present, present progressive, or simple past. Pay attention to spelling and pronunciation.

1. I (get) . SQL
2. Mary (talk) , 3. Mary (talk) 4. Mary (talk) . 5. Jim and I (eat) . 6. We (eat) _ 7. I (go) _ _ up at eight o'clock yesterday morning. _ to John on the phone last night. _ to John on the phone right now. _ to John on the phone every day. _ lunch at the cafeteria two hours ago. lunch at the cafeteria every day. 8. My roommate (study) 9. Sue (write) _ 10. Sue (write) _ to bed early last night. _ Spanish last year. . a letter to her parents yesterday, a letter to her parents every week. 11. Sue is in her room right now. She (sit) 12. Maria (do) _ _ 13. Yesterday I (see) . 14. If have) _ her homework last night. _ Fumiko at the library. at her desk. a dream last night. I (dream) about my friends. I (sleep) 15. A strange thing (happen) _ remember my own telephone number. 16. My wife (come) _ for eight hours. _ to me yesterday. I couldn't 17. Yesterday she (come) . 18. Our teacher (stand) _ 19. Our teacher (stand) _ 20. Tom (put) _ 21. He (put) _ home around five every day. _ home at 5:15 in the middle of the room right now. _ in the front of the room yesterday. the butter in the refrigerator yesterday. 22. Pablo usually (sit) he (sit) _ the milk in the refrigerator every day. _ in the back of the room, but yesterday in the front row. Today he (be) absent. He (be) absent two days ago too.

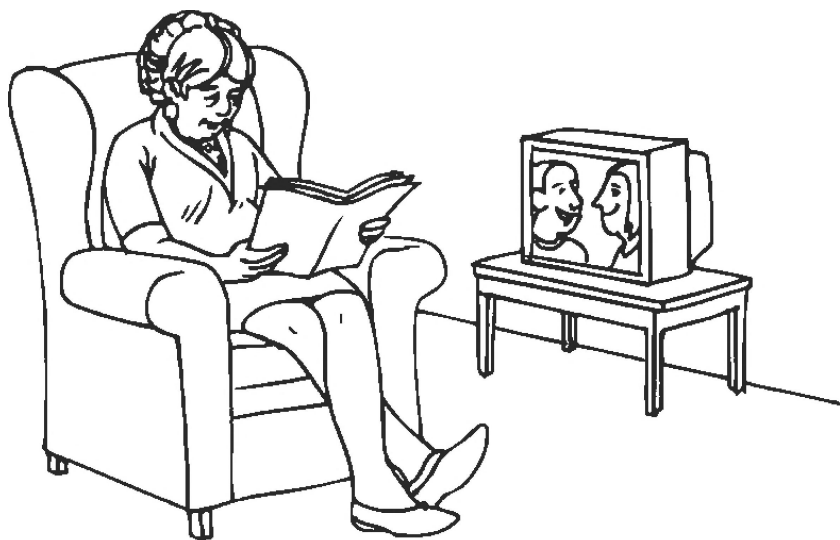
EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 191

5-10 THE SIMPLE PAST: NEGATIVE SUBJECT + DID + NOT + MAIN VERB (a) I did not 'walk to school yesterday. (b) You did not walk to school yesterday. (c) Tom did not eat lunch yesterday. (d) They did not come to class yesterday. i \ you she he \ + did not + main verb * it (simple form) we they j (e) incorrect: I did not walked to school yesterday, (f) incorrect: Tom did not ate lunch yesterday. Notice that the simple form of the main verb is used with did not (g) I didn't walk to school yesterday. (h) Tom didn't eat lunch yesterday. Negative contraction: did + not = didn't * exception: did is not used when the main verb is be. See Charts 5-2 and 5-3. incorrect: Joe didn't be here yesterday. correct: Joe wasn't here yesterday. ■ EXERCISE 22 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Use “/ don't . . . every day ” and “/ didn't . . . yesterday Example: walk to school Response: I don't walk to school every day. I didn't walk to school yesterday. 1 . eat breakfast 2. watch TV 3. go shopping 4. read die newspaper 5. study 6. go to die library 7. visit my friends 8. see (...) 9. do my homework 10. shave ■ EXERCISE 23— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Practice present and past negatives. STUDENT a: Use I don't and I didn't. Use an appropriate past time expression with didn't . student b: Report what Student A said. Use she/he doesn't and then she/he didn't with an appropriate past time expression. Example: walk to school every morning student a: I don't walk to school every morning. I didn't walk to school yesterday morning. teacher: Tell me about (Student A). student b: She/He doesn't walk to school every morning. She/He didn't walk to school yesterday morning. 1 . eat breakfast every morning 2. watch TV every night 3. talk to (. . .) every day 4. play soccer every afternoon 5. study grammar every evening 6. dream in English every night 7. visit my aunt and uncle every year 8. write to my parents every week 9. read the newspaper every morning 10. pay all of my bills every month 192 ■ CHAPTER 5

EXERCISE 24: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. Use simple present, SIMPLE PAST, or PRESENT PROGRESSIVE.

1. I (go, not) _ didn't _ to a movie last night. I (stay) stayed _ _ home.
2. Mike (come, not) _ doesn't come _ to class every day.
3. I (finish ^ not) _ my homework last night. I (go) to bed early.
4. Jane (stand, not) _ _ up right now. She (sit) down.
5. It (rain, not) right now. The rain (stop)
6. The weather (be, not) _ cold yesterday. a few minutes ago. _ cold today, but it (be) _.
7. Tina and I (go, not) _ shopping yesterday. We (go)
8. I (go). it. It (be, not) _.
9. I (write) _ shopping last Monday. _ to a movie last night, but I (enjoy, not) _ very good.
10. Sue (read) _ a letter to my girlfriend yesterday, but I (write, not) _ a letter to her last week. _ a magazine right now. She (watch, not) TV.

EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 193



11. My husband (come, not) _ home for dinner last night.
 12. The children (go) _ to bed a half an hour ago. They (sleep) _ now.
 13. We (be) _ late for the movie last night. The movie (start) _ at seven, but we / arrive , not) _ until seven-fifteen.
 14. Olga (ask) _ Hamid a question a few minutes ago, but he (answer, not) _ her question.
 15. Toshi is a busy student. He usually (eat, not) _ lunch because he (have, not) _ enough time between classes.
 16. He (eat) _ lunch the day before yesterday, but he (eat, not) _ lunch yesterday.

5-11 THE SIMPLE PAST: YES/NO QUESTIONS DID + SL'BJHCT + MAIM VHRB SHORT ANSWHR + (LONG ANSWER)
 (a) Did Mary walk to school? > Yes, she did. (She walked to school.) ► No, she didn't. (She didn't walk to school.)
 (b) Did you come to class? ■ > Yes, I did. (I came to class.) -> No, I didn't. (I didn't come to class.) ■

EXERCISE 25: Make questions. Give short answers.
 1. A: Did you walk downtown yesterday? _ B: Yes / did. _ (I walked downtown yesterday,)
 2. A: Did it rain last week! _ B: No, it didn't. (It didn't rain last week.)
 3. A: _ B: _ (I ate lunch at the cafeteria.)

194 CHAPTERS

4. A B 5. A B 6. A B 7. A B 8. A B 9. A B 10. A B (Mr. Kwan didn't go out of town last week.) (I had a cup of tea this morning.) (Benito and I went to a party last night.) (Olga studied English in high school.) (Yoko and Ali didn't do their homework last night.) (I saw Gina at dinner last night.) (I didn't dream in English last night.)

■ EXERCISE 26: Complete the sentences with was, were, or did. 1. I did _ not go to work yesterday. I _ WQS sick, so I stayed home from the office. 2. Tom _ 3. A: _ B: Yes A: _ you see him about your problem? B: Yes. He answered all my questions. He _ very helpful. 4. A: _ you at the meeting yesterday? B: What meeting? A: _ you forget about the meeting? B: I guess so. What meeting? A: The meeting with the president of the company about employee benefits. B: Oh. Now I remember. No, I _ not there. _ you? A: Yes. I can tell you all about it. B: Thanks. _ not in his office yesterday. He _ not go to work. Mr. Chan in his office yesterday? EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 195

5. A: Where _ you yesterday? B: I _ at the zoo. A: _ you enjoy it? B: Yes, but the weather _ very hot. I tried to stay out of the sun. Most of the animals _ in their houses or in the shade. The sun _ too hot for them, too. They _ not want to be outside in the hot sun.

■ EXERCISE 27: Make questions. Give short answers. 1. A: _ Were you <21 borne, last night? _ B: _ Nof / wasn't. (I wasn't at home last night.) A: _ Did you go to a movie? _ B: _ Yes. L did _ (I went to a movie.) 2. A: _ _ B: _ (It isn't cold today.) 3. A: _ B: _ (I come to class every day.) 4. A: _ B : _ (Roberto was absent yesterday.) 5. A: _ B: _ (Roberto stayed home yesterday.) 6. A: _ B: _ (I don't watch television every day.) 7. A: _ B: _ _ (Mohammed isn't in class today.) A: _ B: _ (He was here yesterday.) A: _ B: _ _ (He came to class the day before yesterday.) A: _ B: _ (He usually comes to class every day.) 196 ■ CHAPTER 5

8. A B A B A B A B A (I live in an apartment.) (I don't have a roommate.) (I don't want a roommate.) (I had a roommate last year.) It didn't work out. B A B _ (He was difficult to live with.) What did he do? He never picked up his dirty clothes. He never washed his dirty dishes. He was always late with his share of the rent. A: B: _ (I asked him to keep the apartment clean.) He always agreed, but he never did it. A; _ B: (I was glad when he left.) I like living alone. ■ EXERCISE 28— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Ask a classmate a question about her/his activities this morning. Example: walk to school student a: Did you walk to school this morning? student b: Yes, I did. or: No, I didn't. 1. get up at seven 7. smoke a cigarette 2. eat breakfast 8. go shopping 3. study English 9. have a cup of coffee 4. walk to class 10. watch TV 5. talk to (. . .) 11. listen to the radio 6. see (...) 12. read a newspaper EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 197

■ **EXERCISE 29— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED):** Ask questions about the present and the past. Example: walk to school student a: Do you walk to school every day? STUDENT n: Yes, I do. or: No, I don't. student a: Did you walk to school this morning? student h: Yes, I did. or: No, I didn't. 1 . go downtown 2. dream in color 3. talk to (...) on the phone 4. come to (grammar) class 5. sing in the shower 6. eat at least two pieces of fresh fruit 7. think about your family 8. cook your own dinner ■ **EXERCISE 30— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED):** Review of irregular verbs. Answer all the questions "yes" Give both a short answer and a long answer. Example: Did you come to class today? Response: Yes, I did. I came to class today. 1 . Did you eat dinner last night? 2. Did (...) come to class today? 3. Did you get a letter yesterday? 4. Did (, . .) go shopping yesterday? 5. Did (...) do his/her homework last night? 6. Did you sleep well last night? 7. Did you have a cup of coffee this morning? 8. Did (...) go to a movie last night? 9. Did (...) sit in that chair yesterday? 10. Did you write a letter yesterday.? 11 . (Tell a student to stand up) Did (...) stand up? (Tell him/her to sit down) Did (. . .) sit down? 12. Did (...) put his/her books on his/her desk this (morning / afternoon / evening)? 9. wear (an article of clothing) 10. laugh out loud at least two times 11 . speak (name of a language) 12. go to (name of a place in this city) 13. read at least one book 14. go swimming 15. go shopping *The past form of read is pronounced the same as the color red. 198 m **CHAPTER 5**

5-12 MORE IRREGULAR VERBS

bring - brought
buy - bought
catch - caught
drink - drank

drive - drove
*read - read**
ride - rode

run - ran
teach - taught
think - thought

■ EXERCISE 31— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Practice using irregular verbs. Example: teacher: students: teach-taught teach, taught. I teach class every day. I taught class yesterday. What did I do yesterday? teach, taught. You taught class. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. bring-brought I bring my book to class every day. I brought my book to class yesterday. What did I do yesterday? buy-bought I buy books at the bookstore. I bought a book yesterday. What did I do yesterday? teach-taught I teach class every day. I taught class yesterday. What did I do yesterday? catch-caught I catch the bus every day. I caught the bus yesterday. What did I do yesterday? think-thought I often think about my family. I thought about my family yesterday. What did I do yesterday? review: What did I bring to class yesterday? What did you bring yesterday? What did I buy yesterday? What did you buy yesterday? Did you teach class yesterday? Who did? Did I walk to class yesterday or did I catch the bus? What did I think about yesterday? What did you think about yesterday? run-ran Sometimes I'm late for class, so I run. Yesterday I was late, so I ran. What did I do yesterday? read-read I like to read books. I read every day. Yesterday I read a book. What did I do yesterday? What did you read yesterday? drink-drank I usually drink a cup of coffee in the morning. I drank a cup of coffee this morning. What did I do this morning? Did you drink a cup of coffee this morning? drive-drove I usually drive my car to school. I drove my car to school this morning. What did I do this morning? Who has a car? Did you drive to school this morning? ride-rode Sometimes I ride the bus to school. I rode the bus yesterday morning. What did I do yesterday morning? Who rode the bus to school this morning? review: I was late for class yesterday morning, so what did I do? What did I read yesterday? What did you read yesterday? Did you read a newspaper this morning? What did I drink this morning? What did you drink this morning? I have a car. Did I drive to school this morning? Did you? Did you ride the bus to school this morning? **EXERCISE 32:** Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. 1 . A: Why are you out of breath? B: I (run) _ to class because I was late. **EXPRESSING PAST TIME 199**

2. A: (Ms. Carter, teach) . yesterday? B: No, she didn't. Mr. Adams (teach) . class B: 4. A: B: 5. A: B: 6. A: B: 7. A: B: 8. A: B: 9. A; B: our class. 3. A: I (ride) . get to school? I the bus to school yesterday. How did you my car. Did you decide to change schools? I (think) _ about it, but then I decided to stay here. (you, go) _ shopping yesterday? Yes. I (buy) _ a new pair of shoes. (you, study) _ last night? No, I didn't. I was tired. I (read) _ a magazine and then (go) _ to bed early. Do you like milk? No. I (drink) _ milk when I (be) . a child, but I don't like milk now. Did you leave your dictionary at home? No. I (bring) _ it to class with me. Did you enjoy your fishing trip? I had a wonderful time! I (catch) _ a lot of fish. EXERCISE 33: Complete the sentences. Use the verbs in parentheses. 1 . Ann and I (go) . to the bookstore yesterday. I (buy) some stationery and a T-shirt. the bus in front 2. I had to go downtown yesterday. I (catch) _ of my apartment and (ride) _ (get off) _ the bus and transferred to another one. It (be) . to Grand Avenue. Then I 3. Sue (eat) . a long trip. _ popcorn and (drink) . cola at the movie theater last night. I (eat, not) I'm on a diet. anything. 200 ■ CHAPTER 5

4. Maria (ask; teacher (think) . then said, "I don't know."
 5. I (want) _ the teacher a question in class yesterday. The _ about
 the question for a few minutes and (go). to the basketball game last
 night, but I (stay) 6. Last night I (read) _ . home because I had to
 study. an article in the newspaper. It (be) 7. Yesterday Yoko (teach)
 about the snowstorm in Moscow. Japanese. Kim (leach) . Korean. 8.
 When Ben and I (go) _ (buy) _ some new' socks. Ben (buy, not) us
 how to say "thank you" in us how to say "I love you" in to the
 department store yesterday, I _ anything. 9. Rita 'pass, not) . . the
 test yesterday. She (fail) 1 0. Last summer we (drive) (visit.) _ it. to
 Colorado for our vacation. We in our tent for a week. We (go) .
 (catch) _ a national park, where we (camp) Fishing one morning. I
 EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 201

very big fish, but my husband

(catch, not) _____

anything. We (enjoy) _____

cooking and eating the fish for dinner.

It (be) _____ delicious.

I like fresh fish.



11. I almost (have) _ an accident yesterday, A dog (run) _ into the street in front of my car. 1 (slam) ___ _ on my brakes and just (miss) _ the dog. 12. Yesterday 1 (play) _ ball with my little boy. He (catch) _ the ball most of the time, but sometimes he (drop) _ it,

■ EXERCISE 34— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Ask and answer questions using the simple PAST. student a; Ask a classmate a question. Use the given verb. Use the past tense. student r: Answer the question. Give both a short answer and a long answer. Example: drink STUDENT A: Did you drink a cup of coffee this morning?

STUDENT U: Yes, I did. I drank a cup of coffee this morning, or: No, I didn't. I didn't drink a cup of coffee this morning. eat 7. drink 13. walk buy 8. read 14. watch get up 9. drive 15. listen to have 10. sleep 16. see go 11. go 17. think about study 12. talk to 18. rain ■

EXERCISE 35— WRITTEN: Use the expressions in the list below to write sentences about yourself. When did you do these things in the past? Use the simple past tense and past time expressions (yesterday, two days ago, last week, etc.) in all of your sentences.

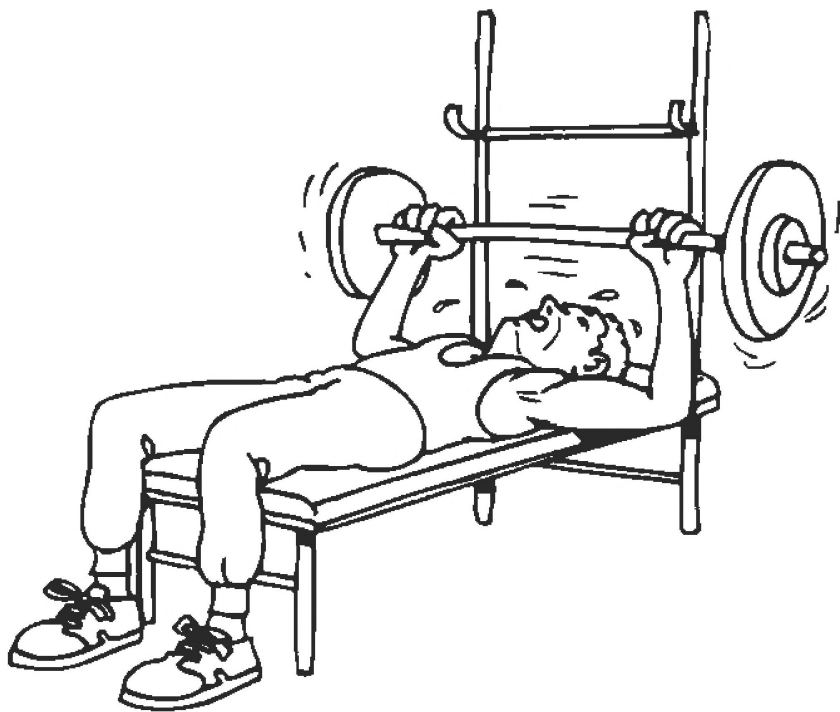
Example: go downtown with (someone) Response: I went downtown with Marco two days ago. i. arrive in (this city) 12. talk to (someone) on the phone 2. write a letter to (someone) 13. go shopping 3. eat at a restaurant 14. study English 4. go to bed early 15. read a newspaper 5. buy (something) 16. go on a picnic 6. go to bed late 17. go to a party 7. get up early 18. play { soccer , a pinball machine, etc.) 8. be late for class 19. see (someone or something) 9. have a cold 20. tli ink about (someone or something) 10. be in elementary school 21. do my homework 11. drink a cup of tea 22. be born 202 ■ CHAPTER 5

5-13 THE SIMPLE PAST: USING WHERE WHEN, WHAT TIME, AND WHY QUESTION SHORT ANSWER (a) Did you go downtown? * Yes, i did. / No, I didn't. (b) Where did you go? Downtown . (c) Did you run because you were late? -> Yes, I did. / No, I didn't. (d) Why did you run? * Because I was late. (e) Did Ann come at six? > Yes, she did. / No, she didn't. (f) When \ At six. . > did Ann come? What time) compare: (g) What time did Ann come? > At six, > Seven o'clock . v Around 9:30 . (h) When did Ann come? ► At six . > Friday. > June 15th . > Last week. > Three days ago . What time usually asks specifically for time on a dock. The answer to when can be various expressions of time. M

EXERCISE 36: Make questions. Use where, when , what time , or why. 1. A: Where did you go yesterday? _ B: To the zoo. (I went to the zoo yesterday.) 2. A: _ B: Last month. (Jason arrived in Canada last month.) 3. A: _ B: At 7.05, (My plane arrived at 7:05.) 4. A: _ B: Because I was tired. (I stayed home last night because I was tired.) 5. A: _ B: At the library. (I studied at the library last night.) 6. A: _ B: Because it's dark in here. (I turned on the light because it's dark in here.) 7. A: _ B: To Greece. (Sara went to Greece for her vacation.) 8. A: _ B: Around midnight. (I finished my homework around midnight.) EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 203

9, A: _ B: Five weeks ago. (I came to this city five weeks ago.) 10. A: _ B: Because Tony made a funny face. (I laughed because Tony made a funny face.) 11. A: _ B: At Emerhoff's Shoe Store. (I got my sandals at Emerhoff's Shoe Store.) 12. A: _ B: Upstairs. (Kate is upstairs.) 13. A: _ B: In the dormitory. (Ben lives in the dormitory.) 14. A: _ B: To the park. (I went to the park yesterday afternoon.) 15. A: _ B: Because he's sick. (Bobby is in bed because he's sick.) 16. A: _ B: Because he was sick. (Bobby stayed home because he was sick.) 17. A: _ B: 7:20. (The movie starts at 7:20.) 18. A: _ B: Two days ago. (Sara got back from Brazil two days ago.) 19. A: _ B: Because she wanted to talk to Joe. (Tina called because she wanted to talk to Joe.) 20. A: _ B: Because he wants big muscles. (Jim lifts weights because he wants big muscles.) 204 ■

CHAPTER 5



■ EXERCISE 37— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Make questions. Use question words. Example: I got up at 7:30. Response: When/What time did you get up? 1. I went to the zoo. 2. I went to the zoo yesterday. 3. I went to the zoo yesterday because I wanted to see the animals. 4. (...) went to the park. 5. (...) went to the park yesterday. 6. (...) went to the park yesterday because the weather was nice. 7. I am in class. 8. I came to class (an hour) ago. 9. (...) is in class. 10. (...) came to class (an hour) ago. 11. (...) studied at the library last night. 12. (...) finished his/her homework around midnight. 13. (...) went to bed at 7:30 last night. 14. (...) went to bed early because he/she was tired. 15. (...) went to the park. 16. (...) went to the park yesterday. 17. (...) went to the park yesterday because he/she wanted to jog. 18. (...) is absent today because he/she is sick. 19. (...) is at home. 20. (...) stayed home because he/she is sick. ■ EXERCISE 38: 1. A: B: 2. A: B: 3. A: B: 4. A: B: 5. A: B: 6. A: B: Complete the dialogues with questions that begin with why didn't. Why, didn't you come to class? _ _ Because I was sick. Because I didn't have enough time. Because I forgot your phone number. Because I had a headache. Because I wasn't hungry. Because I didn't want to. EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 205

■ EXERCISE 39: Use your own words to complete the dialogues with questions that begin with why, when, what time, and where. 1. A: Where do you want to go for your vacation ? _ B: Hawaii. 2. A: _ _ _ B: Ten o'clock. 3. A: _ B: Because I was tired. 4. A: _ B: Last week. 5. A: _ B: South America. 6. A: _ B: Because I forgot. 7. A: _ B: Downtown. 8. A: _ _ B: Several months ago. 9. A: _ B: At a Chinese restaurant. 5-14 **QUISTIONS** What is used in a question when you want to find out about a thing. Who is used when you want to find out about a person. (See Chart 5-15 for questions with **WHO**.) (QUESTION + **WHO**) **HELPING + VERB** **SUBJECT + MAIN VERB** **ANSWER** (a) Did Carol buy a car? ► Yes, she did. (She bought a car,) (b) What did Carol buy? ► A car * (She bought a car) (c) Is Fred holding a book? > Yes, he is * (He's holding a book.) (d) What is Fred holding? > A book . (He's holding a book) (e) a car is the object of the verb. (e) Carol bought a car . o v s v In (f): **WHAT** is the object of the verb. (f) What did Carol buy? 206 ■ CHAPTER 5

I EXERCISE 40: Make questions. 1. A: B: 2. A: B: 3. A: B: 4. A: B: 5. A: B: 6. A: B: 7. A: B: 8. A: B: 9. A: B: 10. A: B: ■ EXERCISE 41: 1. A: B: 2. A: B: 3. A: B: 4. A: B: 5. A: B: Did you buy a new tape recorder? Yes, I did. (I bought a new tape recorder.) What did you buy? _ A new tape recorder. (I bought a new tape recorder.) Yes, she is. (Mary is carrying a suitcase.) A suitcase. (Mary is carrying a suitcase.) Yes, I do. (I see that airplane.) An airplane. (I see an airplane.) A hamburger. (Bob ate a hamburger for lunch.) Yes, he did. (Bob ate a hamburger for lunch.) A sandwich. (Bob usually eats a sandwich for lunch.) No, he doesn't. (Bob doesn't like salads.) Make questions. What did John talk about? _ His country, (John talked about his country.) Did John talk about his country? _ Yes, he did. (John talked about his country.) A bird. (I'm looking at a bird.) Yes, I am. (I'm looking at that bird.) Yes, I am. (I'm interested in science.) EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 207

6. A: _ B: Science. (I'm interested in science.) 7. A: _ B: Nothing in particular. (I'm thinking about nothing in particular.) 8. A: _ B: English grammar. (I dreamed about English grammar last night.) 9. A: _ B: The map on the wall. (The teacher is pointing at the map on the wall.) 10. A: _ B: No, I'm not. (I'm not afraid of snakes.) Are you? ■ EXERCISE 42— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): a past or present verb. Ask a classmate a question. Use what and either Example: STUDENT A: STUDENT A: eat What did you eat for breakfast this morning? / What do you usually eat for dinner? / etc. (free response) 1. eat 2. wear 3. look at 4. study 5. think about 6. be interested in 7. be afraid of 8. dream about 9. have 10. need to buy

208 m CHAPTER 5

5-15 QUESTIONS WITH WHO QUESTION ANSWER What is used to ask questions about (a) What did they see? -> A boat . (They saw a boat,) things. Who is used to ask questions about (b) Who did they see? > Jim . (They saw Jim.) people. (c) and (d) have the same meaning. (c) Who did they see? -> Jim . (They saw Jim ,) Whom is used in formal English as the object of a verb or a preposition. (d) Whom did they see? * Jim . (They saw Jim.) In (c): who , not whom, is usually used in everyday English. In (d): whom is used in very formal English. Whom is rarely used in everyday spoken English. o o In (e): who(m) is the object of the verb. (e) Who(m) did they see? * Jim . (They saw Jim .) Usual question word order (question word + helping verb + subject + main verb) is used. (f) s Who came? -* S Mary. (Mary came,) In (g)? and (h): who is the subject of the question. Usual question word order (g) Who lives there? -* Ed. (Ed lives there.) is not used. When who is the subject of a question, do not use does , do, or did. (h) Who saw Jim? -> Ann. (Ann saw Jim.) Do not change the verb in any way: the verb form in the question is the same as the verb form in the answer. incorrect: Who did come? ■ EXERCISE 43: 1. A: B: 2. A: B: 3. A: B: 4. A: B: 5. A: B: Make questions. Mary. (I saw Mary at the party.) Mary. (Mary came to the party.) John. (John lives in that house.) John. (I called John.) My aunt and uncle. (I visited my aunt and uncle.) EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 209

6. A: B; 7. A: B; 8. A: B; 9. A: B; 10. A: B: ■ EXERCISE 44:
1. A: B; 2. A: B; 3. A: B; 4. A: B; 5. A: B; 6. A: B; 7. A: B; 8. A: B; 9.
A: B. 10. A: B: My cousin. (My cousin visited me.) Bob. (Bob helped
Ann.) Ann. (Bob helped Ann.) Yes, he did. (Bob helped Ann.) No,
I'm not. (I'm not confused.) Make questions. Ken, (I saw Ken.) Ken,
(I talked to Ken.) Nancy. (I visited Nancy.) Mary. (I'm thinking
about Mary.) Yuko. (Yuko called.) Ahmed. (Ahmed answered the
question.) Mr. Lee. (Mr. Lee taught the English class.) Carlos,
(Carlos helped me.) Gina. (I helped Gina.) My brother. (My brother
carried my suitcase.) 210 m CHAPTER 5

■ EXERCISE 45: Make questions. Use any appropriate question word: where, when, what time, why, who, what. 1. A: _ B: To the zoo. (Ann went to the zoo.) 2. A: _ B: Yesterday. (Ann went to the zoo yesterday.) 3. A: _ B: Ann. (Ann went to the zoo yesterday.) 4. A: _ B: Ali. (I saw Ali.) 5. A: _ B: At the zoo. (I saw Ali at the zoo.) 6. A: _ B: Yesterday. (I saw Ali at the zoo yesterday.) 7. A: _ B: Because the weather was nice. (I went to the zoo yesterday because the weather was nice.) 8. A: _ B: Dr. Jones. (I talked to Dr. Jones.) 9. A: _ B: Dr. Jones. (Dr. Jones called.) 10. A: _ B: Yesterday afternoon. (Dr. Jones called yesterday afternoon.) 11. A: _ B: At home. (I was at home yesterday afternoon.) 12. A: _ B: In an apartment. (I'm living in an apartment.) 13. A: B: 14. A: B: EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 211

Grammar. (The teacher is talking about grammar.)

A frog. (Annie has a frog in her pocket.)



5-1* ASKING ABOUT THE MEANING OF A WORD (a)

What does “pretty” mean ? (a) and (b) have the same meaning. (b)
What is the meaning of “prettyf, > incorrect: WJiai means “pretty”?

■ EXERCISE 46: Ask a classmate for the meaning of the following words: 1. muggy 6. listen 11. discover 16. forest 2. awful 7. supermarket 12. simple 17. possess 3. quiet 8. crowd 13. empty 18. invite 4. century 9. lend 14. enjoy 19. modern 5. finish 10. murder 15. ill 20. pretty' difficult ■ EXERCISE 47: Make questions. Use your own words. 1. A: B: Yesterday. 2. A: B: My brother. 3. A: B: A new pair of sandals. 4. A: B: At 7:30. 5. A: B: At Rossini's Restaurant. 6. A: B: This afternoon. 7. A: B: In an apartment. 8. A: B: My roommate. 9. A: B: Because I wanted to. 10. A: B: Ann. 212 m

CHAPTER 5

11. A: B: A bird. 12. A: B; The zoo. ■ EXERCISE 48 —
ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Make questions that would produce the following answers. Example: At 7 o'clock. Response: When did you get up this morning? / What time does the movie start? / etc. 1. In an apartment. 11. Yes. 2. Yesterday, 12. Nothing. 3. It means "wonderful." 13. In the dormitory. 4. (...)■ 14. Because I was tired. 5. At seven-thirty. 15. (...)• 6. A shirt. 16. At nine o'clock. 7. A hamburger. 17. A new pair of shoes. 8. No. 18. On (name of a street in (his city). 9. Because I wanted to. 19. In (name of this state/ province). 10. Grammar. 20. Last night. 5-17 MCHS

IRREGULARVERBS break - broke meet - met sing - sang fly -flew pay - paid speak - spoke hear - heard ring - rang take - took leave - left send - sent wake up - woke up ■ EXERCISE 49— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Practice using irregular verbs. Example: TEACHER: students: teacher: student a: break-broke break, broke. Sometimes a person breaks an arm or a leg. I broke my arm five years ago. What happened five years ago? break, broke. You broke your arm. (to Student A) Did you ever break a bone? Yes. I broke my leg ten years ago. 1. fly-fleiv Sometimes I fly home in an airplane. I flew home in an airplane last month. What did I do last month? When did you fly to this city? 2. hear-heard I hear birds singing every morning. I heard birds singing yesterday. What did I do yesterday? What did you hear when you woke up this morning? 3. pay-paid [pay the rent every month. I paid the rent last month. What did I do last month? Did you pay your rent last month? EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 213

4. send-sent 5. leave-left 6. meet-met 7. take-took 8. wake-woke 9. speak-spoke 10. ring-rang 11. sing-sang 12. break-broke

I send my mother a gift every year on her birthday. I sent my mother a gift last year on her birthday. What did I do last year? When did you send a gift to someone? I leave for school at 8:00 every morning. I left for school yesterday at 8:00 a.m. What did I do at 8:00 a.m. yesterday? What time did you leave for class this morning? I meet new people every week. Yesterday I met (. . .)'s friend. What did I do yesterday? Do you know (. . .)? When did you meet him/her? I take my younger brother to the movies every month. I took my younger brother to the movies last month. What did I do last month? Who has a younger brother or sister? Where and when did you take him/her someplace? I usually wake up at six. This morning I woke up at six-thirty. What time did I wake up this morning? What time did you wake up this morning? I speak to many students every day. Before class today, I spoke to (. . .). Who did I speak to? Who did you speak to before class today? The phone in our apartment rings a lot. This morning it rang at six-thirty and woke me up. What happened at six-thirty this morning? Who had a telephone call this morning? What time did the phone ring? I sing in the shower every morning. I sang in the shower yesterday. What did I do yesterday? Do you ever sing? When was the last time? Sometimes I break things. This morning I dropped a glass on the floor and it broke. What happened this morning? When did you break something?

EXERCISE 50: Complete the sentences. Use the correct form of the words in the list. break meet sing fly pay speak hear ring take leave send wake

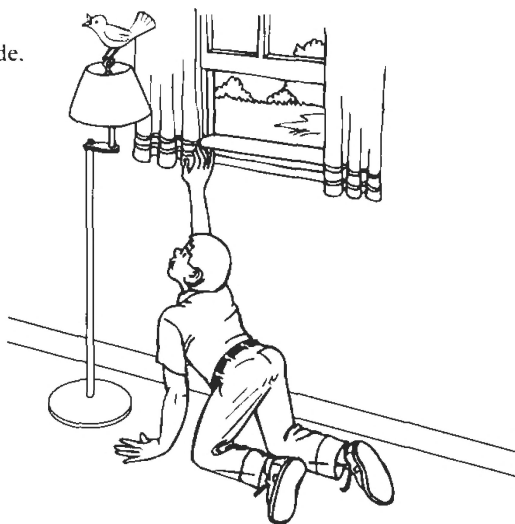
1. A: What happened to your finger? B: I _ _ it in a soccer game.
2. A: Who did you talk to at the director's office? B: I _ _ to the secretary.
3. A: When did Jessica leave for Europe? B: She _ _ for Europe five days ago.
4. A: Did you write Ted a letter? B: No, but I _ _ him a postcard.

274 ■ CHAPTER 5

5. A: Do you know Meg Adams? B: Yes. I _ her a couple of weeks ago. 6. A: Why did you call the police? B: Because I _ a burglar! 7. A: Where did you go yesterday? B: I _ the children to the zoo. 8. A: What time did you get up this morning? B: 6:15. A: Why did you get up so early? B: The telephone _ . 9. A: Did you enjoy the party? B: Yes, I had a good time. We _ songs and danced. It was fun. 10. A: You look sleepy. B: I am. I _ up before dawn this morning and couldn't get back to sleep. 11. A: Did you give the painter a check? B: No. I _ him in cash. 12. A: A bird _ into our apartment yesterday through an open window. EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 215

B: Really? What did you do?

A: I caught it and took it outside.



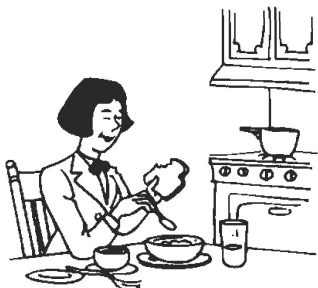
5-18 BEFORE AFTER TIME CLAUSES S V (a) I ate breakfast . - a main clause S V (b) before I went to class = a time clause s V (c) I ate breakfast | | before I went to class. | main clause time clause S V (d) | Before I went to class, | I ate breakfast. | A clause is a group of words that has a subject and a verb. A main clause is a complete sentence. Example (a) is a complete sentence. Example (b) is an incomplete sentence. It must be connected to a main clause, as in (c) and (d). A time clause can begin with before or after: before + s + V = a time clause after + s + v - a time clause time clause main clause (e) | We took a walk | | after we finished our work. \ A time clause can follow a main clause, as in (c) and (e). A time clause can come in front of a main clause, as in (d) and (f). There is no difference in meaning between (c) and (d) or between (e) and (f) main clause time clause (f) | After we finished our work , | we took a walk. | time clause main clause (g) We took a walk | after the movie. Before and after don't always introduce a time clause. They are also used as prepositions followed by a noun object, as in (g) and (h). See Charts 1-7 and 4-1 for information about prepositional phrases. prep, phrase (h) I had a cup of coffee | before class. \ prep, phrase ■ EXERCISE 51: Find the main clauses and the time clauses. 1 . Before I ate the banana, I peeled it. main clause - I peeled it time clause = before I ate the banana 2. We arrived at the airport before the plane landed, 3. I went to a movie after I finished my homework. 4. After the children got home from school, they watched TV.* 5. Before I moved to this city, I lived at home with my parents. *note: When a time clause comes before the main clause, a comma is used between the two clauses. A comma is not used when the time clause comes after the main clause. 276 ■ CHAPTER 5

■ EXERCISE 52: Add a capital letter and period to the complete sentences. Write "Inc." to mean "Incomplete" if the group of words is a time clause and not a complete sentence. 1. we went home ' W V& went home. 2. after we left my uncle's house "*" Inc. 3. we went home after we left my uncle's house WjSe went home after we left my uncle's house. 4. before we ate our picnic lunch 5. we went to the zoo 6. we went to the zoo before we ate our picnic lunch 7. the children played games after they did their work 8. the children played games 9. after they did their work 10. the lions killed a zebra 11. after the lions killed a zebra 12. they ate it 13. after the lions killed a zebra, they ate it ■ EXERCISE 53: Combine the two ideas into one sentence by using before and after to introduce time clauses. Example: I put on my coat. I went outside. > Before / went outside , I put on my coat. I put on my coat before / went outside. After I put on my coat, / went outside. I went outside after I put on my coal. EXPRESSING PAST TIME fl 217

2. He did his homework. He went to bed. 3. We bought tickets. We entered the theater. 21 8 ■ CHAPTER 5

1. She ate breakfast.

She went to work.

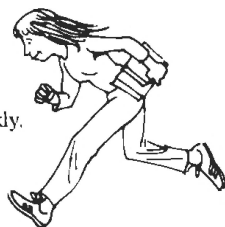


■ EXERCISE 54: Use the given words to write sentences of your own* Use the simple past. Example: after I Written: I went to college after I graduated from high school. After I finished dinner, I watched TV* Etc. before I came here 4. after we after I got home last night 5. before they I went . . . before I 6. Mr. . . . after he 5-19

WHEN IN TIME CLAUSES (a) When the rain stopped, we took a walk, or: When can introduce a time clause. We took a walk when the rain s topped. when + s + v = a time clause In (a): when the rain stopped is a time clause. (b) When Tom was a child, he lived with his aunt. OR: In (b): Notice that the noun (Tom) comes Tom Lived with his aunt zchen he was a child. before the pronoun (he). COMPARE: When is also used to introduce questions.* A (c) When did the rain stop? ~ a question question is a complete sentence, as in (c). A (d) when the rain stopped = a time clause time clause is not a complete sentence. *See Charts 2-12 and 5-13 for information about using when in questions. ■ EXERCISE 55: Choose the best completion. Then change the position of the time clause. Example: When the phone rang, When the phone rang, I answered it.* I answered the phone when it rang. 1 . When the phone rang, 2. When I was in Japan, 3. Maria bought some new shoes 4. I took a lot of photographs 5. When a stranger grabbed Ann's arm, 6. Jim was a wrestler 7. When the rain stopped, 8. The antique vase broke H. when I was in Hawaii. A* she screamed. B. when I dropped it. C. I closed my umbrella. D. when he was in high school. */ E. I answered it. E when she went shopping yesterday. G. I stayed in a hotel in Tokyo. *note: If a sentence with a sf/jew-clause talks about two actions, the action in the zi?/^H-clause happens first. In the sentence When the phone rang, I answered n: first the phone rang, and then I answered it. Not logically possible: When I answered the phone, it rang. EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 219

■ EXERCISE 56: Add a capital letter and a question mark to complete the sentences. Write “/rJC.” to mean “Incomplete” if the group of words is a time clause and not a question. 1. when did Jim arrive -* W ydhen did Jim arrive? 2. when Jim arrived -» Inc. 3. when you were a child 4. when were you in Iran 5. when did the movie end 6. when the movie ended 7. when Mr. Wang arrived at the airport 8. when Khalid and Bakir went to a restaurant on First Street yesterday 9. when I was a high school student 10. when does the museum open EXERCISE 57: Use the given words and your own words to create sentences. Don't change the order of the words. 1. When did 2. When I . . . 3. I . , , when 4. When were . . 5. When the 6. The . . . when EXERCISE 58 — REVIEW: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) Yesterday (be) . a terrible day. Everything (go) My alarm clock (ring, not) . . wrong. First, I (oversleep) . I (wake) 220 CHAPTER 5

_____ up when I *(hear)*
 _____ some noise outside my window.
 It was 9:15. I *(get)* _____ dressed quickly.
 I *(run)* _____ to class, but
 I *(be)* _____ late. The teacher



(9) (10) (11) (12) (13) (14) (15) (16) (17) (18) (19) (20)
 (21) (22) (be) . (30) (31) (32) (33) I (go) . . upset. After my classes
 in the morning, _ to the cafeteria for lunch. I (have) (drop) .
 everyone in the cafeteria (look) (go) _ (get) _ _ an embarrassing
 accident at the cafeteria. I accidentally _ my tray of food. Some of
 the dishes (break) When I (drop) _ the tray. back to the cafeteria
 line and _ a second tray of food. I (pay) at me. I myself, I (eat) .
 (drink) _ for my lunch again. After I (sit) . down at a table in the
 corner by _ my sandwich and After lunch, I (go) . . a cup of tea. _
 outside, I (sit) . 'A under a tree near the classroom building. I (see)
 (23) (call) _ . a friend. I (24) (join) , (25) We (talk) . . to him. He .
 me on the grass. _ about our (26) classes and (relax) . My friend
 (drive) . the hospital. We (go) _ Everything was fine. But when I
 (stand) _ up, I (step) _ in a hole and (break) _ my ankle. me to to the
 emergency ward. After the doctor (take) _ _ X-rays of my ankle, he
 (put) _ a cast on it. I EXPRESSING PAST TIME • 221

(34) (35) (36) (37) (38) (39) (40) (41) (42) (43) (44) (45)
(46) (47) (pay) _ my bill. Then we (leave) _ the hospital. My friend
(take) _ me home and (help) _ me up the stairs to my apartment.
When we (get) _ to the door of my apartment, I (look) _ for my key.
I (look) _ in my purse and in my pockets. There was no key. I (ring)
_ the doorbell. I (think) _ that my roommate might be at home, but
she (be, not) _ . So I (sit) _ down on the floor outside my apar and
(zvaii) _ for my roommate to get home. Finally, my roommate
(come) _ home and I (get) _ into the apartment. I (eat) _ dinner
quickly and (go) _ to bed. I (sleep) _ for ten hours. I hope today is a
better day than yesterday! ■ EXERCISE 59— ORAL: The person in
the story in Exercise 58 is named Sara. Form small groups and tell
the story of Sara's day. The first person in the group should say a
few things about Sara's day. The next person should continue the
story. And then the next. Pay special attention to the past form of
the verbs. Glance at your book if you need to remember the story,
but don't look at your book when you are speaking. 222 ■

CHAPTER 5

Example: STL'DI-NT A: STUDENT B: STUDUNT C; STUDHN
T B: STUDHNT c: STL'DKNT D: STL'DI-NT c: studi-nt n: STUDUNT a;
Sara had a terrible day yesterday. Everything went wrong for her.
Yes, she had a terrible day. First she overslept and miss class,
Missed. She missed class. Right, She missed class. She missed class
because her alarm clock didn't rang. Didn't rings not rang. Right!
Her alarm clock didn't ring . She woke up when she heard some
noise outside her window at 9: 1 5. She got dressed quickly and run
to class. Excuse me, but I think you should say that she got dressed
quickly and . . . ■ EXERCISE 60— WRITTEN: Write the story of
Sara's day. Don't look at your textbook. Write from memory. ■
EXERCISE 61 — WRITTEN: Choose one of the topics and write a
composition about past events. Use time expressions (Jim, next,
then, at . . . o'clock, later, after, before, when, etc.) to show the
order of the activities. Topic 1: Write about your activities
yesterday, from the time you got up to the time you went to bed.
Topic 2: Write about one of the best days in your life. What
happened? ' Topic 3: Write about one of the worst days in your life.
What happened? ■ EXERCISE 62— WRITTEN: Interview someone
you know about his/her activities yesterday morning, yesterday
afternoon, and last night. Then use this information to write a
composition. Use time expressions {first, next, then, at . . . o'clock,
later, after, before, when, etc.) to show the order of the activities. ■
EXERCISE 63 — REVIEW: Give the past form of the verbs. 1. visit 2.
fly 3. go 4. worry5. speak 6. ride 7. stand 8. turn 9. hear visited
flew 10. pay 11. catch 12. happen 13. listen 14. plan 15. rain 16.
bring 17. take 18. write EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 223

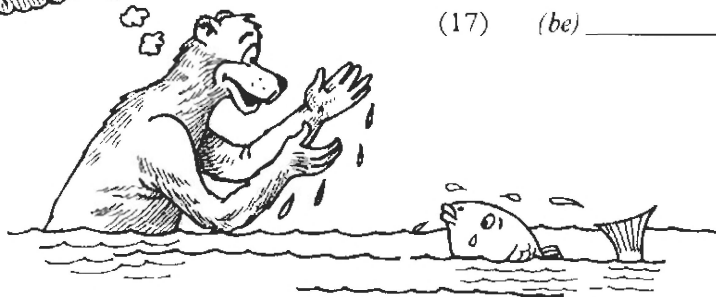
19. break 25. ring 20. stop 26. meet 21. hope 27. leave 22. sine 28. occur 23. think 29. teach 24. drive 30. read ■ EXERCISE 64— REVIEW: Ask and answer questions using the simple past. Use the given verbs. student a: Make up any question that includes the given verb. Use the simple past, student b: Answer the question. Give a short answer and a long answer. Example: speak student a: Did you speak to Mr. Lee yesterday? student b: Yes, I did. I spoke to him yesterday. Example: finish student a: What time did you finish your homework last night? student b: Around nine o'clock. I finished my homework around nine o'clock. 1. 2. 3. 4. Switch roles. drink 5. fly 9. see 13. buy eat 6. talk 10. sleep 14. send study 7. wake up 1 1 . work 15. watch take 8. come 12. have 16. read ■ EXERCISE 65 — REVIEW: Correct the mistakes in the following. 1 . Did you went downtown yesterday? 2. Yesterday I speak to Ken before he leaves his office and goes home. 3 . I hearded a good joke last night. 4. When Pablo finished his work. 5. I visitted my relatives in New York City last month. 6. Where you did go yesterday afternoon? 7. Ms. Wah was flew from Singapore to Tokyo last week. 8. When I see my friend yesterday, he didn't spoke to me. 224 ■ CHAPTER 5

9. Why Mustafa didn't came to class last week? 10. Where were you bought those shoes? I like them. 11. Mr. Adams taught our class last week. 12. I wrote a letter last night. 13. Who you wrote a letter to? 14. Who did open the door? Jack opened it. ■

EXERCISE 66 — REVIEW: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Use the simple present, present progressive, or simple past. The sentence may require STATEMENT, NEGATIVE, Or QUESTION FORMS. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. Tom (walk) Walks to work almost every day. I can see Tom from my window. He's on the street below. He (walk) _ to work right now. (Tom, walk) _ to work every day? (you, walk) . to work every day? I usually take the bus to work, but yesterday I (walk) . office. On my way to work yesterday, I (see) . Alex (see, not) _ (you, see) _ an accident. the accident. . the accident yesterday? to my Tom (walk, not) . (lake) _ to work when the weather is cold. He the bus. I (walk, not) . to work in cold weather either. ■ EXERCISE 67 — REVIEW: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. (1) Yesterday Fish (be) _ in the river. He (see) _ Bear on the bank of the river. Here is their conversation. EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 225

(5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10) (11) (12) bear: Good morning, Fish.
(2) fish: Good morning, Bear. How (youy be) (3) bear: I (do) Fine,
etsh: Fine, thanks. (4) bear: (you, would like) today? . with me? I
(need) . to get out of the river and (sit) _ someone to talk to. fish: I
(needy not) . to get out of the river for us to talk. We can talk just
the way we are now. bear: Hmmm. fish: Wait! What (you, do) _
bear: I (get) . fish: Stop! Thisfftey. in the river to join you. _ my
river! I (trust, not) you. What (you, want) bf:ar: Nothing. Just a
little conversation. I (zvant) m my problems. I (have) _ to tell you
about a bad day yesterday. 226 m CHAPTER 5

FISH: Oh? What happened? (13) (14) (18) (19) (20) (21) (22) (23) (24) (25) bear: While I was walking through the woods, I (see) _ (love) _ honey. So I (stop) . a beehive. I _ at the beehive. When I (reach) (1 5) _ inside to get some honey, a great big bee (come) (1 6) _ up behind me and stung* my ear. The sting (1 7) (be) _ very painful. FISH: I (believe, not) . (believe , not) _ All bees (be) _ bear: But it (be) _ you. Bees can't hurt bears. I _ your story about a great big bee. the same size, and they (be, not) _ big. _ true! Here. Come a little closer and look at my ear. I'll show you where the big bee stung it. fish: Okay. Where (it, be) _ ? Where (the bee, sting) _ you? bear: Right here. See? fish: Stop! What (you, do) . (you, hold) _ ? Let go of me! Why me? * Stung is the past form of the verb sting, which means "to cause sharp pain," EXPRESSING PAST TIME ■ 227



(15) _____

some honey, a

(16) _____

me and stung*

(17) (be) _____

(26) (27) (28) (29) (30) (31) (32) (33) (34) (35) (36) (37)
(38) bear: I (hold) _ you because I'm going to eat you for dinner.
fish: Oh no! You (trick) _ me! Your story about the great big bee
never (happen) _ ! bear: That's right. I (get) _ in the river because I
(want) _ (catch) _ you for dinner. And I did. I (catch) _ you for
dinner. fish: Watch out! Behind you! Oh no! Oh no! It's a very, very
big bee. It's huge! It (look) _ really angry! bear: I (believe , not) _
you! fish: But it (be) _ true! A great big bee (come) _ toward you. It's
going to attack you and sting you! bear: What? Where? I (see, not) _
a big bee! Oh no, Fish, you are getting away from me. Oh no! I
(drop) _ you! Come back! Come back! fish: Ha! I (fool) _ you too,
Bear. Now you must find your dinner in another place. bear: Yes,
you (trick) _ me too. We (teach) _ each other a good lesson today:
Don't believe everything you hear. fish: Thank you for teaching me
that lesson. Now I will live a long and happy life. 22\$ m CHAPTER

(39) (40) (41) bear: Yes, we (learn) . I (be) _ a good lesson today, and that's good. But still hungry. Hmmm. I (have) . a gold tooth in my mouth, (you, would like) . come closer and look at it? .
to EXPRESSING PAST TIME 229

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

CHAPTER 6 Expressing Future Time *]nl1nitive = to + the simple form of a verb (to come, to go, to see , to study, ere.). ■

EXERCISE 1— ORAL: Some activities are listed on the next page. Which of these activities are you going to do tomorrow? Which ones are you not going to do tomorrow? Pair up with a classmate. student a; Your book is open. Ask a question. Use “Are you going to . . . tomorrow? ” student n: Your book is closed. Answer the question. Give both a short answer and a long answer. Use “I’m going to . . . tomorrow” or “I’m not going to . . . tomorrow ” in the long answer. EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 231

6-1 FUTURE TIME: USING *BE GOING TO*

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>(a) I am going to go downtown tomorrow.</p> <p>(b) Sue is going to be here tomorrow afternoon.</p> <p>(c) We are going to come to class tomorrow morning.</p> | <p>Be going to expresses (talks about) the future.</p> <p>FORM: $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{am} \\ \text{is} \\ \text{are} \end{array} \right\} + \text{going} + \text{infinitive}^*$</p> |
| <p>(d) I'm not going to go downtown tomorrow.</p> <p>(e) Ann isn't going to study tonight.</p> | <p>NEGATIVE: be + not + going to</p> |
| <p>(f) “Are you going to come to class tomorrow?”
“No, I'm not.”</p> <p>(g) “Is Jim going to be at the meeting tomorrow?”
“Yes, he is.”</p> <p>(h) “What time are you going to eat dinner tonight?”
“Around six.”</p> | <p>QUESTION: be + subject + going to</p> <p>A form of be is used in the short answer to a yes/no question with be going to, as in (f) and (g). (See Chart 1-9 for information about short answers with be.)</p> |



CHAPTER 6

Expressing Future Time

Example: STUDENT a: STUDENT B: go downtown Are you going to go downtown tomorrow? Yes, I am. I'm going to go downtown tomorrow, or: No, I'm not. I'm not going to go downtown tomorrow. 1. get up before eight o'clock 2. come to class 3. stay home all day 4. eat lunch 5. eat lunch with (someone) 6. get a haircut 7. watch TV in the evening 8. do something interesting in the evening 9. go to bed early 10. go to bed late Switch roles. 11. get up early 12. get up late 13. walk to school 14. study grammar 15. get some physical exercise 16. eat dinner 17. eat dinner alone 18. listen to music after dinner 19. go shopping 20. do something interesting and unusual ■ EXERCISE 2 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Answer the questions. Example: TO STUDENT A: STUDENT A: TO STUDENT B: STUDENT B: tomorrow? What are you going to do tomorrow? I'm going to (go shopping). What is (. . .) going to do tomorrow? He's/She's going to go shopping. What are you going to do: 1. tomorrow? 2. tomorrow morning? 3. tomorrow afternoon? 4. tomorrow night? 5. at 7:00 tomorrow morning? 6. at 9:00 tomorrow morning? 7. at noon tomorrow? 8. at 5:00 tomorrow afternoon? 9. around 6:30 tomorrow evening? 10. after 8:00 tomorrow night? ■ EXERCISE 3: Complete the sentences. Use be going to + the following expressions (or your own words) . call the landlord ✓ go to the bookstore see a dentist call the police go to an Italian restaurant stay in bed today get something to eat lie down and rest for a while take a long walk in the park go to the beach look it up in my dictionary take it to the post office go to bed major in psychology take them to the laundromat 1. I need to buy a book, I 0171 going. (0 00 (0 th£ bOOKSLOTS. 2. It's midnight now. I'm sleepy. I 232 ■ CHAPTER 6

3. Sue is hungry. She _ 4. My clothes are dirty. I _ 5. I have a toothache. My wisdom tooth hurts. I _ 6. I'm writing a composition. I don't know how to spell a word. I 7. George has to mail a package. He _ 8. Rosa lives in an apartment. There's a problem with the plumbing. She 9, Sue and I want to go swimming. We _ 10. I have a headache. I _ 11. It's late at night. I hear a burglar! I _ 12. I want to be a psychologist. When I go to the university, I 13. I feel terrible. I think I'm getting the flu. I _ 14. Ivan and Natasha want to go out to eat. They 15. It's a nice day today. Mary and I _ EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 233

■ EXERCISE 4— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Listen to the common activities that are described. Picture these activities in your mind. Use *be going to* to tell what you think your classmates are going to do. Example: (...) is carrying his/her textbooks and notebooks. He/She is walking toward the library. What is (...) going to do? Response: (...) is going to study at the library. 1. (...) is standing next to the chalkboard. He/She is picking up a piece of chalk. What is (...) going to do? 2. (...) has some letters in his/her hand. He/She is walking toward the post office. What is (...) going to do? 3. (...) is standing by a telephone. He/She is looking in the telephone book for (...)’s name. What is (...) going to do? 4. (...) put some water on the stove to boil. She got a cup and saucer out of the cupboard and some tea. What is (...) going to do? 5. (...) is putting on his/her coat. He/She is walking toward the door. What is (...) going to do? 6. (...) has a basket full of dirty clothes. He/She is walking toward a laundromat. What is (...) going to do? 7. (...) bought some meat and vegetables at the market. He/She is holding a bag of rice. He/She just turned on the stove. What is (...) going to do? 8. (...) and (...) are walking into (name of a local restaurant). It’s seven o’clock in the evening. What are (...) and (...) going to do? 9. (...) gave (...) a diamond engagement ring. What are (...) and (...) going to do? 10. (...) and (...) have airplane tickets. They’re putting clothes in their suitcases. Their clothes include swimming suits and sandals. What are (...) and (...) going to do? ■ EXERCISE 5— ORAL: Ask a classmate a question. Use *be going to*. Example: when / go downtown student a: When are you going to go downtown? student B: Tomorrow afternoon* / In a couple of days. / I don’t know. / etc* 1. where / go after class today 2. what time / get home tonight 3* when / eat dinner 4. where / eat dinner 5. what time / go to bed tonight 6. what time / get up tomorrow morning 7. where / be tomorrow morning 8. when / see your family again 9. where / live next year 10. when / get

■ EXERCISE 6— ORAL: Answer the questions. Use be going to. Example; To STUDENT A: STUDENT A: To STUDENT B: STUDENT B: You want to buy some tea. What are you going to do? What is (, . .) going to do and why? You want to buy some tea. What are you going to do? I'm going to go to the grocery store. What is (Student A) going to do and why? He/She's going to go to the grocery store because he/she wants to buy some tea. 1. You have a toothache. What are you going to do? What is (. . .) going to do and why? 2. You need to mail a package. Where are you going to go? Where is (...) going to go and why? 3. Your clothes are dirty. 4. It's midnight. You're sleepy. 5. It's late at night. You hear a burglar. 6. You need to buy some groceries. 7. You want to go swimming. 8. You want to go fishing. 9. You want to buy a new coat. 10. You're hungry. 11. You have a headache. 12. It's a nice day today. 13. You need to cash a check. 14. You want some (pizza) for dinner. 15. You're reading a book. You don't know the meaning of a word.

EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 235

6-2 WORDS USED FOR PAST TIME AND FUTURE TIME

| PAST | FUTURE | PAST: It rained yesterday .
FUTURE: It's going to rain tomorrow . |
|---|--|---|
| yesterday | tomorrow | |
| yesterday morning
yesterday afternoon
yesterday evening
last night | tomorrow morning
tomorrow afternoon
tomorrow evening
tomorrow night | PAST: I was in class yesterday morning .
FUTURE: I'm going to be in class tomorrow morning . |
| last week
last month
last year
last weekend
last spring
last summer
last fall
last winter
last Monday, etc. | next week
next month
next year
next weekend
next spring
next summer
next fall
next winter
next Monday, etc. | PAST: Mary went downtown last week .
FUTURE: Mary is going to go downtown next week .

PAST: Bob graduated from high school last spring .
FUTURE: Ann is going to graduate from high school next spring . |
| . . . minutes ago
. . . hours ago
. . . days ago
. . . weeks ago
. . . months ago
. . . years ago | in . . . minutes (from now)
in . . . hours (from now)
in . . . days (from now)
in . . . weeks (from now)
in . . . months (from now)
in . . . years (from now) | PAST: I finished my homework five minutes ago .
FUTURE: Pablo is going to finish his homework in five minutes . |

■ EXERCISE 7: Complete the sentences. Use yesterday, last, tomorrow, or next. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. I went swimming _ _ yesterday. _ _ morning. Ken is going to go to the beach _ tQ/770/TOVy _ morning. I'm going to take a trip _ week. Alice went to Miami _ week for a short vacation. We had a test in class . afternoon. afternoon we're going to go on a picnic. My sister is going to arrive . Sam bought a used car _ Tuesday. Fridav. My brother is going to enter the university . Ann is going to fly to London Rick lived in Tokyo _ spring I took a trip to San Francisco, month. . year. I'm going to study at the library night. fall. night I watched TV. evening I'm going to go to a baseball game. Matt was at the laundromat . evening. 236 m CHAPTER 6



■ EXERCISE 8: Complete the sentences. Use the given time expression with ago or in. 1. ten minutes Class is going to end _ ill t6H minUtCS. _ 2. ten minutes Ann's class ended _ t€n nW!Ut6S QCfO. _ 3. an hour The post office isn't open. It closed _ 4. an hour Jack is going to call us _ _ 5. two more months I'm studying abroad now, but I'm going to be back home 6. two months 7. a minute 8. half an hour 9. one more week 10. a year My wife and I took a trip to Morocco _ Karen left _ I'm going to meet David at the coffee shop The new highway is going to open _ I was living in Korea _ ■

EXERCISE 9: Complete the sentences. Use yesterday, last, tomorrow, next, in, or ago. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. I went to the zoo _ last _ _ week. Yolanda went to the zoo a week _ . Peter Nelson is going to go to the zoo _ Saturday. We're going to go to the zoo _ two more days. My children went to the zoo _ morning. My cousin is going to go to the zoo _ afternoon. Kim Yang-Don graduated from Sogang University' _ spring. I'm going to take a vacation in Canada _ summer. We're going to have company for dinner _ night. We had company for dinner three days _ . We're going to have dinner at our friends' house _ two days. _ evening we're going to go to a concert. _ Friday I went to a party. _ morning the students took a test. EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 237

15. I took a test two days _ . 16. The students are going to have another test _ Thursday. 17. Are you going to be home _ afternoon around three? 18. My little sister arrived here _ month. 19. She is going to leave _ two weeks. 20. _ year Yuko is going to be a freshman in college. 6-3 USING A COUPLE OF OR A FEW WITH AGO (PAST) AND IN (FUTURE) (a) Sam arrived here one (OR: a) year ago. (b) Jack is going to be here in two minutes. (c) I talked to Ann three days ago . Numbers are often used in time expressions with ago and in. (d) I saw Carlos a couple of months ago. (e) He's going to return to Mexico in a couple of months. (f) I got a letter from Gina a few weeks ago. (g) I got a letter to see Gina in a few weeks. A couple of and a few are also commonly used. A couple of means "two." A couple of months ago - two months ago. A few means "a small number, not a large number." A few weeks ago - three, four, or five weeks ago. (h) I began college last year. I'm going to graduate in two more years. My sister is almost finished with her education. She's going to graduate in a few more months. She's going to graduate in three more months. Frequently the word more is used in future time expressions that begin with in. ■

EXERCISE 10: Complete the sentences, using information from your own life. Use the words in italics. Use ago or in. Use numbers (one, two, three, ten, sixteen, etc.) or the expressions a couple of or a few. 1 . days We studied Chapter 5 a couple of days ago/three days ago/ etc. 2. days We're going to finish this chapter _ in a few more days / _ in three or four days / etc. 3. hours I ate breakfast _ 4. hours I'm going to eat lunch/dinner _ 5. minutes We finished Exercise 9 _

238 » CHAPTER 6

6. minutes 1. years 8. years 9. years 10. weeks] months)
years j This class is going to end _ I was born _ My parents got
married _ I got/am going to get married _ I arrived in this city _ ,
and Vm going to leave this city _ ■ EXERCISE 1 1: Complete the
sentences. Use your own words. Write about your life. For example,
what did you do a few days ago? What are you going to do in a few
days? 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6t 7. 8. 9. 10. _ a few days ago. _ in a few days
(from now). _ in a few more minutes. _ three hours ago. _ in four
more hours. _ a couple of days ago. in a couple of months (from
now). _ a few minutes ago. _ many years ago. in a couple of minutes
(from now). 6-4 USING TODAY , TONIGHT, AND THIS +
MORNING, AFTERNOON, EVENING, WEEK, MONTH, YEAR
PRESENT Right now it's 10 a.m. We are in our English class, (a)
We are studying English this morning. PAST Right now it's 10 a.m.,
Nancy left home at 9 a.m. to go downtown. She isn't at home right
now. (b) Nancy went downtown this morning. FUTURE Right now
it's 10 a.m. Class ends at 1 1 A.M. After class today, I'm going to go
to the post office. (c) I'm going to go to the post office this
morning. today tonight this morning this afternoon this evening this
week this 'weekend this month this year \ These words can express
present, past, or future time. EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 239

■ EXERCISE 12: Answer the questions. Use your own words. 1. What is something you did earlier this year? -> I came to this city _ this year. 2. What is something you are doing this year? -> i am studying English _ _ this year. 3. What is something you are going to do this year? -> i am going to visit my relatives in Cairo _ this year. 4. What is something you did earlier today? -*■ I _ today. 5. What is something you are doing today, right now? -> ■ I _ today. 6. What is something you are going to do later today? -*■ I _ today. 7. What is something you did earlier this morning / afternoon / evening? -*■ I _ this _ . 8. What is something you are going to do later this morning / afternoon / evening? ”+ I _ this _ .

■ EXERCISE 13: Complete the sentences. Discuss the different verb tenses that are possible. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. _ today. _ this morning, this afternoon, _ this evening. _ tonight. _ this week. _ this month. _ this year. 240 ■ CHAPTER 6

■ EXERCISE 14 — ORAL: In groups of three, ask classmates questions about future activities. STUDENT a: Begin your question with “When are you going to . . . ?” student B: Answer Student A’s question. student A: Ask Student C a question that begins with “When is (...) going to... ?” student c: Answer in a complete sentence. Example: STUDENT A: STUDENT b: student a: STUDENT C: go downtown When are you going to go downtown? This weekend. (Tomorrow morning. / In a couple of days. / Etc.) When is (. . .) going to go downtown? He/She is going to go downtown this weekend. 1 . study at the library 2. go shopping 3. go to (name of a class) 4. have dinner 5. do your grammar homework 6. get married 7. go on a picnic 8. visit (name of a place in this city) 9. call (...) on the phone 10. go to (name of restaurant) for dinner 11. see your family again 12. quit smoking 13. buy a car 14. see (...) 15. go to (name of a place in this city) 16. take a vacation ■ EXERCISE 15— ORAL: In pairs, ask a classmate a question. Use the given words in your question. Example: tomorrow morning STUDENT a: Are you going to come to class tomorrow morning? student b: Yes, I am. OR: No, I’m not. Example: yesterday morning student a: Did you eat breakfast yesterday morning? student b: Yes, I did. or: No, I didn’t. 1 . last night 2. tomorrow night 3. tonight 4. tomorrow afternoon 5. yesterday afternoon 6. this afternoon 7. last Friday 8. next Friday 9. next week Switch roles. 10. last week 11 . this week 12. yesterday morning 13. tomorrow morning 14. this morning 15. later today 16. a couple of hours ago 17. in a couple of hours (from now) 18. this evening

EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME 247

6-5 FUTURE TIME: USING WILL STATEMENT (a) Mike will go to the library tomorrow. (b) Mike is going to go to the library tomorrow. (a) and (b) have basically the same meaning. (c) IN CORK] ■ ct: M ike ivill goes there . The simple form of a verb follows ivill . In (c): goes is N O' r co rrec t. (d) I N co rrec t : Mike wills go there . There is never a final -s on will for future time. (e) incorrect: Mike will to go there . Will is not followed by an infinitive with to. CONTRACTIONS (f) I will come. - Til come. You will come. - You'll come. She will come. = She'll come. He will come. = He'll come. It will come. = It'll come. We will come - We'll come. They will come. = They'll come. Will is contracted to 'll with subject pronouns.* These contractions are common in bo tli speaking and writing. NEGATIVE (g) Bob ivill not be here tomorrow. (h) Bob zuon't be here tomorrow. Negative contraction: will + not - won't • Will is also often contracted with nouns in speaking (but not in writing). WKi iTTiN; Tom will be here at ten. SPOKEN : **Tom 7 1 ' ' be here a t ten. ■ EXERCISE 16 — ORAL: Change the sentences by using will to express future time. 1 . I'm going to arrive around six tomorrow. Til arrive around six tomorrow . 2. Fred isn't going to come to our party. 3. He's going to be out of town next week. 4. Sue is going to be in class tomorrow. 5. She has a cold > but she isn't going to stay home. 6. Jack and Peggy are going to meet us at the movie theater. 7. They're going to be there at 7:1 5. 8. Tina is going to stay home and watch TV tonight.* 9. This is an important letter. I'm going to send this letter by express mail. *When two verbs are connected by and, the helping verbs be going to and ivill are usually not repeated. For example: Tm going to lock the doors and am going to turn out the lights . Til lock the doors and will turn out the lights. 242 ■

CHAPTER 6

10. My parents are going to stay at a hotel in Honolulu. 1
1 . Hurry up, or we're going to be late for the concert. 1 2. I'm not
going to be at home this evening. 13. I'm going to wash the dishes
and clean the kitchen after dinner. 14. Be careful with those
scissors! You're going to hurt yourself! 6-6 ASKING QUESTIONS
WITH WILL i I QUESTION ANSWER (question + WILL +
SUHJHGT + MAIN VliRII word) (a) Will Tom come tomorrow? >
Yes, he will * No, he two n*t. (b) WiU you be at home tonight? >
Yes, / will * No, I won't. (c) When will Ann arrive ? > Next
Saturday, (d) What time will the plane arrive ? ► Three- thirty.

3. A: _ When will you see Mr. Pong? _ B: Tomorrow afternoon. (I'll see Mr. Pong tomorrow afternoon.) 4. A: _ B; Yes, _ (The plane will be on time.) 5. A: _ B: Yes, _ (Dinner will be ready in a few minutes.) 6. A: _ B: In a few minutes. (Dinner will be ready in a few minutes.) 7. A: _ B: Next year. (I'll graduate next year.) 8. A: _ B-. At the community college. (Mary will go to school at the community college next year.) 9. A: _ B: No, _ (Jane and Mark won't be at the party.) 10. A: _ B; Yes, _ (Mike will arrive in Chicago next week.) 11. A: _ B: In Chicago. (Mike will be in Chicago next week.) 12. A: _ B: No, _ (I won't be home early tonight.) 13. A: _ B: In a few minutes. (Dr. Smith will be back in a few minutes.) 14. A: _ B: Yes, _ (I'll be ready to leave at 8:15.) A: Are you sure? 244 ■ CHAPTER 6

6-7 VERB SUMMARY: PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE
STATEMENT NEGATIVE QUESTION SIMPLE I eat lunch every day,
I don't eat breakfast, Do you eat breakfast? PRESENT He eats lunch
every day. She doesn't eat breakfast. Does she eat lunch? PRESENT
PROGRESSIVE I am eating an apple right now. She is eating an
apple. They are eating apples. I'm not eating a pear. She isn't eating
a pear. They aren't eating pears. Am I eating a banana? Is he eating
a banana? Are they eating bananas? SIMPLE PAST He ate lunch
yesterday. He didn't eat breakfast. Did you eat breakfast? BE GOING
TO I am going to eat lunch at noon. She is going to eat lunch at
noon. They are going to eat lunch at noon. I'm not going to eat
breakfast tomorrow. She isn't going to eat breakfast tomorrow.
They aren't going to eat breakfast tomorrow. Am I going to see you
tomorrow? Is she going to eat lunch tomorrow? Are they going to
eat lunch tomorrow? WILL He will eat lunch tomorrow. He won't
eat breakfast tomorrow. Will he eat lunch tomorrow'? ■ EXERCISE
18 — VERB REVIEW: Complete the sentences with the verbs in
parentheses, 1 . Right now, Anita (sit) IS Sitting. _ at her desk. 2.
She (do, not) _ homework. She (write) _ a letter to her parents.
EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 245

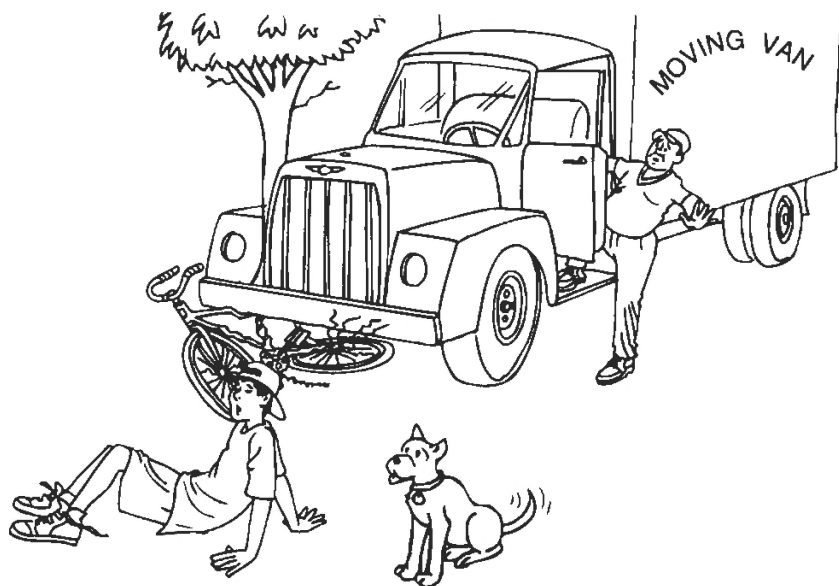
3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. She (write) . She (write, not.) Her parents (expect , not) . Last night Anita (write) _ (start) _ _ to her parents every week. _ _ _ a letter every day. _ to get a letter every day. a letter to her brother. Then she to write a letter to her sister. While Anita was writing a letter to her sister last night, her phone (ring) Anita (finish, not) . After she (talk) _ to bed. • It (be) . her sister! _ the letter to her sister last night. to her sister, she (go) . Tomorrow she (write) Anita (write, not) _ (you, write) _ (you, write) _ (you, write) _ a letter to her cousin in Brazil, a letter to her parents tomorrow. a letter to someone every day? a letter to someone yesterday? a letter to someone tomorrow? 6-8 VERB SUMMARY: FORMS OF BE STATEMENT NEGATIVE QUESTION SIMPLE PRESENT I am from Korea. He is from Egypt. They are from Venezuela. I am not from Jordan. She isn't from China. They aren't from Italy. Am I in the right room? Is she from Greece? Are they from Kenya? SIMPLE PAST Ann was late yesterday. They were late yesterday. She wasn't on time. They weren't on time. Was she in class? Were they in class? BB GOI\'(r TO I am going to be late. She is going to be late. They are going to be late. I'm not going to be on bme. She isn't going to be on time. They aren't going to be on time. Am I going to be late? Is she going to be late? Are they going to be late tomorrow? WilJL He will be at home tomorrow. He won't be at work tomorrow. Will he be at work next week? 246 ■

CHAPTER 6

I EXERCISE 19 — REVIEW OF BE: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. 1. I (be) in class right now. I (be, not) here yesterday. I (be) absent yesterday, (you, be) in class yesterday? (Carmen, be) here yesterday? 2. 3. 4. Carmen and I (be) _ _ (be, not) _ My friends (be) _ ____ evening. I (be) _ there? (Yuko, be) _ A whale (be, not) _ mammal. Dolphins (be, not) _ absent from class yesterday. We here. _ at Fatima's apartment tomorrow _ there too. (you, be) _ _ „ _ there? a fish. It (be) _ _ _ fish either. They a ■

EXERCISE 20— VERB REVIEW: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Give short answers to questions where necessary. 1. A: (you, have) Do yOU have _ a bicycle? B: Yes, I (do) _ do _ _ . I (ride) _ ride _ it to work every day. 2. A: (you, walk) _ to work yesterday? B: No, I _ . I (ride) _ my bicycle. 3. A: (you, know) _ _ _ Mr. Park? B: Yes, I _ A: Where (you, meet) _ him? B: I (meet) _ him at a dinner party at my uncle's house. **EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 247**

4. A: What time (you, get up) B: Between six and seven.
 every day? A: B: 5. A: B: A: B; 6. A: B: 7. A: B: A: B: What time
 (you, get up) _ tomorrow? Six-thirty. Where (you, study, usually) _ ?
 In my room. (you, go) _ to the library to study sometimes? No. I
 (like, not) _ to study at the library. (you, be) _ in class tomorrow?
 Yes, I _ , But I (be, not) _ in class the day after tomorrow. (Yuko,
 call) _ you last night? Yes, she _ , We (talk) _ for a few minutes.
 (she, tell) _ you about her brother? No, she _ . She (say, not) _
 anything about her brother. Why? Her brother (be) _ in an accident.
 That's too bad. What happened? 248 ■ CHAPTER 6



■ EXERCISE 21— REVIEW (ORAL/ WRITTEN): The name of the person in the pictures is Alex. What is he doing? Why? Make up probable reasons. Give three different descriptions of his activities according to the given directions. 1 . description #1 : Assume the pictures show things that Alex is doing right now and/ or does every day. Use the pictures to describe some of Alex's activities, using present tenses. 2. description #2: Assume the pictures show things that Alex is going to do tomorrow. Describe these activities. 3. description #3; Assume the pictures show things that Alex did yesterday. Describe these activities. 250 m CHAPTER 6



6-9 USING WHAT + A FORM OF DO PRESENT (a) What do you do every day? > (b) What are you doing right now? ► I work every day. I'm studying English. What + a form of do is used to ask about activities. I ASK (c) What did you do yesterday? I went to school yesterday. HJTBUT: (d) What are you going to do tomorrow? ■ > (e) What will we do if it rains tomorrow? ■ > I'm going to go downtown tomorrow. We'll stay home if it rains tomorrow. ■ EXERCISE 22: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. 1. A: What (you, do) do you do every Friday? B: I (come) COME to class. 2. A: What (you, do) last Friday? B: I (come) to class. 3. A: What (you , do) next Friday? B: I (come) to class. 4. A: What (you, do) yesterday evening? B: I (watch) TV. 5. A: What (you, do) every evening? B: I (watch) TV. 6. A: What (you, do) tomorrow evening? B: I (watch) TV. 7. A: What (you , do) right now? B: I (do) a grammar exercise. 8. A: What (Maria, do) every morning? B: She (go) to work. EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 251

A: What (the students . do) right now? B: They (work) on this exercise. A: What (they, do) in class tomorrow? B: They (take) a test. A: What (Boris, do) last night? B: He (so) to a movie. A: What (the teacher, do) every day at the beginning of class? B-. She (pull) her books on her desk, (look) at the class, and (say) , “Good morning.” ■ EXERCISE 23— ORAL: Ask a classmate a question. Use What + a form of do with the given time expression. Example: yesterday student a: What did you do yesterday? STUDENT B: (free response) 1 . last night 2. every day 3. right now 4. tomorrow 5. yesterday afternoon 6. tomorrow morning 7. every morning Switch roles. 8. right now 9. last Saturday 10. next Saturday 11 . this morning 12. this afternoon 13. tonight 14. next week 252 ■

CHAPTER 6

6-10 MAY/MIGHT vs. WILL (a) It may rain tomorrow. (b) Anita may be at home now. May + verb (simple form) expresses a possibility in the future, as in (a), or a present possibility, as in (b). (c) It might rain tomorrow. (d) Anita might be at home now. Might has the same meaning as may . (a) and (c) have the same meaning. (e) Tom will be at the meeting tomorrow. (f) Ms. Lee may/might be at the meeting tomorrow. In (e): The speaker uses will because he feels sure about Tom's presence at the meeting tomorrow. In (f): The speaker uses may/might to say, "I don't know if Ms. Lee will be at the meeting, but it is possible." (g) Ms. Lee may/might not be at the meeting tomorrow. Negative form: may/might + not note: (f) and (g) have essentially the same meaning: Ms. Lee may or may not be at the meeting tomorrow. (h) INCORRECT; Ms. Lee may will be at the meeting tomorrow . incorrect: Ms, Lee might will be at the meeting tomorrow , May and might are not used with will. ■ EXERCISE 24: Complete the sentences. Use unit or won't if you're sure. Use may/might if you're not sure. 1 . I _ be in class next Monday. --*■ I will be in class next Monday. = You're sure. *■ I will not (won't) be in class next Monday. = You're sure, ' I may/might be in class next Monday (or I may /might not be in class next Monday). = It's possible, but you're not sure. 2. I _ eat breakfast tomorrow morning. 3. I _ be in class tomorrow. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. I _ I _ We _ I _ It _ The sun I _ get a letter from a friend of mine tomorrow, watch TV for a little while after dinner tonight. _ have a grammar test in class tomorrow. eat dinner at a restaurant tonight. . be cloudy tomorrow. _ rise tomorrow morning. choose a career in music after I finish school. EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 253

1 1 . There _ few months. be another earthquake in Japan in the next 12. The population of the earth _ continue to grow. 13. Cities _ become more and more crowded. 14. We _ before the end of the 21 st century. communicate with beings from outer space 1 5. Do you think we _ communicate with other beings through music?

■ EXERCISE 25— WRITTEN: Complete the sentences. Write about your activities tomorrow. Use be going to and may/might. 1 . I'm going to get up at . . . tomorrow morning. 2. I'llhen 3. After that 4. Around . . . o'clock 5. Later 6. At . . . o'clock 7. Then 8. After that 9. Next 10. Then at . . . o'clock ■ EXERCISE 26— WRITTEN: Complete the sentences, Write about your activities yesterday. 1 . I got up at . . . yesterday morning. 2. I . . . and 3. Then I . . . 4. I didn't . . . because 5. Later 6. Around . . . o'clock 7. Then 8. After that 9. At . . . o'clock 10. I didn't . . . because . . . 11. At ... I ... 12. ... after that. 13. Then at 254 ■

CHAPTER 6

6- 1 1 MAYBE (ONE WORD) vs. MAY BE (TWO WORDS)

(a) "Will Abdullah be in class tomorrow?" "I don't know. Maybe . Maybe Abdullah will be in class tomorrow, and maybe he won't."

(b) | Maybe | | Abdullah | | will be | here. adverb subject verb (c) |

Abdullah | | may be | here tomorrow. subject verb The adverb

maybe (one word) means "possibly. Maybe comes in front of a subject and verb. May be (two words) is used as the verb of a

sentence. ■ EXERCISE 27: Find the sentences where maybe is used

as an adverb and where may is used as part of the verb. 1 . Maybe it

will rain tomorrow. > maybe - an adverb 2. It may rain tomorrow.

> may rain - a verb; may is part of the verb 3. We may go to the art

museum tomorrow. 4. Maybe Ann would like to go to the museum

with us. 5. She may like to go to art museums. 6. It's cold and

cloudy today. It may be cold and cloudy tomorrow. Maybe the

weather will be warm and sunny this weekend. ■ EXERCISE 28:

Use maybe or may/might . 1 . A: Is David going to come to the

party? B: I don't know. _ Maybe _ . 2. A: What are you going to do

tomorrow? B: I don't know. I mQV /might _ go swimming. 3. A:

What are you going to do tomorrow? B: I don't have any plans. _ I'll

go swimming. 4. A: Where is Robert? B: I don't know. He _ be at Ins

office. 5. A: Where is Robert? B: I don't know, _ he's at his office.

EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 255

6. A: Are Kate and Steve going to get married? B: _ . Who knows? 7. A: Are you going to move to Pordand or to Seatde? B: I don't know. I _ _ move to San Francisco. 8. A: Where are you planning to go on your vacation? B: _ we'll go to Mexico. We haven't decided yet. We _ go to Florida. 9. A: Is Amanda married? B: Hmmm. I'm not sure. _ she is, and _ she isn't. 10. A: Do you think it will rain tomorrow? B: I have no idea. _ it will, and _ _ it won't. 11. A: Are you going to study English next semester? B: _ . Are you? 12. A: I'd like to have a pet. B: Oh? What kind of pet would you like to get? A-. Oh, I don't know'. I haven't decided yet. _ I'll get a canary. Or _ I'll get a snake. I'm not sure. I _ get a frog. Or I _ get a turtle. B: What's wrong with a cat or dog? ■ EXERCISE 29: Complete the sentences w'ith maybe or may be. 1 . A: I mQV be _ a little late tonight. B: That's okay. I won't worry about you. 2. A: Will you be here by seven o'clock? B: It's hard to say. Movbe _ I'll be a little late. 3. A: It _ cold tomorrow. B: That's okay. Let's go to the beach anyway. 256 ■ CHAPTER 6

4. A: Will the plane be on time? B: I think so, but it _ a few minutes late. 5. A: Do you want to go to the park tomorrow? B: Sure. That sounds like fun. A: Let's talk to Carlos too. _ he would like to go with us. 6. A: Where's Mr. Chu? B: Look in Room 506 down the hall. I think he _ there. A: No, he's not there. I just looked in Room 506. B: _ he's in Room 508.

■ EXERCISE 30 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Answer the question by using I don't know + maybe or may! might. Example: What are you going to do tonight? Response: I don't know. Maybe I'll watch TV. / I may watch TV. / I might watch TV. 1. What are you going to do tonight? 2. What are you going to do tomorrow? 3. What are you going to do after class today? 4. What are you going to do this weekend? 5. What are you going to do this evening? 6. Who is going to go shopping tomorrow? What are you going to buy? 7. Who is going to go out to eat tonight? Where are you going to go? 8. Who is going to get married? When? 9. Who is going to watch TV tonight? What are you going to watch? 10. Who is absent today? Where is he/she? 11. Is it going to rain tomorrow? What is the weather going to be like tomorrow? 12. Who is planning to go on a vacation? Where are you going to go? 13. Who wants to have a pet? What kind of pet are you going to get? ■ EXERCISE 31— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Use the given information to make guesses. Include may/might and maybe in some of your guesses. Example: (...) is absent today. Why? Do you have any possible explanations? ' He/She may be sick. He/She might be out of town today. Maybe he/she is late today and will come soon. 1. What is (...) going to do after class today? 2. (...) said, "I have very exciting plans for this weekend." What is he/she going to do this weekend? 3. (...) has an airplane ticket in his pocket. I saw it. Do you know where he/she is going to go?

EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 257

4. (...) said, 'I don't like it here in this city.' Why doesn't (...) like it here? Do you have any idea? 5. (...) doesn't like it here, What is he/she going to do? 6. (...) has something very special in his/her pocket, but he/she won't show anyone what it is. What do you suppose is in his/her pocket? 7. Can you think of some good things that may happen to you this year? 8. What are some good things that might happen to (...) this year or next year? 9* Can you think of some bad things that might happen in this world this year or next? 10. What are some good things that may happen in the world this year? 11, What new inventions do you think we may have in the future to make our lives easier? 6-12 FUTURE TIME CLAUSES WITH BEFORE, AFTER, AND WHEN (a) Before Ann goes to work tomorrow* she will eat breakfast. (b) incorrect: Before Ann will go to work tomorrow, she will eat breakfast. INCORRECT: Before Ann is going to go to work tomorrow, she will eat breakfast. In (a): Before Ann goes to work tomorrow is a future time clause.* A future time clause uses the simple present tense* not will or be going to. (c) I'm going to finish my homework after 1 In (e): after { eat dinner tonight - a future time clause. eat dinner tonight. (d) When I go to New York next week* I'm In (d): When I go to New York next week = a future going to stay at the Hilton Hotel. time clause. *See Chan 5-18 for information about time clauses. ■ EXERCISE 32: Find the time clauses. 1 . When we go to the park tomorrow, we're going to go to the zoo, * When we go to the park tomorrow ~ a time clause 2. After I get home tonight, I'm going to make an overseas call to my parents. 3. Mr. Kim will finish his report before he leaves the office today. 4. I'll get some fresh fruit when I go to the market tomorrow. 5. Before I go to bed tonight, I'm going to write a letter to my brother. 6. I'm going to look for a job at a computer company after I graduate next year

258 ■ CHAPTER 6

■ EXERCISE 33: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. 1. Before 1 (go) —9° - _ to bed tonight, I (watch) am going to watch/will watch my favorite show on TV. 2. I (buy) _ a new coat when I (go) _ shopping tomorrow. 3. After I (finish) _ my homework this evening, I (take) _ a walk. 4. When I (see) _ Eduardo tomorrow, I (ask) _ him to join us for dinner this weekend. 5. When I (go) _ to Australia next month, I (meet) _ my Aunt Emily for the first time. 6. Mrs. Polanski (change) _ her clothes before she (work) _ in her garden this afternoon. EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 259



■ EXERCISE 34 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Give complete answers to the questions. Use time clauses. Example: teacher: STUDENT a: teacher: STUDENT A: teacher: STUDENT B; Who's going to go shopping later today? What are you going to do after you go shopping? Who's going to go shopping later today? {Student A raises his/her hand.} What are you going to do after you go shopping? After I go shopping, I'm going to go home, or: I'm going to go home after I go shopping. What is (. . .) going to do after he/she goes shopping? After (...) goes shopping, he/she is going to go home, or: (...) is going to go home after he/she goes shopping. 1. Who's going to study tonight? What are you going to do after you study tonight? 2. Who else is going to study tonight? What are you going to do before you study? 3. Who's going to watch TV tonight? What are you going to do before you watch TV? 4. Who's going to watch TV tonight? What are you going to do after you watch TV? 5. Who's going to go shopping tomorrow? What are you going to buy when you go shopping tomorrow? 6. (...), what are you going to do tonight? What are you going to do before you . . . ? What are you going to do after you . . . tonight? 7. (...), what are you going to do tomorrow? What are you going to do before you . . . tomorrow? What are you going to do after you . . . tomorrow? 8. Who's going out of town soon? Where are you going? What are you going to do when you go to (name of place)? 9. Who's going to eat dinner tonight? What are you going to do before you eat dinner? What are you going to do after you eat dinner? What are you going to have when you eat dinner? 10. (...), what time are you going to get home today? What are you going to do before you get home? What are you going to do when you get home? What are you going to do after you get home? 6-13 CLAUSES WITH IF (a) | If it rains tomorrow | we will stay home. | (/ -clause main clause (b) | We will stay home | | */ it rains tomorrow. \ main clause (/ -clause An (/ -clause begins with if and has a subject and a verb. An (/ -clause can come before or after a main clause. (c) If it rains tomorrow , we won't go on a picnic. (d) I'm going to buy a new car next year if I have enough money . If I don't have enough money for a new car next year. I'm going to buy a used car. The simple present (not will or be going to) is used in an (/ -clause to express future time. 260

| EXERCISE 35: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. 1. If Ali (be) _ [S _ in class tomorrow, I (ask) _ CUT) going to/will ask him to join us for coffee after class. 2. If the weather (be) _ nice tomorrow, I (go) _ to Central Park with my friends. 3. I (stay, not) _ home tomorrow if the weather (be) _ nice. 4. If I (feel, not) _ well tomorrow, I (go, not) _ to work. 5. Masako (stay) _ in bed tomorrow if she (feel, not) _ well. 6. I (stay) _ with my aunt and uncle if I (go) _ to Miami next week. 7. If my friends (be) _ busy tomorrow, I (go) _ to a movie by myself. 8. If we (continue) _ to pollute the land and oceans with poisons and waste, future generations (suffer) _ . DON'T DRINK THE WATER hazardous
> EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 261



■ EXERCISE 36 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): In pairs, ask and answer questions. student a: Your book is open. Ask a question that begins with “What are you going to do . . . ,3” student R: Your book is closed. Answer the question. Include the if-clause in your answer. Example: STUDENT A: STUDENT B: . . . if the weather is nice tomorrow? What are you going to do if the weather is nice tomorrow? If the weather is nice tomorrow, I’m going to sit outside in the sun. ok: I’m going to sit outside in the sun if the weather is nice tomorrow. 1 . . . if the weather is cold tomorrow? 2. . . if the weather is hot tomorrow? 3. . . if you don’t understand a question that I ask you? 4. . . if class is canceled tomorrow? 5. . . if you don’t feel well tomorrow? 6. . . if you go to (name of a place in this city) tomorrow? Switch roles. 7. . . if it rains tonight? 8. . . if you’re hungry after class today? 9. . . if you go to (name of a place in this city) tomorrow? 10. . . if you don’t study tonight? 11. . . if you lose your grammar book? 12. . . if someone steals your (name of a thing: bicycle, wallet, etc.)? **■ EXERCISE 37:** Pair up with a classmate. student a: Fill out the calendar with your activities for next week. (If you don’t have many planned activities, invent some interesting ones.) Then give the calendar to Student B. student b: In writing, describe Student A’s activities next week. Try to include some time clauses beginning with when , after, and before. Ask Student A questions about the activities on his/her calendar to get more information or clarification. Student B interview’s Student A about his calendar and then writes: On Sunday, Ali is going to play tennis with Talal early in the morning. They’re going to play on the tennis courts here at this school. After they play tennis, they’re going to have breakfast. In the afternoon, Ali is going to meet Ivan at Cozy’s. Cozy’s is a cafe. They’re going to have a sandwich and a cup of coffee before they go to the soccer game at Memorial Stadium. Ali will study in the evening before he watches TV and goes to bed. Example: (Student A is Ali.) SUNDAY too 'tt/wnxA' /with. TcdJL loo SneakkAt a/Uk Jedat poo mm Imw at Com.' a xoo Mwuywd StcdLuunv 7-1 Study. 262 **■ CHAPTER 6**

Fill out Lh is calendar with your activities for next week.
 MONDAY THURSDAY TUESDAY FRIDAY WEDNESDAY SATURDAY
 6-14 EXPRESSING HABITUAL PRESENT WITH TIME CLAUSES AND
 /F-CLAUSES (a) m:turk (b) HAH ITU At. PRJ-SHNT After Ann gets
 to work today, she is going to have a cup of coffee. After Ann gets
 to work (every day) , she always has a cup of coffee. (a) expresses a
 specific activity in the future. The simple present is used in the time
 clause. Be going to is used in the main clause. (b) expresses habitual
 activities, so the SIM pi .e present is used in both the time clause
 and the main clause. (c) t-Tj-j'URi; If it rains tomorrow, I am going
 to wear my raincoat to school. SLMple present is used in the (/ -clause, Be going
 to is used in the main clause. (d) HABITUAL. If it rains, I wear my
 raincoat. (d) expresses habitual activities, so the simple PRKSrXT
 present is used in both the (/ -clause and Lhe main clause.
 EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 26 3

■ EXERCISE 38: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. When I (go) _ with my aunt and uncle. When I (go) _ with my aunt and uncle. Before I (go) . of tea. Before I (go) . a cup of tea. to Miami, I (stay, usually) . _ to A'liami next week, I (slay) . to class today, I (have) _ to class, I 'have, usually) . I'm often tired in the evening after a long day at work. If I (be) . in the evening, I (stay, usually) _ _ to bed early. If I (be). tired this evening, I (stay) . _ to bed early. home and (go) _ After I (get) _ home in the evening, I (sit, usually) . in my favorite chair and (read) _ the newspaper. After I (get) _ home tonight, I (sit) _ in my favorite chair and (read) . We (go) _ the newspaper. a cup tired . home and (go) swimming tomorrow if the weather (be) _ warm. My friends and I (like) _ to go swimming if the weather (be) _ warm. People (yawn , often) _ and (stretch) _ when they (wake) _ up. I (buy) _ some stamps when I (go) _ to the post office this afternoon. Before the teacher (walk) _ into the room every day, there (be) _ a lot of noise in the classroom. 264 ■

CHAPTER 6

14. When I (go) _ to Taiwan next month, I (stay) _ with my friend Mr. Chu. After I (leave) _ Taiwan, I (go) _ to Hong Kong. 15. Ms. Wah (go) _ to Hong Kong often. When she (be) _ there, she (like) _ to take the ferry across the bay, but sometimes she (take) _ the subway under the bay. ■ EXERCISE 39— ORAL (BOOKS

CLOSED): Answer the questions in complete sentences. 1. What do you do when you get up in the morning? 2. What are you going to do when you get up tomorrow morning? 3. What do you usually do before you go to bed? 4. What are you going to do before you go to bed tonight? 5. What are you going to do after you eat dinner tonight? 6. What do you usually do after you eat dinner? 7. What do you like to do if the weather is nice? 8. What are you going to do if the weather is nice tomorrow? ■ EXERCISE 40: Complete the sentences with your own words. 1. Before I go to bed tonight, 2. Before I go to bed, I usually 3. I'm going to ... tomorrow after I 4. When I go to ... , I'm going to 5. When I go to ... , I always 6. If the weather ... tomorrow, I 7. I will visit ... when I 8. I'll., if I.... 9. If the weather ... tomorrow, ... you going to ... ? 10. Are you going to ... before you ... ? 11. Do you ... before you ... ? 12. After I ... tonight, I ■ EXERCISE 41

—REVIEW (ORAL/ WRITTEN): Pretend that you are going to start a selfimprovement plan for this coming year. What are some things you are going to do/will do to improve yourself and your life this year? For example: I will stop smoking. I am going to get more exercise. Etc. EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 265

■ EXERCISE 42— REVIEW (ORAL/WRITTEN): What is going to happen in the lives of your classmates in the next 50 years? Make predictions about your classmates' futures. For example: Heidi is going to become a famous research scientist. Ali will have a happy marriage and lots of children. Carlos will live in a quiet place and write poetry. Etc.

■ EXERCISE 43— REVIEW (ORAL/ WRITTEN): In the mail, you find a letter from a bank. In the envelope is a gift of a lot of money. (As a class, decide on the amount of money in the gift.) You can keep the money if you follow the directions in the letter. There are six different versions of the letter. Choose one (or more) of the letters and describe what you are going to do.

letter #1 : LETTER #2: You have to spend the money on a wonderful vacation. What are you going to do? You have to spend the money to help other people. What are you going to do? You have to spend the money to improve your school or place of work. What are you going to do? You have to spend the money on your family. What are you going to do? You have to spend the money to make the world a better place. What are you going to do? You have to spend the money to improve your country. What are you going to do?

■ EXERCISE 44— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Practice using the irregular verbs in the above list.

1. begin-began Our class begins at (9:00) every day. Class began at (9:00 this morning). When did class begin (this morning)? ■ It began at (9:00).

2. lose-lost Sometimes I lose things. Yesterday I lost my keys. What did I do yesterday? 3. find-found Sometimes I lose things. And then I find them. Yesterday I lost my keys, but then I found them in my jacket pocket. What did I do yesterday?

266 m CHAPTER 6

6-15 MORE IRREGULAR VERBS

begin - began
find - found
lose - lost
hang - hung

say - said
sell - sold
steal - stole

tell - told
tear - tore
wear - wore

4. tear- tore 5 , sell— sold 6. hang-hung 7 , tell- told 8. wear-wore 9, steal-stole 10. say-said Cf If we make a mistake when we write a check, we tear the check up. Yesterday I made a mistake when I wrote a check, so I tore it up and wrote a new check. What did I do yesterday? People sell things that they don't need anymore. (...) has a new bicycle, so he/she sold his/her old bicycle. What did (...) do? I like to hang pictures on my walls. This morning I hung a new picture in my bedroom. What did I do this morning? The kindergarten teacher likes to tell stories to her students. Yesterday she told a story about a little red train. What did the teacher do yesterday? I wear a sweater to class every evening. Last night I wore a jacket as well. What did I wear last night? Thieves steal money and other valuables. Last month a thief stole my aunt's pearl necklace. What did a thief do last month? People usually say "hello" when they answer a phone. When (...) answered his/her phone this morning, he/she said "hello." What did (...) do this morning? ■

EXERCISE 45: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. begin say tear find sell tell hang steal wear lose 1 . A: Did you go to the park yesterday? B: No. We stayed home because it _ to rain. 2. A; Susie is in trouble. B; Why? A: She _ a lie. Her mom and dad are upset. 3. A: Where did you get that pretty shell? B: I _ it on the beach. 4. A: May I please have your homework? B: I don't have it. I _ it. A: You what!? B: I can't find it anywhere. 5. A: Where's my coat? B: I put it up in the closet for you. **EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME** ■ 267

6. A: What happened to your sleeve? B: A: 7. A: B: 8. A: B: A: 9. A: B: A: B: 10. A; B: it on a nail. I _ That's too bad. Do you still have your bicycle? No. I _ needed some extra money. It's hot in here. Excuse me? What did you say? . it because I I . , "It's hot in here." Why did you take the bus to work this morning? Why didn't you drive? . my car last night. Because somebody _ Did you call the police? Of course I did. Did you wear your blue jeans to the job interview? Of course not! I _ a suit. EXERCISE 46: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. Use any appropriate verb form. 1. A: B: 2. A: B: 3. A: B: 4. A: B: 5. A: (you, be) , at home tomorrow morning around ten? No. I (be) . I (lose) _ out. my sunglasses yesterday. Where? A: I (think) . , that I (leave) . them on a table at the restaurant. How are you getting along? Fine. I'm making a lot of friends, and my English (improve) . Sometimes children tell little lies. You talked to Annie, (she, tell) . _ the truth, or (she, tell) _ She (tell) . (you, write) . the truth. She's honest. _ a letter to George yesterday? a lie? B: Yes, I did. I (send) . him a letter yesterday. 266 ■ CHAPTER 6

6. A: May I see the classified section of the newspaper? B: Sure. Here it is. A: Thanks. I (want) (look) at the want ads. I (need) (find) a new apartment. APTS., UNFURN. 2 BR. 4 725/mo. Lake St. Near bus. All utils . incl. No pets. 361- 3663. eves. 7. A: B: 8. A: B: 9. A: B: 10. A: B: A: B: Where (you, go) _ yesterday? I (go) _ to my cousin's house. I (see) _ Jean there and (talk) _ to her for a while. And I (meet) _ my cousin's neighbors, Mr. and Mrs. Bell. They're nice people. I like them. What are you going to do tonight? (you, study) _ ? No. I don't think so. I'm tired. I think I (watch) _ TV for a while, or maybe I (listen) _ to some music. Or I might read a novel. But I (want, not, study) _ _ tonight. (you, do) _ your homework last night? No. I (be) _ too tired. I (go) _ to bed early and (sleep) _ for nine hours. Good morning. Excuse me? I (say) _ , "Good morning." Oh! Good morning! I'm sorry. I (understand, not) _ you at first.

EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 269

11. A: B: A: B: What did you do yesterday? Well, I (wake up) _ around nine and (go) _ shopping. While I was downtown, someone (steal) _ my purse. I (take) _ a taxi home. When I (get) _ out of the taxi, I (tear) _ my blouse. I (borrow) _ some money from my roommate to pay the taxi driver. Did anything good happen to you yesterday? Hmm. Let me think. Oh yes. I (lose) _ my grammar book, but I (find) _ it later. 6- 1 6 MORE IRREGULAR VERBS cost — cost hit — hit spend — spent cut — cut hurt — hurt understand — understood forget - forgot lend - lent give - gave make - made ■

EXERCISE 47— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Practice using the irregular verbs in the above list. 1. cost-cost I bought a hat yesterday. I paid (twenty dollars) for it. It cost (twenty dollars). What did I buy yesterday? How much did it cost? You bought a hat. It cost (twenty dollars). 2. give-gave People give gifts when someone has a birthday. Last week, (...) had a birthday. I gave him/her (something). What did I do? 3. make-made I made good chocolate cake. Last week I made a cake for (...)’s birthday. What did I do last week? 4. cut-cut (...) cuts vegetables when he/she makes a salad. Two nights ago, while he/she was making a salad, he /she cut his/her finger with the knife. What happened two nights ago? 5. hurt -hurt 6. lend-lent 7. forget-forgot 8. spend-spent When I have a headache, my head hurts. Yesterday I had a headache. My head hurt yesterday. How did my head feel yesterday? How does your head feel when you have a headache? I lend money to my friends if they need it. Yesterday X lent (a certain amount of money) to (...). What did I do? Sometimes I forget my wallet. Last night, I forgot it at a restaurant. What did I do last night? I usually spend Saturdays with my parents. Last Saturday, I spent the day with my friends instead. What did I do last Saturday?

9. shta-shiti 10. tinders landunderstood 11. hit-hit I shut the garage door every night at 10:00 p.m. I shut it early last night. What did I do last night? I always understand (...) when he/she speaks. He/She just said something and I understood it. What just happened? (...) lives in an apartment. His/Her neighbors are very noisy. When they make too much noise, (...) hits the wall with his/her hand. Last night hc/she couldn't get to sleep because of the noise, so he/she hit the wall with his/her hand. What did (...) do last night? What does hc/she usually do when his/her neighbors make too much noise? EXERCISE 48: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. 1. A: How much (a new car ■ cost) _ B: It (cost) _ a lot! New cars are expensive. 2. A: Did you get a ticket for the rock concert? B: Yes, and it was really expensive! It (cost) _ 3. A: Where's your dictionary? B: I (give) _ it to Robert. 4. A: I had a car accident yesterday morning. B: What happened? fifty dollars. A: I (hi i) _ a telephone pole. 5. A: May I have your homework, please? B: I'm sorry, but I don't have it. I (forget) _ A: You (forget) _ it!? it. 6. A: Did you eat breakfast? B: Yeah. 1 (make) _ 7. Jack (put) _ 8. Jack (put) _ . some scrambled eggs and toast for myseLf. on his clothes every morning. on his clothes this morning after he got up. 9. A: Did you enjoy going into the city to see a show? B: Yes, but I (spend) _ a lot of money. I can't afford to do that very often. 10. A: May I see your dictionary? B: I don't have it, I (lend) _ it to George. EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 271

11. A: Is that knife sharp? B: It's very sharp. It ('em) _ anything easily. 12. A: I went to a barber this morning. He (cut) _ my hair too short. B: It looks fine. ■ EXERCISE 49— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Give the past form. Spell the past form. Make sentences using the past form. Example: come Response: came . . . C-A-M-E ... 1 came to class this morning. 1. come 19. meet 37. forget 2. eat 20. speak 38. drive 3. stand 21. take 39. ride 4. understand 22. wear 40. run 5. drink 23. write 41. go 6. break 24. fly 42. see 7. hear 25. leave 43. sit 8. lose 26. pay 44. cut 9. find 27. cost 45. hit 10. begin 28. spend 46. sing 11. put 29. sell 47. bring 12. shut 30. buy 48. read 13. hang 31. ring 49. teach 14. tell 32. make 50. think 15. tear 33. do 51. have 16. get 34. say 52. sleep 17. wake up 35. catch 53. give 18. steal 36. send 54. lend M EXERCISE 50 — REVIEW: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. Use any appropriate verb form. 1 . A: I (cut) _ class tomorrow. B: Why? A: Why not? B: That's not a very good reason. 2. A: How did you get here? B: I (take) _ a plane. I (fly) _ here from Bangkok. 272 ■

CHAPTER 6

3. A: How do you usually get to class? B: I (walk, usually) _ , but sometimes I (take) _ the bus. 4. A: Where (you, meet) _ your wife? B: I (meet) _ her at a party ten years ago. 5. A: Did you see that? B: What? A: The man in the red shirt (hit) _ the man in the blue shirt. B: Really? 6. A: Were you late for the movie? B: No. The movie (begin) _ at 7:30, and we (get) _ to the theater at 7:26. 7. A: What time (the movie, begin) _ last night? B: 7:30. A: (you, be) _ late? B: No, We (make) _ it in time. 8. A: Do you hear that noise? B: What noise? A: (you, listen) _ ? 9. A: Where's your homework? B: I (lose) _ it. A: Oh? B: I (forget) _ it. A: Oh? B: I (give) _ it to Roberto to give to you, but he (lose) _ it. A: Oh? B: Someone (steal) _ it. A: Oh? B: Well, actually I (have, not) _ enough time to finish it last night. A: I see. EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 273

10. A: Where's my book! Someone (steal) it! B: Take it easy. Your book (be) . A: Oh. 11 . A: (you, stay) _ next week? B: No. I (take) _ right here. here during vacation a trip to Miami. I (visit) A: B: 12. A: B: A: B: 13. A: B: A: B: A: 14. A: B: A: B: A: 15. A: B: A: B: A: B: How long (you, be) . About five days. Why (you, zwear) . foot? my aunt and uncle. _ away? a cast on your I (break) . How? I (step) _ (you, want., go) _ afternoon? I'd like to go, but I can't because I have to study. That's too bad. (you, go) _ my ankle. _ in a hole while I was running in the park. _ to the zoo this to the zoo? Yes. The weather is perfect, and I (want) . _ outside and (enjoy) _ (you, see) _ . (get) it. Randy yesterday? No, but I (speak) . to him on the phone. He (call) me yesterday evening. Is he okay? Yes. He still has a cold, but he's feeling much better. That's good. Is Carol here? No, she (be, not) . minutes ago. (she, be) _ I think so. Where (she, go) _ She (go) _ . She (leave) _ _ back soon? a few to the drugstore.

■ EXERCISE 51 — REVIEW: Choose the correct completions. 1. "Are you going to go to the baseball game tomorrow afternoon?" "I don't know. I _ ." A. will B. am going to C. maybe D. might 2. "Are Jane and Eric going to be at the meeting?" "No, they're too busy. They _ be there." A. don't B. won't C. will D. may 3. "Are you going to go to the market today?" "No. I went there _ Friday." A. yesterday B. next C. last D. ago 4. "When are you going to go to the bank?" "I'll go there before I _ to the post office tomorrow morning." A. will go B. go C. went D. am going 5. "Why is the teacher late today?" "I don't know. _ he slept late." A. May B. Did C. Maybe D. Was 6. "Do you like to go to New York City?" "Yes. When I'm in New York, I always _ new things to do and places to go" A. found B. find C. will find D. am finding 7. "Is Ken going to talk to us this afternoon about our plans for tomorrow?" "No. He'll _ us this evening." A. calls B. calling C. call D. called 8. " _ are you going to do after class today?" "I'm going to go home." A. When B. Where C. What D. What time 9. "Where _ Ivonne live before she moved into her new apartment?" "She lived in a dormitory at the university." A. did B. does C. is D. was 10. "What time _ Olga and Boris going to arrive?" "Six." A. is B. do C. will D. are EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 275

■ EXERCISE 52— REVIEW (ERROR ANALYSIS): Correct the errors in the sentences. 1 . Is Ivan will go to work tomorrow? 2. When you will call me? 3. Will Tom to meet us for dinner tomorrow? 4. We went to a movie yesterday night. 5. If it will be cold tomorrow' morning, my car won't start. 6. We maybe late for the concert tonight. 7. Did you found your keys? 8. What time you are going to come tomorrow? 9. My sister is going to meet me at the airport. My brother won't to be there. 10. Fatima will call us tonight when she will arrive home safely. 11 . Mr. Wong will sells his business and retires next year. 12. Do you w'll be in Venezuela next year? 13. Emily may will be at the party'. 14. I'm going to return home in a couple of month. 15. When I'll see you tomorrow, I'll return your book to you, 16. I saw Jim three day ago. 17. I may to don't be in class tomorrow. 18. Ahmed puts his books on his desk when he walked into his apartment. 19. A thief stoled my bicycle. 20. I'll see my parents when I will return home for a visit next July'.

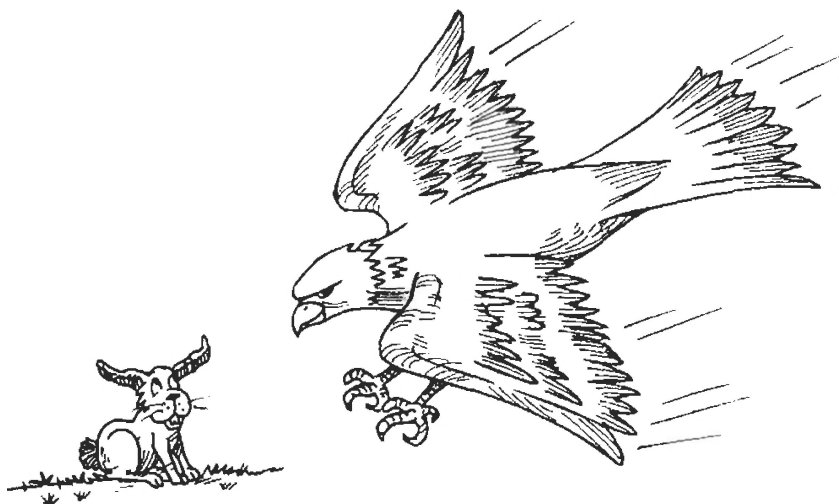
EXERCISE 53— REVIEW: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. Use any appropriate verb form. (1) Peter and Rachel are brother and sister. Right now their parents (be) _ (2) abroad on a trip, so they (stay) _ ivith their grandmother. They (3) (like) _ to stay with her. She (make, always) _ (4) wonderful food for them. And she (tell) _ them stories every night before they (5) (go) _ to bed. (6) Before Peter and Rachel (go) _ to bed last night, they (ask) (7) _ Grandma to tell them a story. She (agree) _ . The (8) children (put) _ on their pajamas, (brush) _ their teeth, and (9) (sit) _ with their grandmother in her big chair to listen to a story. grandma: That's good. Sit here beside me and get comfortable. (10) children: What (you, tell) _ us about tonight, Grandma? (11) grandma: Before I (begin) _ the story, I (give) _ each of you a kiss on the forehead because I love you very much. (1 2) children: We (love) _ you, too, Grandma. EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME ■ 277

(13) (14) (15) (16) (17) (18) (19) (20) (21) (22) (23) (24)
(25) (26) (27) (28) grandma: Tonight I (tell) _ _ _ you a story about
Rabbit and Eagle. Ready? children: Yes! grandma: Rabbit had light
gray fur and a white tail. He lived with his family in a hole in a big,
grassy field. Rabbit (be) _ afraid of many things, but he (be) _
especially afraid of Eagle. Eagle liked to eat rabbits for dinner. One
day while Rabbit was eating grass in the field, he (see) _ Eagle in
the sky above him. Rabbit (be) _ very afraid and (run) _ home to his
hole as fast as he could. Rabbit (stay) _ in his hole day after day
because he (be) _ afraid to go outside. He (get) _ very hungry, but
still he (stay) _ in his hole. Finally, he (find) _ the courage to go
outside because he (need) _ (eat) Carefully and sjknvly, he (pm) _
his little pink nose outside the hole. He (smell, not) _ any dangerous
animals. And he (see, not) _ Eagle anywhere, so he (hop) _ out and
(find) _ some delicious new' grass to eat. While he w'as eating the
grass, he (see) _ a shadow' on the Field and (look) _ up. It was Eagle!
Rabbit said, "Please don't eat me, Eagle! Please don't eat me,
Eagle!" 27 8 ■ CHAPTER 6

(29) (30) (31) (32) (33) (34) (35) (36) (37) (38) (39) (40)

On this sunny afternoon, Eagle was on her way home to her nest when she (hear) _ a faint sound below her. "What is that sound?" Eagle said to herself. She looked around, but she (see, not) _ anything. She (decide) _ to ignore the sound and go home. She was tired and (want) _ (rest) _ in her nest. Then below her, Rabbit (say) _ again in a very loud voice, "Please don't eat me, Eagle! Please don't eat me, Eagle." This time Eagle (hear) _ Rabbit clearly. Eagle (spot) _ Rabbit in the field, (fly) _ down, and (pick) _ Rabbit up in her talons. "Thank you, Rabbit," said Eagle, "I was hungry and (know, not) _ where I could find my dinner. It's a good thing you called to me." Then Eagle (eat) _ Rabbit for dinner. There's a lesson to learn from this story, children. If you (be) _ afraid and expect bad things to happen, bad things will happen. The opposite is also true. If you (expect) _ good things to happen, good things will happen. (you, understand) _ ? Now it's time for bed. EXPRESSING FUTURE TIME

■ 279



(41) (42) (43) (44) (45) (46) (47) (48) (49) (50) children:
Please tell us another story! grandma: Not tonight, I'm tired. Mitt \
(have) _ (go) _ to bed. AH of us need (get) . good night's sleep.
Tomorrow (be) _ CHILDREN: What (we, do) _ a warm drink, 1 . a
busy day. _ tomorrow? grandma: After we (have) . breakfast, we
(go) . to the zoo at Woodland Park. When we (be) _ at the zoo, we
(see) _ lots of wonderful animals. Then in the afternoon we (see) .
(see) _ a play at the Children's Theater. But before we the play, we (
have) a picnic lunch in the park. children: Wow! We (have) , a
wonderful day tomorrow! grandma: Now off to bed! Goodnight,
Rachel and Peter. Sleep tight.* children: Goodnight, Grandma.
Thank you for the story! *"Sleep tight" means "sleep well; have a
good night's sleep," 280 CHAPTER 6

M USING CAN (a) I have some money. I can buy a book. (b) We have time and money* We can go to a movie. (c) Tom is strong. He can lift the heavy box. Can expresses ability and possibility. (d) correct: Yuko can speak English. (e) incorrect: Yuko can to speak English . (f) IN'CORRHCT: Yuko can speaks English. The simple form of the main verb follows can . In (d): speak is the main verb. An infinitive with to does NOT follow can . In (e): to speak is incorrect. The main verb never has a final -s. In (f): speaks is incorrect. (g) Alice can not come. Alice cannot come. Alice can't come. negative: can t not = can not or: cannot contraction: can t not - can't ■ EXERCISE 1— ORAL: Make sentences from the given words. Use can or can't. Example: A bird \ sing Example: A horse \ sing Response: A bird can sing. Response: A horse can't sing. i. A bird \ fly 2. A cow \ fly 3. A child \ drive a car 4. An adult \ drive a car 5. A newborn baby \ walk 6. A fish \ breathe air 7. A fish \ swim 8. A deaf person \ hear 9. A blind person \ see 10. An elephant \ swim 11. An elephant \ climb trees 1 2. A cat \ climb trees 13. A boat \ float on water 14. A rock \ float on water EXPRESSING ABILITY ■ 281



CHAPTER 7

Expressing Ability

■ EXERCISE 2— ORAL: Make sentences about yourself using / can or / can't. Example: speak Chinese Response: I can speak Chinese, or; I can't speak Chinese. 1 . whistle 2. ride a bicycle 3. touch my ear with my elbow 4. play the piano* 5. play the guitar 6. lift a piano 7. drive a stick-shift car 8. fix a flat tire 9. swim 10. float on water 11. ski 12. do arithmetic 13. make a paper airplane 14. sew a button on a shirt 15. eat with chopsticks 16. wiggle my ears 7-2 USING CAN: QUESTIONS (QUESTION WORD) + CAN + SUBJECT + MAIN VERB ANSWER (a) Can you speak Arabic? > Yes, I can . ► No , I can't . (b) Can Marge come to the party? ► Yes, she can . > No, she can't. (l) Where can I buy a hammer? ► At a hardware store . (d) When can you help me? * Tomorrow afternoon . ■ EXERCISE 3: Make yes/no questions. Give short answers. 1. A: Can Jean speak English? _ B: _ Yes, she can. _ (Jean can speak English.) 2. A: Can you speak French? _ B: _ No. / Can't. _ (I can't speak French.) 3. A: _ B: _ (Jim can't play the piano.) 4. A: _ B: _ (I can whistle.) *In expressions with play * the is usually used with musical instruments: play the piano play the guitar, play the violin, etc. 282 m CHAPTER 7

5. A B 6. A B 7. A B 8. A (I can go shopping with you this afternoon,) (Carmen can't ride a bicycle.) (Elephants can swim.) B (The students can finish this exercise quickly.) 9. A: _ B: _ (I can stand on my head.) 10. A: _ B: _ (The doctor can see you tomorrow.) 11. A: _ B: _ (We can't have pets in the dormitory.) ■ EXERCISE 4 — ORAL: Pair up with a classmate. student a: Your book is open. Ask a question. Use "Can you . . . ?" STUDENT B: Your book is closed. Answer the question. Example: STUDENT a: STUDENT B: speak Arabic Can you speak Arabic? Yes, I can. or: No, I can't. 1. ride a bicycle 2. ride a motorcycle 3. ride a horse 4. play the piano 5. play the guitar 6. touch the ceiling of this room 7. cook (a nationality) food 8. sing 9. whistle 10. float on water Switch roles. 11. spell A'lississippi 12. see the back of (. . .)'s head 13. count to five in (a language) 14. stand on your head 15. touch your knee with your nose 16. touch your ear with your elbow 17. play the violin 18. drive a stick-shift car 19. fix a flat tire 20. ski

EXPRESSING ABILITY ■ 283

■ EXERCISE 5— ORAL: Pair up with a classmate. student a; Your book is open. Ask a question. Use ““Where can / . . . ?” student b: Your book is closed. Answer the question. Example: buy a notebook student a: Where can I buy a notebook? student B. At the bookstore. / At (name of a local store). I Etc. 1 . buy a camera 2. get a dozen eggs 3 . buy a window fan 4. get a good dinner 5. go swimming 6. play tennis 7. catch a bus 8. mail a package Switch roles. 9. buy a diamond ring 10. buy a hammer 1 1 . see a zebra 12. get a newspaper 13. find an encyclopedia 14. get a taxi 1 5. get a sandwich 16. cash a check 7-3 USING KNOW HOW TO (a) I can swim. (a) and (b) have basically the same meaning. Know how to (b) I know how to swim. expresses ability. (c) Can you cook? (c) and (d) have basically the same meaning. (d) Do you know hoiv to cook? M EXERCISE 6— ORAL: Pair up with a classmate. student a: Your book is open. Ask a question. Use know how to in your question. student b: Your book is closed. Answer the question. Example: student a: STUDENT B: swim Do you know how to swim? Yes, I do. OR: No, I don't. 1. cook 2. dance 3. play the piano 4. get to the post office from here 5. fix a flat tire 6. drive a stick-shift car 7. wiggle your ears 8. sew Sivilch roles. 9. play the guitar 10. get to the airport from here 11. get to (name of a store) from here 12. use a hammer 1 3. use a screwdriver 14. count to five in fa language) 15. add, subtract, multiply, and divide 16. find the square root of nine 284 m CHAPTER 7

■ EXERCISE 7— ORAL/WRITTEN: Walk around and talk to your classmates. Ask them questions. Find people who have the abilities listed below. Ask them questions about their abilities. Write a report of the information you get from your classmates. 1. play a musical instrument 2. play a sport 3. speak three or four languages 4. cook 5. sing 6. sew 7. fix a car 8. draw 9. swim 10. eat with chopsticks 7-4 USING COULD: PAST OF CAN (a) I am in Hawaii. I can go to the beach every day. (b) I was in Hawaii last month. I could go to the beach every day when I was there. could = the past form of can. (c) I can't go to the movie today. I have to study. 1X T i couldn* t go) . . , . , ¥1 , (d) I { > to the movie last mg h t. I had to study. {could not go) NEGATIVE; could + not - couldn* t (e) Could you speak English before you came here? question: could + subject + main verb ■ EXERCISE 8: Complete the sentences by using couldn't. Use the expressions in the list or your own words. call you go to the movie come to class light the candles ✓ do my homework listen to music get into my car wash his clothes go swimming watch TV 1. I couldn't do my homework last night because I was too tired, 2. I _ yesterday because I lost your telephone number. 3. I _ last night because my TV set is broken. 4. Tom _ because he didn't have any matches. EXPRESSING ABILITY ■

y The teacher _ yesterday because he was sick. 6. I _ last night because my radio doesn't work. 7. Ken _ _ because he didn't have any laundry soap. 8. We _ yesterday because the water was too cold. 9. I _ yesterday because I locked all the doors and left the keys inside. 10. I _ last night because I had to study. ■ EXERCISE 9— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Answer the questions. Use “No, I couldn’t . . . because . . . Example: Did you finish your homework last night? Response: No, I couldn't finish my homework because (I had a headache, etc.). 1. go shopping yesterday 2. study last night 3. go swimming yesterday 4. watch TV last night 5. go to (. . .)'s party last night 6. come to class yesterday 7. go downtown yesterday afternoon 8. wash your clothes yesterday ■ EXERCISE 10— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): What are some negative results in the given situations? Use can't or couldn't . Example; There's no chalk in the classroom. Response: We can't write on the board. Example: There w'as no chalk in die classroom yesterday. Response: The teacher couldn't write on the board. 1. (...) has a broken leg. 2. (...) had the flu last week. 3. (...) has only (a small amount of money) in his pocket/in her purse today. 4. (...) doesn't know how' to use a computer. 5. Your parents had rules for you when you were a child. 6. All of you are adults. You are not children. 7. You didn't know any English last year. 8. Millions of people in the world live in poverty. 286 ■ CHAPTER 7

■ EXERCISE 11: Correct the errors in the following sentences. 1 . Could you to drive a car when you were thirteen years old? 2. If your brother goes to the graduation party, he can meets my sister. 3. Mr. Lo was born in Hong Kong, but now he lives in Canada. He cannot understand spoken English before he moved to Canada, but now he speak and understand English very well. 4. I couldn't opened the door because I didn't have a key. 5. When Ernesto arrived at the airport last Tuesday, he can't find the right gate. 6. Please turn up the radio. I can't to hear it. 7-5 USING VERY AND TOO + ADJECTIVE (a) The box is very heavy, but r lorn can lift it, (b) The box is too heavy. Rob can't lift it. (e) The coffee is very hoi , but I can drink it. (d) The coffee is too hoi. I can't drink it. Very and too come in front of adjectives; heavy and hot are adjectives. Very and too do no t have the same meaning. In (a): very heavy = It is difficult but possible for l'om to lift the box. In (b): too heavy = It is impossible for Bob to lift it. (e) The coffee is too hot. negative result: I can't drink it. (f) The weather is too cold. negative result: We can't go to the beach. In the speaker's mind, the use of too implies a negative result. TOM BOB EXPRESSING ABILITY ■ 287

■ EXERCISE 12: Complete the sentences. Use the expressions in the list or your own words. buy it lift it do his homework reach the cookie jar eat it sleep go swimming lake a break 1. The soup is too hot. I can't _ 2. The diamond ring is too expensive. I can't 3. The weather is too cold. We can't _ 4. Peggy is too short. She can't _ 5. Ali is too tired. He can't _ 6. I am too busy. I can't _ 7. It's too noisy in the dorm at night. I can't _ 8. A piano is too heavy. I can't _ ■ EXERCISE 13: Complete the sentences. Use too. Use adjectives in the list or your own words. cold small expensive tall heavy tired noisy young 1 . You can't lift a car. A car is _ 2. Jimmy is ten. He can't drive a car. He's _ 3. I can't study in the dorm at night. It's _ 4. I don't want to go to the zoo. The weather is 288 ■ CHAPTER 7

5. Ann doesn't want to play tennis this afternoon. She's _ 6. I can't buy a new car. A new car is _ 7. John has gained weight. He can't wear his old shirt. It's _ 8. The basketball player can't stand up straight in the subway. He's I EXERCISE 14: Complete the sentences. Use too or very. 1 . The tea is V€ry hot, but I can drink it. 2. The tea is fQQ _ hot. I can't drink it. 3. I can't put my dicdonary in my pocket. My dictionary is _ big. 4. An elephant is _ big. A mouse is _ small. 5. I can't buy a boat because it's _ expensive. 6. A sports car is _ expensive, but Anita can buy one if she wants to. 7. We went to the Rocky Mountains for our vacation. The mountains are _ beautiful. 8. I can't eat this food because it's _ salty'. 9. Amanda doesn't like her room in the dorm. She thinks it's _ small. 10. I lost your dictionary. I'm _ sorry. I'll buy you a new one. 11. A: Do you like your math course? B: Yes. It's _ difficult, but I enjoy it, EXPRESSING ABILITY ■ 269

12. A: Do you like your math course? B: No. It's _ difficult. I don't like it because I can't understand the math. 13. A: It's seven-thirty. Do you want to go to the movie? B: We can't. It's _ late. The movie started at seven. 14. A: Did you enjoy your dinner last night? B: Yes. The food was _ good! 15. A: Are you going to buy that dress? B: No. It doesn't fit. It's _ big. 16. A: Do you think Carol is smart? B: Yes, I do. I think she's _ intelligent. 17. A: My daughter wants to get married. B: What? But she can't! She's _ _ young. 18. A: Can you read that sign across the street? B: No, I can't. It's _ far away.

7-6 USING TOO MANY AND TOO MUCH + NOUN My stomach doesn't feel good. Too is frequently used with many and much. (a) I ate too many sandwiches . Too many is used in front of count nouns, as in (a) , (b) I ate too much food. Too much is used in front of noncount nouns, as in (b).* *See Chart 4-6 for more information about count nouns and noncount nouns. ■ EXERCISE 15: Complete the sentences. Use too many or too much . Use too many with plural count nouns. Use too much with noncount nouns. 1 . I can't go to the movie tonight. I have _ too much _ homework to do. 2. Mr. and Mrs. Smith have six cars. They have too many _ cars. 3. Alex is nervous and jumpy. He drinks _ coffee. 4. There are _ students in my chemistry class. I can't remember all of their names.

290 rn
CHAPTER 7

5. Fred is a commuter. He drives to and from work every day. Yesterday afternoon he tried to get home early, but he couldn't because there was _ traffic. There were _ cars on the highway during rush hour. 6. You use _ salt on your food. A lot of salt isn't good for you. 7. It's not possible for a person to have _ friends. 8. The restaurant was crowded, so we left. There were _ people at the restaurant. 9. This food is too hot! I can't eat it. There's _ pepper in it. 10. Mike is gaining weight because he eats _ food. XI. I can't buy this watch. It costs _ money, 12. Ann doesn't study because she's always busy. She has _ boyfriends. 13. I have to study for eight hours every night. My teachers assign _ homework. 14. I invited three friends to my house for lunch. I made twelve sandwiches for them, but they ate only six. I made _ sandwiches. I made _ food for my guests. EXPRESSING ABILITY ■ 291



■ EXERCISE 16 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Think of possible answers to the questions. Example: You had too much homework last night. What was the result? Response: I couldn't finish it, / I didn't get to bed until after midnight. / Etc.

1. (...) wants to buy (something), but it costs too much money. What's the result?
2. (...) tried to read an article in the newspaper about (a current topic), but there was too much vocabulary that he didn't know. What was the result?
3. (...) and (...) wanted to eat at (name of a local restaurant) last night, but there were too many people there. What was the result?
4. (...) likes to study in peace and quiet. His/Her roommate likes to listen to loud music and makes too much noise. What's the result?
5. (...) wants to (do something) today, but the weather is too (hot / cold / humid / cloudy / wet / etc.). What's the result?
6. (...) invited (. . .) to (do something) last night, but (...) was too busy. He/She had too much homework. What was the result?
7. Sometimes (...) drinks too much coffee. What's the result?
8. (...) wants to climb (name of a mountain), but the mountain is too steep and too high. The climb is too difficult for (...) because he/she is an inexperienced climber. What is the result?
9. (...) took the bus yesterday. He/She was very tired and needed to sit down, but there were too many people on the bus. What was the result?
10. (...) made a cup of coffee for (. . .) , but it was too strong. It tasted bitter. What was the result?
11. At the present rates of population growth, someday there will be too many people on earth. What will be the result?
12. (. . .)'s apartment is too small for him/her and his/her wife/husband (and their children) . What's the result?
13. (...) took a trip to (name of a place) last month. He/She took six big suitcases. In other words, he/she had too many suitcases. What was the result?

292 ■ CHAPTER 7

7-7 USING TOO + ADJECTIVE + INFINITIVE (a) Susie can't go to school because she is too young. (b) Susie is too young to go to school. (a) and (b) have the same meaning. TOO + ADJECTIVE + INFINITIVE (c) Susie is too young to go to school. (d) Peggy is too short to reach the cookie jar. (e) Bob is too tired to do his homework. ■ EXERCISE 17: Make sentences with the same meaning by using an infinitive after too + ADJECTIVE. 1 . Mr. Cook is old. He can't drive a car anymore. -> Mr. Cook is I _ top _ | _ old _ | | _ to drive _ | a car, too + adjective + infinitive 2. Susie doesn't want to go to the party because she is tired. -> Susie is 1 _ I I _ I I _ I to the party'. wo + adjective + infinitive 3. Robert is short. He can't touch the ceiling. -> Robert is I _ 1 1 _ I I _ I the ceiling. wo + adjective + infinitive 4. I couldn't finish my work because I was sleepy. -> I was I _ 1 I _ I I _ I my work. wo + adjective + infinitive 5. Jackie is young. She can't get married. -> Jackie is too 6. Sam didn't want to go to the zoo because he was busy. -> Sam 7. I'm full. I can't eat another sandwich. I 8. I don't want to clean up my apartment today. I'm lazy. -> I . . .

EXPRESSING ABILITY ■ 293

7-8 USING TOO + ADJECTIVE + FOR (SOMEONE) + INFINITIVE (a) Hob can't lift the box because it is too heavy, (b) The box is too heavy for Bob to lift . too + ADJECTIVE + for (SOMEONE) + INFINITIVE (c) The box is too heavy for Bob to lift , (d) The dorm is too noisy for me to study . (a) and (b) have the same meaning. ■ EXERCISE 18: Make sentences with the same meaning by using too + adjective + /or (someone) + infinitive. 1 . Robert can't touch the ceiling because it's too high. > The ceiling is too high for Robert to touch . too + adjective + for (someone) + infinitive 2. I can't do the homework because it's too difficult. > The homework is too difficult for me to do . too + adjective + for (someone) + infinitive 3. Rosa can't drink this coffee because it's too hot. > This coffee is too hot for Rosa to drink . too + adjective + for (someone) + infinitive 4. We can't go to the movie because it's too late. > It's too late for us to go . too + adjective + for (someone) + infinitive 5. Ann can't carry that suitcase because it's too heavy. > That suitcase is too heavy for Ann to carry . too + adjective + for (someone) + infinitive 6. I can't buy this book because it's too expensive. > This book is too expensive for me to buy . too + adjective + for (someone) + infinitive 7. We can't go swimming because the weather is too cold, > 8. Mrs. Rivers can't swallow the pill. It's too big, > 294 ■ CHAPTER 7

■ EXERCISE 19 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Answer no and explain why in a complete sentence that uses too and an infinitive. Example: The coffee is too hot. Can you drink it? Can (...) drink it? Response: No, The coffee is too hot (for me) to drink. I think it's also too hot for (...) to drink. 1. (This desk is) A piano is heavy. Can you lift it? Can (...)? 2. (...)s shoe is small. Can you wear it? Can (...) wear it? 3. (...)'s shoe is big. Can you wear it? Can (...) wear it? 4. Who wants to buy his or her own private airplane? How much does one cost? Can you buy one? Can (...) buy one? 5. Who is a parent? Has a son or daughter? How old? Can he/she walk/read/go to college/get a job/get married? 6. Antarctica is very, very cold. Do people live there? 7. There are many, many stars in the universe. Can we see all of them? 8. An elephant is a large animal. Can an elephant walk through that door? 9. The Sahara Desert is very dry. Do farmers grow (crops, rice, vegetables) there? 10. An apple is about the same size as my fist. Can you swallow a whole apple all at once? Can anyone swallow a whole apple all at once? 7-9 USING ADJECTIVE + ENOUGH (a) Peggy can't go to school. She is too young. (a) and (b) give the same meaning. Notice: (b) Peggy can't go to school. She is not old enough. enough follows an adjective. (c) I can't hear the radio. It's not loud enough. ADJECTIVE + ENOUGH (d) Bobby can read. He's old enough. old enough (e) We can go swimming. The weather is very warm enough. loud enough. loud enough. Enough is pronounced "enuf." EXERCISE 20: Complete the sentences. Use too or enough. Use the words in parentheses. 1. (young, old) Susie can't go to school. She's too young. She's not old enough 2. (loud, soft) I can't hear the music. It's too loud. It's not soft enough 3. (big, small) Jack is gaining weight. He can't wear his old coat. It's too small. It's not big enough EXPRESSING ABILITY ■ 295

4. (short, tall) 5. (cold, hot) 6. (weak, strong) 7 , (sweet, sour) 8. (old, fresh) Cindy can't reach the book on the top shelf. She's _ . She's not _ I don't want to finish my coffee because it's _ It's not _ . Ron can't lift the heavy box. He's not _ He's _ . I don't want to finish eating this orange. It's _ It's not _ . Don't buy that fruit. It's _ . It's not 9. (young, old) 10. (strong, weak) 11 . (big, small) 12. (comfortable, uncomfortable) 13. (wide, narrow, large, small) Jimmy is an infant. He can't talk yet. He's not _ . He's _ . This coffee looks like dirty' water. It's _ . It's not _ . I can put my dictionary in my shirt pocket. My pocket is _ . It's not . I don't want to sit in that chair. It's It's not _ Anne and Sue can't carry the love seat through the door. The door is _ . The door isn't _ . The love seat is _ . The love seat isn't _ . 296 ■ CHAPTER 7

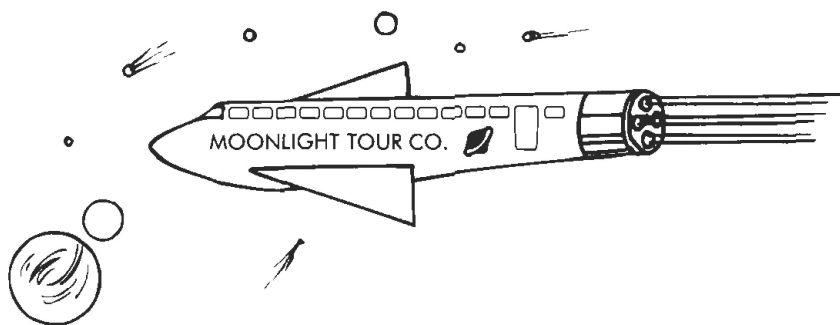
14. (warm, cold) We can go to the beach today. The weather is _ It's not _ . ■ EXERCISE 21— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Answer the question no and explain why by using enough. Example: Can you touch the ceiling? Response: No, I'm not tall enough to touch the ceiling. 1 . Can an elephant walk through that door? 2. Can ten-year-old children go to college? 3. Can you touch (name of a student who is not close) without standing up? 4. Can you put your grammar book in your shirt pocket? 5. Can a dog learn to read? 6. Can you eat (four hamburgers) right now? 7. Can you read a book by moonlight? 8. Can you understand every word an English-speaking TV newscaster says? 9. Can a turtle win a race with a rabbit? 10. (Write something in very small letters on the board.) Can you read these letters? 1 1 . Can this room hold (two hundred) people? 12. Can you cut a piece of paper with your fingernail? 7-10 USING ENOUGH + NOUN AND MORE + NOUN (a) I can't buy this book. I need more money . more = additional. (b) I can't buy this book. I don't have enough money . enough - sufficient. (c) I can't finish my work, I need some more time. Notice: more comes in front of a noun. (d) I can't finish my work. I don't have enough time . MORE + NOON more money more time Notice: enough comes in front of a noun.* ENOVGH + XOUX enough money enough time * Enough may also follow a noun: / don't have money enough , In even' day English, enough usually comes in front of a noun. ■ EXERCISE 22: Complete the sentences. Use your own words. 1 . I can't _ because I don't have enough money. 2. I can't _ because I don't have enough time. EXPRESSING ABILITY 297

3. I couldn't _ because I didn't have enough money. 4. I couldn't _ because I didn't have enough time. 5. I don't want to _ because I don't have enough time. 6. I would like to _ > but I can't because I don't have enough money. ■ EXERCISE 23: Complete the sentences. Use more or enough . Use the words in the list; use the plural form if necessary. √ bread light lime desk minute vocabulary
 * egg sugar gas tea 1. I'm hungry. I want to make a sandwich, but I can't. There isn't enough bread . 2. According to the cake recipe I need three eggs, but I have only one. I need two more eggs . 3. Ken isn't finished with his test. He needs ten _ . 4. I can't go skiing Saturday. I'm too busy. I don't have _ 5. My tea isn't sweet enough. I need some _ . 6. There are fifteen students in the class, but there are only ten desks. We need five 7. I can't understand the front page of the newspaper because I don't know 8. It's too dark in here, I can't read my book. There isn't 9. A: Do we have _ ? B: No. We have to stop at a gas station. 10. A: Would you like _ ? B: Yes, thank you. I'd like one more cup. 298 ■ CHAPTER 7

7-1 T USING ENOUGH + INFINITIVE (a) Peggy can go to school because she is old enough. Anji-xrnvi- + fnolgh + intin mvi-; (b) Peggy is old enough logo to school. (a) and (b) have the same meaning. (c) I can't buy this book because I don't have enough money. liMOUGJI + NOUN + INI ■ [Nr HUH (d) I don't have enough money to buy this book. (e) and (d) have the same meaning. ■ EXERCISE 24: Make sentences with the same meaning by using an inkinitivh. 1. Ken can reach the top shelf because he's tall enough. y Ken is tall enough to reach the top shelf. 2. I can't finish my work because I don't have enough time. 3. Mustafa can buy a new car because he has enough money. 4. Johnny can't get married because he isn't old enough. 5. Mr. and Mrs. Forest can't feed their family because they don't earn enough money. 6. I can cat a horse. I'm hungry enough.* 7. Sally bought enough food. She can feed an army. 8. Did you finish your homework last night? Did you have enough time? 9. Can you buy a ticket to the show? Do you have enough money? 10. I can't understand this article in the newspaper because I don't know enough vocabulary. * Fm hungry enough to cat a horse is an English idiom. The speaker is saying "I'm very hungry." The speaker does not really want to eat a horse. Other examples of idioms: I pul my fool in my mouth. = I said something stupid. I said something to the wrong person at die wrong time. Watch your step. = Be careful. It's raining cats and dogs. = It's raining hard. livery language has idioms. They are common expressions lhal have special meanings. EXPRESSING ABILITY ■

■ EXERCISE 25: Complete the sentences. Use your own words. 1. I'm old enough to _ 2. I'm strong enough to _ 3. I'm not strong enough to _ 4. I'm not hungry enough to _ 5. I have enough money to _ 6. I don't have enough money to 7. I have enough time to _ 8. I don't have enough time to _ 9. I know enough English to _ 10. I don't know enough English to ■ EXERCISE 26— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Answer no and explain why. Use too or enough. Example: Is the weather perfect today? Response: No, it's too cold. / No, it's not warm enough. / Etc. 1. I have a daughter. She's two years old. Can she go to school? 2. I'm making a noise (a very soft noise). Can you hear it? 3. Bobby is fifteen years old. He's in love. He wants to get married. Is that a good idea? 4. Can you put my brief case/purse/etc. in your pants pocket/handbag/etc.? 5. Can you understand everything on the front page of a newspaper? 6. Can an elephant sit in that chair? 7. Do you like the weather (in this city) in the winter/summer? 8. Did you Finish your homework last night? 9. Do you want to go on a picnic Saturday? 10. Would you like to eat your lunch on the floor of this room? 11. Can you buy a hotel? 12. Here's an arithmetic problem. You have three seconds to solve it (without a calculator). Multiply 673 by 897. Could you solve it in three seconds? 300 ■ CHAPTER 7

7-12 USING MAKE TO PRESENT (a) I am able to touch my toes. (b) I can touch my toes. (a) and (b) have basically the same meaning. FUTURE (c) I will be able to go shopping tomorrow, (d) I can go shopping tomorrow. (c) and (d) have basically the same meaning. PAST (e) I wasn't able to finish my homework last night. (f) I couldn't finish my homework last night. (e) and (f) have basically the same meaning. ■ EXERCISE 27— ORAL Make sentences with the same meaning by using be able to. 1. I can be here tomorrow at ten o'clock. -* I'll (I will) be able to be here tomorrow at ten o'clock. 2. Two students couldn't finish the test. > Two students • weren't able to finish the test. 3. Mark is bilingual. He can speak two languages. 4. Sue can get her own apartment next year. 5. Animals can't speak. 6. Can you touch your toes without bending your knees? 7. Jack couldn't describe the thief. 8. Could you do the homework? 9. I couldn't sleep last night because my apartment was too hot. 10. My roommate can speak four languages. He's multilingual. 11. I'm sorry that I couldn't call you last night. 12. I'm sorry, but I can't come to your party next week. 13. Can we take vacations on the moon in the 22nd century? EXPRESSING ABILITY ■ 301



■ EXERCISE 28: Complete the sentences. 1. I wasn't able to _ last night because 2. We'll be able to _ in the 22nd century. 3. I'm sorry, but I won't be able to _ , 4. Birds are able to _ 5. My friend is multilingual. She's able to _ 6. I'm bilingual. I'm able to _ 7. The students weren't able to _ in class yesterday because _ 8. Will you be able to _ tomorrow? 9. _ wasn't able to _ because 10. _ isn't able to because _ 11. _ won't be able to because _ 7-13 POLITE

QUESTIONS: MAY I, COULD I, AND CAN I (a) May I borrow your pen? (b) Could / borrow your pen? (c) Can I borrow your pen? (a), (b), and (c) have the same meaning; I want to borrow your pen. I am asking politely to borrow your pen. (d) May I please borrow your pen? (e) Could I please borrow your pen? (f) Can I please borrow your pen? Please is often used in polite questions. TYPICAL RESPONSES (g) Yes, of course, (h) Of course. (i)

Certainly. (j) Sure, (informal)* (k) No problem . (in formal) * TYPICAL CONVERSATION A : /V/ciy I please borrow your pen ? B: Yes > of course . Here it is. A ; 7 'ha nk you . / 7 thanks. *

Informal English is typically used between friends and family members. 302 ■ CHAPTER 7

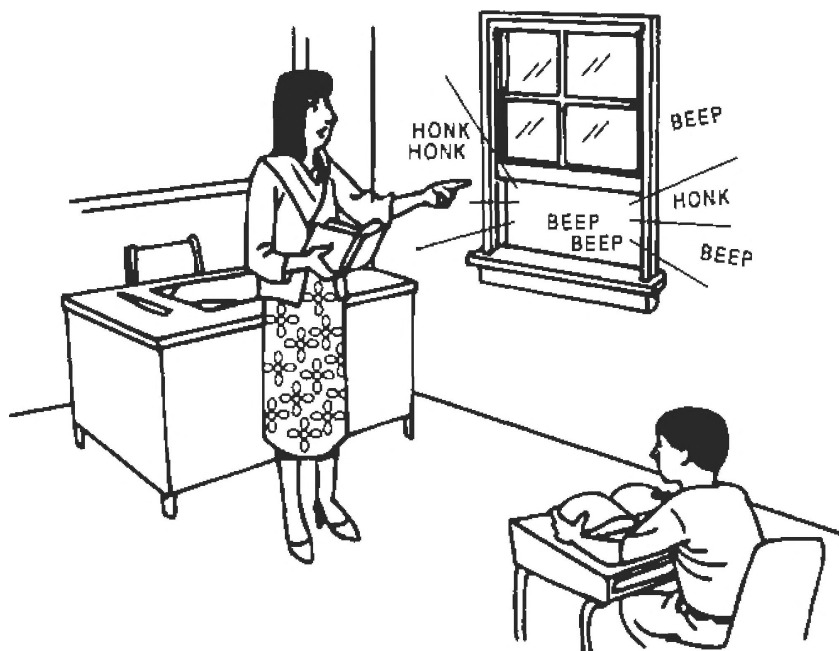
■ EXERCISE 29: Look at the pictures. Complete the dialogues by using May I, Can I, or Could I and typical responses. r
J EXPRESSING ABILITY ■ 303



■ EXERCISE 30 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Ask and answer polite questions using May I, Can I, or Could I . Example; STUDENT A: STUDENT B: STUDENT A! (...) has a pencil. You want to borrow it. (...), may I (please) borrow your pencil? Certainly. Here it is. Thank you. 1 . (. . .) has a dictionary. You want to borrow it. 2. (...) has a pen. You want to use it for a minute. 3. (...) has an eraser. You want to use it for a minute. 4. (...) has a pencil sharpener. You want to borrow it. 5. (...) has a book. You want to see it. 6. (...) has a dictionary. You want to see it. 7. You are at (. . .)'s home. You want to use the phone. 8. You are at (. . .)'s home. You want a glass of water. 9. You are at a restaurant. (...) is a waiter/waitress. You want to have a cup of coffee. 10. (...) is a waiter/waitress. You want to have the check. 7- 14 POLITE QUESTIONS: COULD YOU AND WOULD YOU (a) Could you (please) open the door? (b) Would you (please) open the door? (a) and (b) have the same meaning: I want you to open the door. I am politely asking you to open the door. TYPICAL RESPONSES (c) Yes , of course. (d) Certainly. (e) I'd be glad to (f) I'd be happy to. (g) Sure . (informal) (h) No problem, (informal) TYPICAL CONVERSATION A: Could you please open the door? B: I'd be glad to. A: Thank you . / Thanks. 304 CHAPTER 7

■ EXERCISE 31: Use the given expressions to complete the dialogues. Use Could you or Would you and give typical responses.

1. A: Excuse me, sir. B: _ A: _ 2. A B Excuse me? I didn't understand what you said. A B EXPRESSING ABILITY ■ 305



EXERCISE 32— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Ask and answer polite questions using Could you or Would you, Example: You want (...) to open the window. STUDENT a; (...), could you (please) open the window? student u: Certainly. student a: Thank you. 1. You want (. to 2. You want (• to 3. You want (■ . •) to 4. You want (■ to 5. You want (■ to 6. You want (• to 7. You want (• to 8. You want (• to 9. You want (• to 10. You want (• . •) to > E 33— ORAL: With typically ask in each situation. Share your dialogues with the rest of the class. student a: Ask a polite question. STUDENT B: Answer the question. Example: Situation*, professor's office. Student A is a student. Student B is a professor. student a: (Knocky knock). May I come in? student b: Certainly. Come in. How are you today? student a: Fine, thanks. or: student a: Hello, Professor Alvarez. Could I talk to you for a few minutes? I have some questions about the last assignment. student b: Of course. Have a seat. student a: Thank you. 1. Situation: a restaurant. Student A Is a customer. Student B is a waitress/waiter. 2. Situation: a classroom. Student A is a teacher. Student B is a student. 3. Situation: a kitchen. Student A is a visitor. Student B is at home. 4. Situation: a clothing store. Student A is the customer. Student B is a salesperson. 5. Situation: an apartment. Student A and B are roommates. 6. Situation: a car. Student A is a passenger. Student B is the driver. 7. Situation: an office. Student A is a boss. Student B is an employee. 8. Situation: a telephone conversation. Student B answers the phone. Student A wants to talk to (someone}. 306 m CHAPTER 7

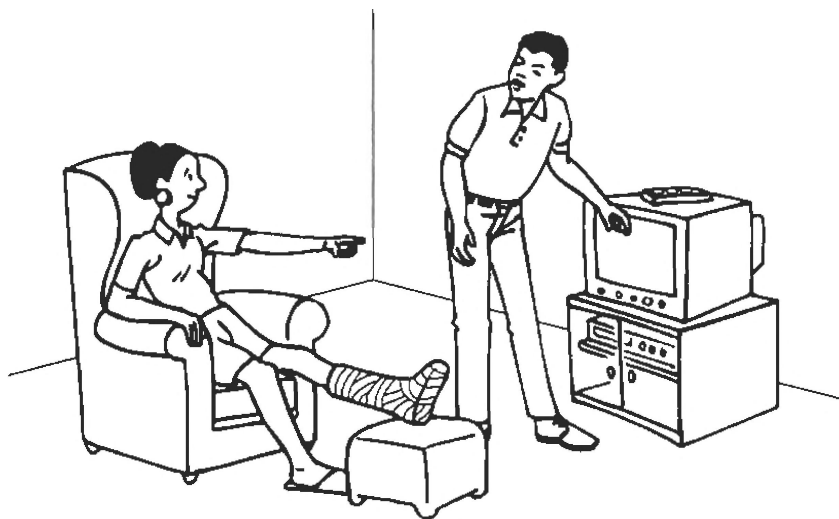
■ EXERCISE 34: Underline the imperative, vhrbs in the following dialogues. 1 . cin'DY : We're leaving. beti-i: Waitfor me! cindy: Hurry up! We'll be late. BETH: Okay. Okay. I'm ready. Let's go. 2. MICHELLE: PROFESSOR: MICHELLE: professor: MICHELLE: professor: (Knock, knock.) May I come in? Certainly. Come in. Please have a seat. Thanks. How can I help you? I need to ask you a question about yesterday's lecture. Okay. What's the question? 3, Mary: IVAN: MARY: IVAN: MARY: We need to leave soon. I'm ready. Don't forget your house key. I have it. Okay. 4. tom: What's the matter? jim: I have the hiccups. tom: Hold your breath. bob: Drink some water. joe: Breathe into a paper bag. KEN: Eat a piece of bread. jLVl: It's okay. The hiccups are gone. EXPRESSING ABILITY

■ 307

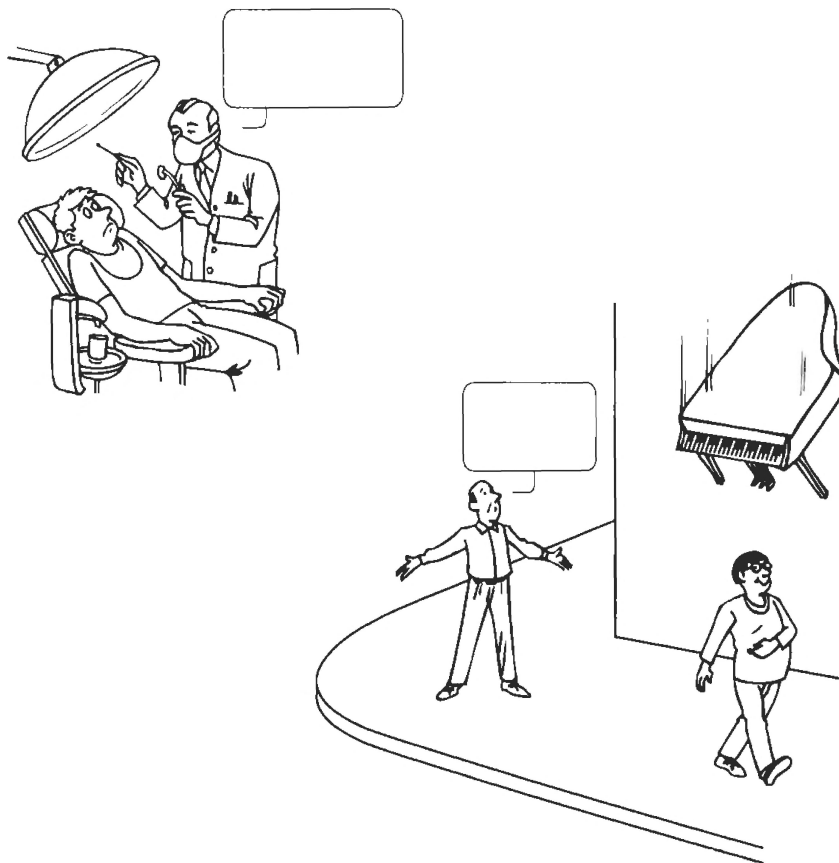
7-15 IMPERATIVE SENTENCES

| | |
|---|---|
| (a) " Close the door, Jimmy. It's cold outside."
"Okay, Mom." | In (a): Close the door is an <i>imperative sentence</i> . The sentence means, "Jimmy, I want you to close the door. I am telling you to close the door." |
| (b) Sit down.
(c) Be careful! | An imperative sentence uses the simple form of a verb (<i>close, sit, be, etc.</i>). |
| (d) Don't open the window.
(e) Don't be late. | NEGATIVE: don't + the simple form of a verb |
| (f) ORDERS: Stop , thief!
(g) DIRECTIONS: Open your books to page 24.
(h) ADVICE: Don't worry .
(i) REQUESTS: Please close the door. | Imperative sentence give orders, directions, and advice. With the addition of please , as in (i), imperative sentences are used to make polite requests. |

5. student: teacher: student: teacher: Do we have any homework for tomorrow? Yes. Read pages 24 through 36, and answer the questions on page 37, in writing. Is that all? Yes. 6. yuko: How do I get to the post office from here? ERIC: Walk two blocks to 1 6th Avenue. Then turn right on Forest Street. Go two more blocks to Market Street and turn left. The post office is halfway down the street on the right-hand side. yuko: Thanks. 7. ANDY: Bye, Mom. I'm going over to Billy's house. mom: Wait a minute. Did you clean up your room? andy: I'll do it later. mom: No. Do it now, before you leave. andy: Do I have to? mom: Yes. ANDY: What do I have to do? mom: Hang up your clothes. Make your bed. Put your books back on the shelf. Empty the wastepaper basket. Okay? andy: Okay. 8. HEIDI: Please close the window, Mike. It's a little chilly in here. mike: Okay. Is there anything else I can do for you before I leave? HEIDI: Could you turn off the light in the kitchen? mike: No problem. Anything else? heidi: Ummm, please hand me the remote control for the TV. It's over there, mike: Sure. Here. heidi: Thanks. mike: I'll stop by again tomorrow. Take care of yourself. Take good care of that broken leg. heidi: Don't worry. I will. Thanks again. 308 m CHAPTER 7



■ EXERCISE 35: Write an imperative sentence in the empty space above the speaker. EXPRESSING ABILITY ■





■ EXERCISE 36— ORAL: What are some typical imperative sentences you might hear in the given situations? Example: (...) is your friend. He/She has a headache. What are some typical imperative sentences for this situation? Responses; take an aspirin. Lie down and close your eyes for a little while. Put a cold cloth across your forehead. Take a hot bath and relax. Etc. 1. You are the teacher of this class. You are assigning homework for tomorrow. What are some typical imperative sentences for this situation? 2. Your friend (...) has the hiccups. What are some typical imperative sentences for this situation? 3. (...) is your eight-year-old son/daughter. He/She is walking out the door to go to school. What are some typical imperative sentences for this situation? 4. (...) wants to improve his/her health. Tell him/her what to do and what not to do. 5. (...) is going to cook rice for the first time tonight, tell him/her how to cook rice. 6. (...) is going to visit your country for the first time next month. Tell him/her what to do and what to see as a tourist in your country. 7-16 USING TWO, TOO, AND TO Two, too, and to have the same pronunciation. 7 WO (a) I have two children. In (a): two - a number. TOO (b) Timmy is too young. He can't read. In (b): too young - not old enough. (c) Ann saw the movie. I saw the movie too. In (c): too - also. TO (d) I talked to Jim. In (d): to = a preposition. (e) I want to watch television. In (e): to - part of an infinitive. ■ EXERCISE 37: Complete the sentences. Use two ,

6. I'm going _ take the bus _ school tomorrow, 7. Shh. I want _ listen _ the news broadcast, 8, I can't study. The music is _ loud, 9, The weather is _ cold for us _ go _ the beach. 10, I have _ apples. Ken wants _ have _ apples _

7-17 MORE ABOUT PREPOSITIONS: MAUD IN fOK LOCATIONS (a) Olga is at home. Ivan is at ivork . Yoko is at school. (b) Sue is in bed. Tom is in class , Paul is in Ja illprison. Mr. Lee is in (the) hospitah In (a): at is used with home? zwork , and school In (b): in is used with bed, class, jail/prison, and hospital noth: American English = in the hospital British English = in hospital (c) Ahmed is in the kitchen . In (c): in is used with rooms; in the kitchen , in the classroom, in the hall in my bedroom;, etc. (d) David is in Mexico City. In (d): in is used with cities, states/provinces, countries, and continents: in ALxhai City, in Illonda , in Italy , in Asia, etc . (e) A: Where's Ivan? In (e): at is usually used with locations in a city: at the post B: He isn't here. He's at the bank. office , at the bank , at the library , at the bookstore, at the park, at the theater , at the restaurant, at the football stadium, etc. **COMPARE** In (f): A speaker uses in with a building only when it is (f) In Picture 2 , Ivan is in the bank . important to say that someone is inside, not outside, the He is not outside the bank. building. Usually a speaker uses at with a building. in the bank - inside the bank building. Ivan is at the bank. Ivan is in (inside) the bank. **EXPRESSING ABILITY** ■ 311

B EXERCISE 38: Complete the sentences with *at* or *in*. In some sentences, both prepositions are correct.

1. A: Is Jennifer here? B: No. she's at the bookstore.*
2. A: Where's Jack? B: He's in his room.
3. When I was at work yesterday, I had an interesting telephone call.
4. Poor Anita. She's in the hospital again for more surgery.
5. Mr. Gow wasn't in class yesterday. He was at home. He wasn't feeling well.
6. Last year at this time, Eric was in Korea. This year he's in Spain.
7. A: Where's Donna? B: She's in New York. She's attending a conference.
8. There's a fire extinguisher in the hall.
9. The children are at home this morning. They aren't in school.
10. A: Where's Olga? I was supposed to meet her here at five. B: She's in the library. She's studying for a test. A: Oh. Maybe she forgot that she was supposed to meet me here.
11. A: Where's Robert? B: He's in the computer room.
12. A: Where's Fatima? B: She's in the supermarket.
13. We ate at a good restaurant last night. The food was delicious.
14. A thief broke the window of a jewelry store and stole some valuable jewelry. The police caught him. Now he's in jail. He's going to be in prison for long time.
15. Singapore is in Asia.
16. We had a good time at the zoo yesterday. *also correct: She's in the bookstore, but only if the speaker wants to say that she is inside, not outside, the bookstore. Usually a speaker uses *at* with a building to identify someone's location.

17. There are thirty-seven desks _ our classroom. 18. A: Where can I get some fresh tomatoes? B: _ the market on Waterfront Street. 19. A: Here's your hotel key, Ms. Fox. You're _ Room 609. B: Thank you. Where are the elevators? 20. A: Is Mike up? B: No, he's _ bed. A: Well, it's time to get up. I'm going to wake him up. Hey, Mike! You can't sleep all day! Get up! C: Go away! ■ EXERCISE 39 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Complete the sentence f7 was . . . yesterday" by using the given word and the correct preposition, at or in. Example: work Response: I was at work yesterday. 1. class 7. work 2. the library 8. Room 206 3. (name of a city) 9. a hotel 4. home 10. (name of a continent) 5. this room 11. (...) 's living room 6. the bookstore 12. (name of a building) ■ EXERCISE 40— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Ask and answer questions about location. student a: Begin the question with "Where were you student b; Use at or in in the answer. Example: yesterday afternoon STUDENT a: Where were you yesterday afternoon? STUDENT b: I was in class. 1. at nine o'clock last night 2. at two o'clock yesterday afternoon 3. after class yesterday 4. this morning at six o'clock 5. six weeks ago 6. five years ago 7. on your last vacation 8. when you were ten years old EXPRESSING ABILITY • 313

| EXERCISE 41 — REVIEW: What can or can't the following people/animals/things do? Why or why not? Discuss the topics in small groups and report to the rest of the class. Example: a tiger Responses: A tiger can kill a water buffalo because a tiger is very strong and powerful. A tiger can sleep in the shade of a tree all day if it wants to. It doesn't have a job, and it doesn't go to school. A tiger can't speak (a human language). It's an animal. A tiger can communicate with other tigers. Animals can talk to each other in their own languages. 1 . the students in this class 2. small children 3. a monkey 4. (name of a classmate) 5. international students who live in (name of ibis country) 6. teenagers 7. people who live in (name of this city) 8. people who are illiterate 9. money 10. computers 1 1 . (name of the teacher of this class) 12. (name of the leader of this country or your country) EXERCISE 42 — REVIEW: Choose the correct completion. _ play a musical instrument? A. Do you can B. Can you C. Do you be able to D. Can you to 2. Jack was. A. very 3. I was too sleepy sick to go to work yesterday morning. He stayed home. B. enough C. too D. too much last night. A. to studying B. for studying C. to study 4. (Knacky knock.) Hello? _ A. Could I to B. Willi come in? Thanks. C. Can I to y I don't know how A. do I get _ to die Palace Hotel from here. B. get C. getting D. for study D. May I D. to get 6. Gina _ understand the speaker at the lecture last night. A. couldn't B. might not C. isn't able to D. can't 7. In my life right now, I have A. very much _ problems. I can't solve all of them. B. too many C. too mu eh D. very 8. I can't reach the eraser on my friend's desk. My arms aren't . A. long enough B. too long C. enough long D. too much long 314 rn CHAPTER 7

9. My uncle can't _ English. A. to speak B. speaking C. speaks D. speak 10. I'm sorry. I can't hear what you're saying. _ A. May you B. Could you C. Don't speak a little louder? D. Can 11. An encyclopedia is too difficult _ . A. for to read a child C. for a child to read B. to read a child D. to for a child read 12. Rosa works for a computer company A. on B. at _ Taipei. C. in D. to ■ EXERCISE 43 — REVIEW: Correct the errors. 1 . My brother wasn't able calling me last night. 2. Don't to interrupt. It's not polite. 3. May I please to borrow your dictionary? Thank you. 4. We will can go to the museum tomorrow afternoon. 5. We can't count all of the stars in the universe. There are to many. 6. The diamond ring was to buy too expensive for John. 7. Can you to stand on your head? 8. My son isn't enough old too go to school. He's only too years old. 9. I saw a beautiful vase at a store yesterday, but I couldn't bought it. 10. We have too many homeworks. 1 1 . Closing the door please. Thank you. 12. Robert was to tired to go two his class at to o'clock. EXPRESSING ABILITY ■ 315

I EXERCISE 44 — REVIEW: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. Use any appropriate verb form. (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10) (U) (12) (13) (14) (15) (16) (17) Once upon a time there (be) _ a mouse named Young Mouse. He lived near a river with his family and friends. Every day he and the other mice did the same things. They (hunt) _ for food and (take) _ care of their mouse holes. In the evening they (listen) _ to stories around a fire. Young Mouse especially liked to listen to stories about the Far Away Land. He (dream) _ about the Far Away Ixuid. It sounded wonderful. One day he (decide) _ to go there. young mouse: Goodbye, Old Mouse. I'm leaving now. old mouse: Why (you, leave) _ (you, go) _ ? ? Where young mouse: I (go) . . to a new and different place. I (go) OLD mouse: Why (you, want) . young mouse: I (want) _ all of life. I (need) _ to the Far Away Land. _ (go) _ there? (experience) . (learn) . about everything. old mouse: You (can learn) _ many things if you (slay) _ here with us. Please (stay) _ here with us. young mouse: No, I (can stay, not) _ here by the river for the rest of my life. There (be) . too much to learn about in the world. I must go to the Far Away Land. old mouse: The trip to the Far Away Land is a long and dangerous journey. You (have) _ many problems before you (get) _ 316 ■ CHAPTER 7

(18) there. You (face) _ many dangers. young mouse: I understand that, but I need to find out about the Far Away Land. (19) Goodbye, Old Mouse. Goodbye, everyone! I (may see, never) _ (20) any of you again, but I (try) _ to return from the Far Away Land someday. Goodbye! So Young Mouse left to fulfill his dream of going to the Far Azvay Land, His first problem was the river. At the river, he met a frog. (21) magic FROG: Hello, Young Mouse. I'm Magic Frog, (you, have) _ a problem right now? (22) young MOUSE: Yes. How (I, can cross) _ this river? jumping mouse: Thank you, Magic Frog. magic frog: You are a brave mouse, Jumping Mouse, and you have a good heart. If you (29) (lose, not) _ hope, you (reach) _ the Far Away Land. With his powerful new legs. Jumping Mouse jumped across the river. He traveled fast for many days across a wide grassland. One day he met a buffalo. The buffalo was lying on the ground. jumping mouse: Hello, Buffalo, My name is Jumping Mouse. Why (you, lie*) (30) _ on the ground? (you, be) _ ill? *The -mg forrfl of lie is spelled lying. EXPRESSING ABILITY ■ 317

(23) I (*know, not*) _____ how to swim. If I

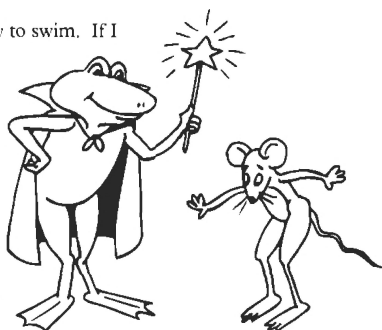
(24) (*can cross, not*) _____ this

(25) river, I (*be, not*) _____ able to reach the Far Away Land.

(26) MAGIC FROG: I (*help*) _____ you to cross the river. I (*give*)

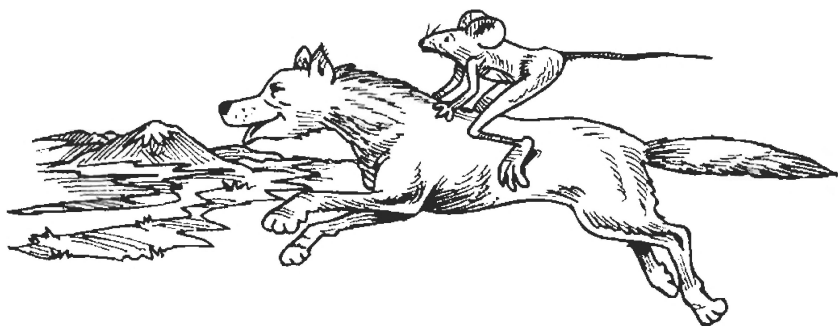
(27) _____ you the power of my legs so you (*can jump*)

(28) _____ across the river. I (*give, also*) _____ you a new name. Your new name will be Jumping Mouse.



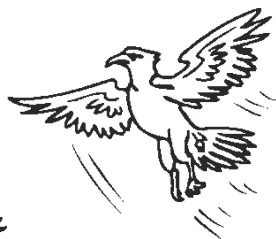
(31) (32) (33) (34) (35) (36) (37) (38) (39) (40) (41) (42)
(43) (44) BUFFALO: Yes. I (can see, not) _ _ _ . I (drink) _ some
poisoned water, and now I (be) _ blind. I (die) _ _ _ soon because I
(can find, not) _ food and water without my eyes. jumping mouse:
When I started my journey, Magic Frog (give) _ me her powerful
legs so I could jump across the river. What (I, can give) _ you to
help you? I know! I (give) _ you my sight so you can see to find
food and water. buffalo: Are you really going to do that? Jumping
Mouse, you are very kind! Ah! Yes, I (can see) _ again. Thank you!
But now you (can see, not.) _ _ . How (you, find) _ _ the Far Away
Land? I know, (jump) _ _ _ onto my back. I (carry) _ you across this
land to the foot of the mountain. jumping mouse: Thank you,
Buffalo. So Jumping Mouse found a way to reach the mountain.
When they reached the mountain, Jumping Mouse and Buffalo
parted. BUFFALO: I don't live in the mountains, so I (can go, not) _
any farther. jumping mouse: What (I, do) _ ? I (have) _ powerful
legs, but I can't see. 318 ■ CHAPTER 7

(45) (46) (47) (48) (49) (50) (51) (52) (53) (54) (55) (56)
 (57) (58) (59) (60) (61) BUFFALO: (keep) _ your hope alive. You
 (find) _ a way to reach the Far Away Land, Jumping Mouse was
 very afraid . He didn't know what to do . Suddenly he heard a wolf
 . JUMPING MOUSE; Hello? Wolf? I (can see, not) _ you, but I (can
 hear) _ you. WOLF: Yes, Jumping Mouse. I'm here, but I (can help ,
 not) _ you because I (die*) _ . jumping MOUSE: What's wrong? Why
 (you, die) _ _ ? WOLF: I (lose) _ my sense of smell many weeks ago,
 so now I (can find, not) _ _ _ _ food. I (starve) _ to death. JUMPING
 MOUSE : Oh, Wolf, I (can help) _ you, I (give) _ you my ability to
 smell. wolf: Oh, thank you, Jumping Mouse. Yes, I (can smell) _
 again. Now I'll be able to find food. That is a wonderful gift! How
 (I, can help) jumping mouse:: I (try) you? to get to the Far Away
 Land. I (need) (so) to the top of the mountain. wolf: (come) over
 here. I (put) you on my back and (take) you to the top of the
 mountain. *The -ing form of die is spoiled dying. EXPRESSING
 ABILITY ■ 319



So Wolf carried Jumping Mouse to the top of the mountain. But then Wolf left. Jumping (62) Mouse was all alone. He (can see, not) _ (63) and he (can smell, not) _ (64) He almost (lose) _ hope. Then suddenly, he (hear) , but he still had powerful legs. _ Magic Frog. (65) (66) (67) (68) (69) JUMPING MOUSE: Is that you, Magic Frog? Please (help) . all alone and afraid. me. I'm magic frog: (cry, not) . Jumping Mouse. You have a _ selfish. You help generous, open heart. You (be, not) _ others. Your unselfishness caused you suffering during your journey, but you (lose, never) _ hope. Now you are in the Far Away Land, (jump) . Jumping Mouse, (use) . your powerful legs to jump high in the air. Jump! Jump! Jumping Mouse jumped as high as he could, up, up, up. He reached his arms out to his sides and started to fly. He felt strong and powerful. jumping mouse: I can fly! I can fly! I (fly) (70) _ ! magic frog: Jumping Mouse, I am going to give you a new name. Now your name is Eagle! So Jumping Mouse became the powerful Eagle and fulfilled his dream of reaching the Far Aivay Land and experiencing all that life has to offer. * *This fable is based on a Native American story and has been adapted from The Story of Jumping Mouse by John Steptoe; (O Lothrop, Lee & Shepard Books. 1984. 320 m CHAPTER 7

house jumped as high as he could, up, up, up.
arms out to his sides and started to fly.
d powerful.



■ EXERCISE 45: In groups of six, create a play using the story of Jumping Mouse. There will be five characters in your play: Jumping Mouse, Old Mouse, Magic Frog, Buffalo, and Wolf. In addition, one person in the group will be the narrator. The narrator will tell the parts of the story that are in italics in Exercise 44.

Rehearse your play in your group, and then present the play to the rest of the class. 7-18 MORE IRREGULAR VERBS blow - blew keep - kept draw - drew know - knew fall - fell swim - swam feel - felt throw - threw grow - grew win - won ■ EXERCISE 46— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Practice using the irregular verbs in the above list.

Example: fall-fell Rain falls. Leaves fall. Sometimes people fall.

Yesterday I fell down. I hurt my knee. How did I hurt my knee yesterday? Response: You fell (down) . 1. blcm-blew 2. draw-drew

3. feel-felt 4. fall-fell 5. grow-grew 6. keep-kept 7. know-knew 8.

szoim-swam The sun shines. Rain falls. Wind blows. Last week we had a storm. It rained hard, and the wind blew hard. Tell me about the storm last week. I draw once a week in art class. Last week I drew a portrait of myself. What did I do in art class last week? You can feel an object. You can also feel an emotion or a sensation.

Sometimes I feel sleepy in class. I felt tired all day yesterday. How did I feel yesterday? How did you feel yesterday? Sometimes I fall

down. Yesterday I fell down. I felt bad when I fell down. What happened to me yesterday? Trees grow. Flowers grow. Vegetables

grow. Usually I grow vegetables in my garden, but last year I grew only flowers. What did I grow in my garden last year? Now I keep

my money in (name of a local bank). Last year I kept my money in (name of another local bank). Where did I keep my money last

year? (...) knows a lot about English grammar. On the grammar test last week, s/he knew all the answers. What did (...) know last

week? I swim in (name of a lake, sea, ocean, or local swimming pool) every summer. I swam in (name of a lake, sea, ocean, or local swimming pool) last summer. What did I do last summer?

EXPRESSING ABILITY ■ 327

9. throw-throw I can hand you this (piece of chalk) or I can throw it to you. I just threw this (piece of chalk) to (. . .). What did I just do? 10. win-win You can win a game or lose a game. Last weekend (name of a local sports team) won a game/match against (name of another team). How did (name of the local sports team) do last weekend? Did they win or lose? ■ EXERCISE 47: 1. A: B: 2. A: B: 3. A: B: A: B: A: 4. A: B: 5. A: B: 6. A: B: 7. A: B: 8. A: B: Complete the sentences. Use the past form of the verbs in the list. blow grow swim draw hurl throw fall keep win feed know Did you enjoy your tennis game with Jackie? Yes, but I lost. Jackie _ . How did you break your leg? I _ down on the ice on the sidewalk. Ouch! What's the matter? I _ my finger. How? I pinched it in the door. Did you give the box of candy to your girlfriend? No, I didn't. I _ it and ate it myself. That's a nice picture. I agree, Anna _ it. She's a good artist. Did you have a garden when you lived at home? Yes. I _ vegetables and flowers. Did you finish the test? No. I didn't have enough time. I _ all of the answers but I ran out of time. Did you have fun at the beach? Lots of fun. We sunbathed and _ in the ocean. 322 ■ CHAPTER 7

9. A B A 10. A B 11. A B ■ EXERCISE 48: Complete the sentences. Use the past form of the verbs in the list. begin fly make take break grow meet tell catch know sing throw cost leave spend zeeer fall lose steal win 1 . When I went to the airport yesterday, I _ a taxi. 2. I _ my winter jacket yesterday because the weather was cold. 3. Tom bought a new tie. It _ a lot because it was a hand-painted silk tie. 4. Laurie doesn't feel good. She _ a cold a couple of days ago. 5. Leo could read the story easily. 1'he words in the story weren't new- for him. He _ the vocabulary in the story. 6. I know' Ronald Sawyer. I _ him at a party a couple of weeks ago. 7. My hometown is Ames, Iowa. I _ up there. 8. I dropped my book. It _ _ to the floor. 9. Ken couldn't get into his apartment because he _ his keys. 10. We _ a lot of money at the restaurant last night. The food was good, but expensive. 1 1 . The baseball player _ the ball to the catcher. I burned my finger. Did you put ice on it? No. I _ on it. What's die matter? You sound like you have a frog in your throat. I think I'm catching a cold. I _ yesterday, but I don't feel very good today. Hou: did you break the window, Tommy? okav Well, I . a ball to Annie, but I missed Annie and hit the window' instead.

EXPRESSING ABILITY ■ 323

1 2. I wrote a check yesterday. I _ a mistake on the check, so I tore it up and wrote another one. 13. Someone _ _ my bicycle, so I called the police. 14. Maggie didn't tell a lie. She _ the truth. 15. Rick _ his arm when he fell on the ice. 16. We were late for the movie. It _ at 7:00, but we didn't get there until 7:15. 17. We _ songs at the party last night and had a good time. 18. I _ to Chicago last week. The plane was only five minutes late. 19. My plane _ at 6:03 and arrived at 8:45. 20. We played a soccer game yesterday. The other team _ _ . We lost. 324 m CHAPTER 7

■ CHAPTER 3 Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns ■

EXERCISE 1: How are these words usually used, as nouns or adjectives? Use each word in a sentence. 1. busy NOUN (ADJ) 7. hand NOUN ADJ * Vm loo busy to go to the zoo. _ 8. good NOUN ADJ 2. computer (noun) ADJ * Computers are machines. 9. monkey NOUN ADJ 3. tall NOUN ADJ 10. young NOUN ADJ 4. apartment NOUN ADJ 11. music NOUN ADJ 5. Tom NOUN ADJ 12. expensive NOUN ADJ 6. intelligent NOUN ADJ 13. grammar NOUN ADJ 8-1 MODIFYING NOUNS WITH ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS ADJECTIVE + NOUN (a) I bought an expensive book. Adjectives can modify nouns, as in (a). Sec Chart 4-2 for a list of common adjectives. NOUN + NOUN (b) I bought a grammar book NOUN + NOUN (c) He works at a shoe store . (d) incorrect: He zworks at a shoes store. Nouns can modify other nouns. In (b): grammar is a noun that is used as an adjective to modify another noun (book). A noun that is used as an adjective is always in its singular form. In (c): the store sells shoes, but it is called a shoe (singular form) store. ADJECTIVE + NOUN + NOUN (e) I bought an expensive grammar book . (f) incorrect: I bought a grammar expensive book. Both an adjective and a noun can modify a noun; the adjective comes first, the noun second. NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS ■ 325



CHAPTER 8

Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns

■ EXERCISE 2: Find the adjectives and identify the nouns they modify. 1. I drank some hot tea. 2. My grandmother is a wise woman. 3. English is not my native language. 4. The busy waitress poured coffee into the empty cup. 5. A young man carried the heavy suitcase for Fumiko. 6. I sat in an uncomfortable chair at the restaurant. 7. There is international news on the front page of the newspaper. 8. My uncle is a wonderful man. ■ EXERCISE 3: Find the nouns used as adjectives and identify the nouns they modify. 1. We sat at the kitchen table. 2. I bought some new CDs at the music store. 3. We met Jack at the train station. 4. Vegetable soup is nutritious. 5. The movie theater is next to the furniture store. 6. The waiter handed us a lunch menu. 7. The traffic light was red, so we stopped. 8. Ms. Bell gave me her business card. ■ EXERCISE 4: Complete the sentences. Use the information in the first part of the sentence. Use a noun that modifies ANOTHER noun in the completion. 1. Vases that are used for flowers are called _ flower vases. 2. A cup that is used for coffee is called a coffee cup. 3. A story that appears in a newspaper is called _ a newspaper article. 4. Rooms in hotels are called _ hotel rooms. 5. Soup that is made of beans is called _ bean soup. 6. A worker in an office is called _ an office worker. 7. A room that contains computers is called _ a computer room. 8. Seats on airplanes are called _ airplane seats. 9. A bench that is found in a park is called _ a park bench. 10. A tag that gives the price of something is called _ a price tag.

CHAPTERS

■ EXERCISE 5: Which noun in the list can be used with all three of the nouns used as modifiers? For example, in the first sentence below, the completion can be a university education, a high school education, and a college education t class official soup education program store keys race tickets number room trip university 1 . Jane has a / high school J | college furniture 2. We went to a { shoe clothing education history 3. I took a l math science horse 4. We watched a ^ car foot government 5. I talked to a { city school vegetable] 6. Mom made some (bean chicken radio 7. He told me about a { television computer boat 8. We took a/an l bus airplane car 9. I couldn't find my j house I door telephone 1 0. What is your { apartment license plate I NOUNS. ADJECTIVES. AND PRONOUNS ■ 327

11. We bought some < theater concert airplane 12. We visited Sue in her hospital hotel dormitory ■ EXERCISE 6: Each item lists two nouns and one adjective. Put them in the correct order. 1. homework The teacher gave us a lot of homework assignment. long assignment 2. program I watched a _ good television 3. road We drove on a mountain dangerous 4. automobile Janet was in a bad accident 5. article I read an _ magazine interesting 6. delicious Mrs. Green made some vegetable soup 7. card My sister gave me a funny birthday 8. narrow seats airplane People don't like to sit in 328 CHAPTER 8



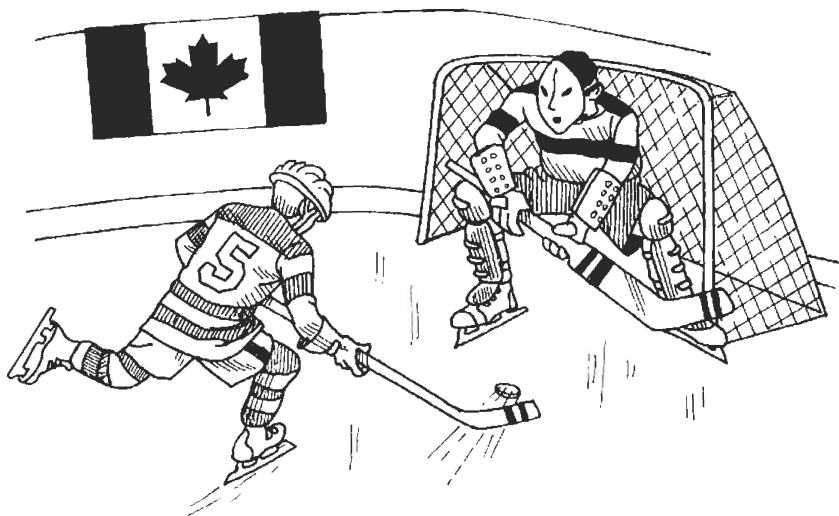
8-2 WORD ORDER OF ADJECTIVES (a) a large red car
 (b) incorrect: a red large car In (a): two adjectives (large and red) modify a noun (car). Adjectives follow a particular order. In (a), an adjective describing size (large) comes before color (red) . (c) a beautiful young woman (d) a beautiful red car (e) a beautiful Greek island The adjective beautiful expresses an opinion. Opinion adjectives usually come before all other adjectives. In (c): opinion precedes age. In (d): opinion precedes color. In (e): opinion precedes nationality. (f) OPINION ADJECTIVES dangerous favorite important difficult good interesting dirty happy strong expensive honest wonder fid There are many opinion adjectives. The words in (0 are examples of common opinion adjectives. USUAL WORD ORD (1) (2) (3) OPINION SIZE AGE beautiful large young delicious tall old kind little middle-aged ER OF ADJECTIVES (4) (5) (6) COLOR NATIONALITY* MATERIAL red Greek metal blue Chinese glass black Mexican plastic (g) some delicious Mexican food (h) a small glass vase (i) a kind old Chinese man A noun is usually modified by only one or two adjectives, although sometimes there are three. (j) rare: a beautiful small old brown Greek metal coin It is very rare to find a long list of adjectives in front of a noun. *note: Adjectives that describe nationality are capitalized: Korean, Venezuelan, Saudi Arabian, etc. ■ EXERCISE 7 : Put the italicized words in the correct order. 1. glass a toll glass vase tall — ■ - ^ - — 2, delicious some food Thai 3. red some tomatoes small NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS ■ 329

4. old some ____ _ _ cows big brown 5. narrow a _ road
din 6. young serious 7. long black beautiful 8. Chinese famous old
9. leather brazen thin a woman hair a/an work of art a belt 10.
wonderful a/an _ story old Native American ■ EXERCISE 8:

Complete the sentences with words from the list below. Asian
cotton polite brick important soft Canadian leather unhappy coffee
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. Jack is wearing a white _ COttO/7 Hong Kong is
an important _ I'm wearing some comfortable old _ Tommy was a/
an _ favorite toy. Ann has a/an _ Our dorm is a tall red _ The
computer is a/an _ _ shirt. _ city_ shoes. _ little boy when he broke
his wool blanket on her bed. _ building. _ modern invention. 330 ■
CHAPTER 8

8. My nephew has good manners. He is always a/an _ young man, especially to his ciders. 9. Jack always carries a large blue _ cup with him. 10. Ice hockey is a popular _ sport. ■

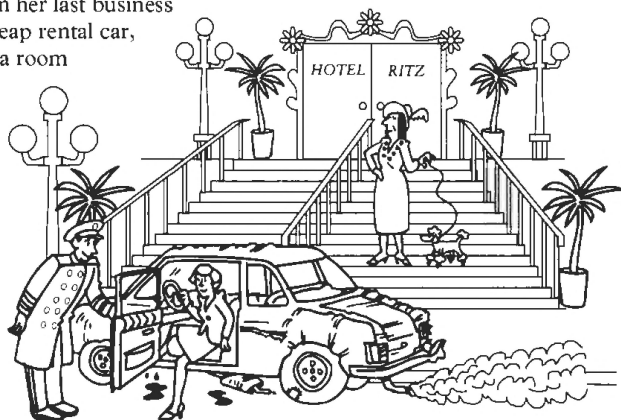
EXERCISE 9: Add ADjiiCTlviiS or nouns usi-n AS adjhc tivus to the sentences below. 1 . We had some hot _ 2. My dog. Rover, is a/an 3. We bought a blue _ 4. Alice has _ 5. Tom has short 6. Mr. 1 .ee is a/an _ 7. Jack lives in a large _ 8. I bought a big _ 9. Sally picked a/an _ _ 1 0. Ali wore an old _ _ _ food. _ old dog. _ _ blanket. gold earrings. _ hair. _ young man. _ brick house. _ suitcase. _ red flower, _ shirt to the picnic. NOUNS, ADJECTIVES. AND PRONOUNS ■ 331



■ EXERCISE 10 — ERROR ANALYSIS: Many, but not all, of the following sentences contain mistakes in the word order of modifiers. Find and correct the mistakes. Make changes in the use of a and an as necessary. an old wood 1. Ms. Lane has — a-wood-old desk in her office. 2. She put the flowers in a blue glass vase, (no change) 3. The Great Wall is a Chinese landmark famous. 4. 1 read a newspaper article interesting this morning, 5. Spiro gave me a wonderful small black Greek box as a birthday present. 6. Alice reached down and put her hand in the mountain cold stream. 7. Pizza is my favorite food Italian. 8. There was a beautiful flower arrangement on the kitchen table. 9. Jack usually wears brown old comfortable shoes leather. 10. Gnats are black tiny insects. 11. 1 used a box brown cardboard to mail a gift to my sister. 12. Tony has a noisy electric fan in his bedroom window. 13. James is a middle-aged handsome man with brown short hair. 332 ■

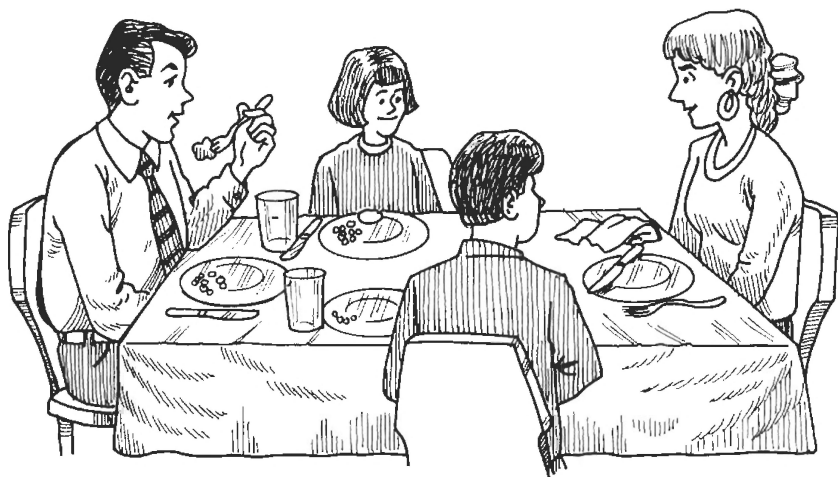
CHAPTER 8

14. When Jane was on her last business trip, she had a cheap rental car, but she stayed in a room expensive hotel.

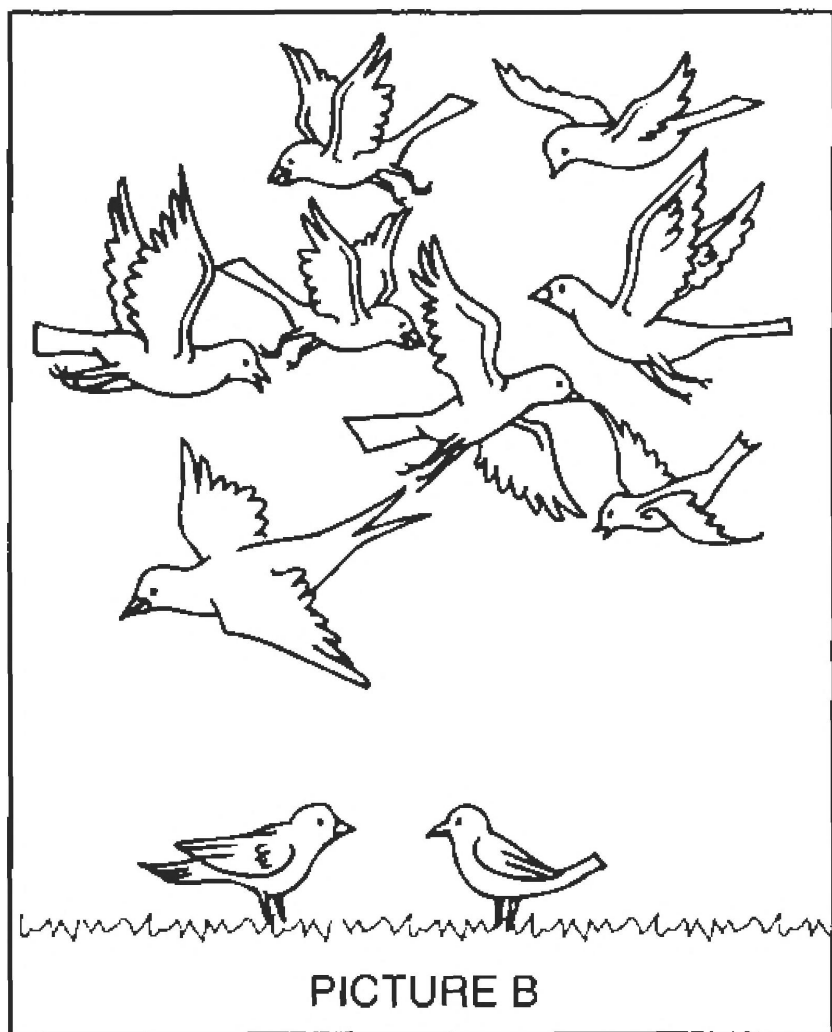


EXERCISE 11 — ORAL: Practice modifying nouns. student a: Your book is open. Say the words in each item. Don't let your intonation drop because Student B is going to finish the phrase. student b: Your book is closed. Complete Student A's phrase with a noun. Respond as quickly as you can with the first noun that comes to mind. Example: STUDENT A: STUDENT B: a dark . . . a dark night (room, building, day, cloud, etc.) Example: STUDENT a: STUDENT B: STUDENT A: STUDENT B: STUDENT A: some ripe . . . some ripe soup some ripe soup?? I don't think soup can be called ripe. Okay. How about "some ripe fruit"? or: "some ripe bananas"? That's good. Some ripe fruit or some ripe bananas. 1 . a kitchen . . . 2. a busy . . . 3. a public . . , 4. a true . . . 5. some expensive . . . 6. an interesting old . . . 7. an airplane . . . 8. a dangerous . . . 9. a beautiful Korean . . . 10. some delicious Mexican . . . Switch roles. 21. a telephone . . . 22. a fast . . . 23. some comfortable . . . 24. a foreign . . . 25. a famous Italian . . . 26. a bus , . . 27. a history . . . 28. a rubber bicycle . . . 29. a hospital . . . 30. a movie . . . 1 1 . a birthday . . . 1 2. a computer . . . 13. a baby . . . 14. a soft , . 15. an easy . . . 16. a government . . . 17. some hot . . . 18. a flower . . . 19. a bright . . . 20. some small round . . . 3 1 . some great old . . . 32. a television . . . 33. a very deep . . . 34. an office . . . 35. a gray wool . . . 36. an afternoon . . . 37. an empty' . . . 38. a wonderful South American . . . 39. a bedroom . . . 40. a science . . . NOUNS, ADJECTIVES. AND PRONOUNS ■ 333

8-3 EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY: ALL OF, MOST OF, SOME OF (a) Rita ate all of the food on her plate. (b) Mike ate most of his food. (c) Susie ate some of her food All of most of and some of express quantities. all of = 100% most of - a large part, but not all some of - a small or medium part (d) Matt ate almost all of his food. (e) incorrect: Man ate almost of his food. all of = 100% almost all of = 95%— 99% Almost is used with all; all cannot be omitted. ■ EXERCISE 1 2: Complete the sentences with (almost) all of, most of, or some of 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 2, 4, 6, 1,3, 5, 1,3,4, 1,3, 4, 1,3,4, 8: Alt_o[7: _ 6, 7, 9: _ 6, 7, 8: _ 5, 7, 9: _ these numbers are even, these numbers are odd. _ these numbers are odd. _ these numbers are odd. _ these numbers are odd. 334 ■ CHAPTER 8



6. _ the birds in Picture A are flying. 7. _ the birds in Picture B are flying. 8. _ the birds in Picture C are flying. 9. _ the birds in Picture D are flying. 10. _ the students in this class have dark hair. 11. _ the students in this class are using pens rather than pencils to do this exercise. 12. _ the students in this class wear glasses. 13. _ the students in this class can speak English. NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS ■ 335



8-4 EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY: SUBJECT-VERB

AGREEMENT (a) All of my work is finished. (b) All of my friends are kind, (c) Some of my homework is finished. (d) Some of my friends are coming to my birthday party. In (a): all of + singular noun + singular verb. In (b): all of + plural noun + plural verb. In (c); some of + singular noun + singular verb. In (d): some of + plural noun + plural verb. When a subject includes an expression of quantity, the verb agrees with, the noun that immediately follows of COMMON EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY all of most of half of almost all of a lot of some of EXERCISE 13: Choose the correct verb. 1 . All of that money ^ (is \ are) 2. All of the windows . mine. open. (is \ are) 3. We saw one movie. Some of the movie (was \ were) 4. We saw five movies. Some of the movies . (was \ were) . interesting. interesting. 5. Half of the glasses . empty, (is \ are) and half of the glasses full. (is \ are) 6. Half of the glass (is \ are) empty. Pessimist Optimist 336 ■ CHAPTER 8

7. A lot of those words _ new to me. (is \ are) 8. A lot of that vocabulary _ new to me. (is \ are) 9. Almost all of the air in the city _ polluted. (is \ are) 10. Almost all of the oceans in the world _ polluted. (is \ are) 11. Most of the students _ on time. (arrives \ arrive)

12. Most of our mail _ in the morning. (arrives \ arrive) !
8-5 EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY: ONE OF, NONE OF ONE OF + PLURAL NOUN (a) Sam is one of my friends, (b) incorrect: Sam is one of my friend. One of is followed by a specific plural noun, as in (a). It is incorrect to follow one of with a singular noun, as in (b). ONE OF + PL. NOUN + SING. VERB (c) One of my friends is here. (d) incorrect: One of my friends are here. When one of + a plural noun is the subject of a sentence, it is followed by a singular verb, as in (c): ONE OF + PLURAL NOUN + SINGULAR VERB. (e)

None of the students was late. (f) None of the students were late. In (e): Not one of the students was late. none of = not one of The verb following none of + a plural noun can be singular, as in (e), or plural, as in (f). Both are correct.* *In very formal English, a singular verb is used after none of + a plural noun: None of the students was late. In everyday English, both singular and plural verbs are used. ■ EXERCISE 14: Make sentences from the given words and phrases.

1 . One of my \ teacher \ be \ (name of a teacher) One of my teachers is Ms. Lopez. 2. (name of a student) \ be \ one of my \ classmate NOUNS. ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS

3. one of my \ book \ be \ red 4. one of my \ book \ have
 \ a green cover 5. (name of a place) \ be \ one of my favorite \
 place \ in the world 6. one of the \ student \ in my class \ always
 come \ late 7. (name of a person) \ be \ one of my best \ friend 8.
 one of my \ friend \ live \ in (name of a place) 9. (title of a TV
 program) \ be \ one of the best \ program \ on TV 10. (name of a
 person) \ be \ one of the most famous \ people* \ in the world 11 .
 one of my biggest \ problem \ be \ my inability to understand
 spoken English 12. (name of a newspaper) \ be \ one of the \
 leading newspaper \ in (name of a city) 13, none of the \ student \
 in my class \ speak \ (> name of a language) 14. none of the \
 furniture \ in this room \ be \ soft and comfortable *Pe

■ EXERCISE 15: Complete the sentences with your own words. 1. One of my favorite _ is _ . 2. _ is one of the most interesting _ in the world. 3. One of the _ in my _ is _ . 4. _ is one of my best _ . 5. One of _ . 6. None of _ . ■ EXERCISE 16: Choose the correct vhrb. 1. My grammar book _ IS _ red. (is \ are) 2. Some of my books _ on my desk. (is \ are) 3. One of my books _ blue and green. (is \ are) 10. One of the students in Pablo's class _ a mustache. (has \ have) 11. None of these letters _ for you. (is \ are) 12. None of this mail _ for you. (is \ are) NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS ■ 339

4. My favorite colors _____ red and yellow.
(is \ are)

5. Sue's favorite color _____ green.
(is \ are)

6. One of my favorite colors _____ red.
(is \ are)

7. My best friends _____ in Brazil.
(lives \ live)

8. One of my best friends _____ in Australia.
(lives \ live)

9. Some of the students in my class _____ lap-top computers.
(has \ have)



B EXERCISE 17: Complete the sentences with *is* or *are* . 1. Some of the children's toys _ broken. 2. Most of my classmates _ always on time for class. 3. One of my classmates _ always late. 4. All of my friends _ kind people. 5. One of my friends _ Sam Brown. 6. Most of the rivers in the world _ polluted. 7. Some of the Pacific Ocean _ badly polluted. 8. Most of this page _ white. 9. Most of the pages in this book _ full of grammar exercises. 10. One of the pages in this book _ the title page. ■ **EXERCISE 18 — ORAL (BOOKS**

CLOSED): Answer the questions in complete sentences. Use any expression of quantity (all of, most of, some of, a lot of, one of, three of, etc.). Example: How many of the people in this room are wearing shoes? Response: All of the people in this room are wearing shoes. Example: How many of us are wearing blue jeans? Response: Some of us are wearing blue jeans. 1. How many people in this room have (short) hair? 2. How many of the students in this class have red grammar books? 3. How many of us are sitting down? 4. How many of your classmates are from (name of a country)? 5. How many of the people in this room can speak (English)? 6. How many of the women in this room are wearing earrings? How many of the men? 7. What is one of your favorite TV programs? 8. How many of the people in this city are friendly? 9. Who is one of the most famous people in the world? 10. How many of the married women in your country work outside the home? 340 ■ **CHAPTER 8**

8-6 USING EVERY (a) Every student has a book. (b) All of the students have books. (c) incorrect: Every of the students has a book. (d) incorrect: Every* students have books. (a) and (b) have essentially the same meaning. In (a): every + singular noun + singular verb. Every is not immediately followed by of. Every is immediately followed by a singular noun, not a plural noun. (e) Everyone has a book. (f) Everybody has a book. (e) and (f) have the same meaning. Everyone and everybody are followed by a singular verb. (g) I looked at everything in the museum, (h) Everything is okay. In (g): everything - each thing. In (h): everything is followed by a singular verb. ■ EXERCISE 19: Choose the correct completion. i. All of the books on this desk Qf€ mine. (book \ books) (is \ are) 2. Every on this desk mine. (book \ books) (is \ are) 3. All of the here today. (student \ students) (is \ are) 4. Every here today. (student \ students) (is \ are) 5. Every at mv college tests regularly. (teacher \ teachers) (gives \ give) 6. All of the at my college a lot of tests. (teacher \ teachers) (gives \ give) 7. Every in mv country bedtime stories. (child \ children) (likes \ like) 8. All of the in mv country that storv. (child \ children) (knows \ know') 9. All of the in this class studying English. (person \ people) (is \ are) LO. Everyone in this class to learn English. NOUNS. ADJECTIVES. AND PRONOUNS ■ 341

11. all of the in this class speak English well? 12. (Does \ Do) (student \ students) everv in the world like to listen to music? 13. (Does \ Do) (person \ people) all of the in the world enjoy dancing? 14. (Does \ Do) (person \ people) everybody in the world have enough to eat? 15. (Does \ Do) Every in Sweden a good transportation system. (city \ cities) (has \ have) ■ EXERCISE 20 — ERROR ANALYSIS: Find and correct the errors. 1. I work hard every days, 2. I live in an apartment with one of my friend. 3. We saw a pretty flowers garden in the park. 4. Almost of the students are in class today. 5. Every people in my class are studying English, 6. All of the cities in North America has traffic problems, 7. One of my books are green, 8. Nadia drives a blue small car. 9. Istanbul is one of my favorite city in the world. 10. Every of students in the class have a grammar book. 1 1. The work will take a long time. We can't finish every things today. 12. Everybody in the w'orld want peace. 342 ■ CHAPTER 8

8-7 POSSESSIVE NOUNS SINGULAR POSSESSIVE NOUN NOUN (a) My friend has a car. friend friend's My friend's car is blue. (b) The student has a book. student student's The student's book is red. To show that a person possesses something, add an apostrophe (') and -s to a singular noun. POSSESSIVE NOUN, SINGULAR noun + apostrophe O + -s PLURAL POSSESSIVE NOUN NORM (c) The students have books. students students' The students' books are red. (d) My friends have a car. friends friends' My friends' car is blue. Add an apostrophe O at the end of a plural noun (alter the -s) . POSSESSIVE NOUN, PLURAL noun + -s + apostrophe (*) ■ EXERCISE 21: Add APOSTROPHES to the POSSESSIVE NOUNS. 1. Jim's last name is Smith. 2. Bob's cat likes to sleep on the sofa. 3. My teachers names are Ms. Rice and Mr. Molina. 4. My mother's first name is Marika. 5. My parents telephone number is 555-9876. 6. My Uncle George is my father's brother. 7. Nicole is a girl's name. 8. Erica and Heidi are girls names. 9. Do you like Tom's shirt? 10. Do you know Anita's brother? 11. The teacher collected the students test papers at the end of the period. NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS 343

12. Alex's friends visited him last night. 13. How long is an elephant's trunk? 14. A monkey's hand looks like a human hand. 15. Monkeys' hands have thumbs. ■ EXERCISE 22: Complete the sentences. Use your classmates' names. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. _ hair is short and straight. _ grammar book is on her desk. _ last name is _ I don't know _ address. _ eyes are gray. _ shirt is blue. _ briefcase is on the floor. I need to borrow _ dictionary. Do you like _ mustache? Do you know _ wife? 344 ■ CHAPTER 8



■ EXERCISE 23— WRITTEN: Write sentences about things your classmates possess. Example: Kim's book is on his desk. Anna's purse is brown. Pablo's shirt is green. ■ EXERCISE 24: Complete the sentences. 1. My husband's brother 2. My father's _ 3 . My mother's _ 4. My sister's _ 5. My aunt's _ 6. My wife's _ 7. My brother's _ 8. My father's _ are my grandparents. 9. My niece is my brother's _ 10, My nephew is my sister's _ _ is my brother-in-law, _ is my uncle. _ is my grandmother. _ are my nieces and nephews, is my mother, is my mother-in-law. _ is my sister-in-law. and _ 8-8

POSSESSIVE: IRREGULAR PLURAL NOUNS (a) The children's toys are on the floor. Irregular plural nouns (children, men , women , people) have an irregular plural possessive form. The apostrophe (') comes (b) The store sells men's clothing . before the final -s. (c) That store sells women's clothing . REGULAR PLURAL POSSESSIVE NOUN: the students' books (d) I like to know about other

IRREGULAR PLURAL POSSESSIVE NOUN: people's lives , the women's books ■ EXERCISE 25: Complete the sentences with the correct possessive form of the nouns in italics. 1. children 2. girl 3. girls 4. women That store sells _ children's Mary is a _ Mary and Sue are _ Mary and Sue are _ _ books. name. names, names. NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS ■ 345

5. uncle Robert is living at his house. 6. person A biography is the story of a life. 7. people Biographies are the stories of lives. 8. student's life is busy. 9. brother Do you know my wife? 10. brothers Do you know my wives? 11. wife My parents live in California. 12. dog My name is Fido. 13. dogs My names are Fido and Rover. 14. men Are Jim and Tom names? 15. man, woman Chris can be a nickname or a _ nickname. 16. children Our _ school is near our house. ■ EXERCISE 26: Add apostrophes and final -s as necessary to make possessive nouns. Paul's 1. Someone stole Paul's bicycle. 2. Do you know Yuko's roommate? 3. Does that store sell women's clothes? 4. My roommate's desk is always a mess. 5. What is your parent's new address? 6. I have my father's nose.* 7. Where is Rosa's apartment? 8. I can't remember all of my classmate's names. Tina's Boutique Women's. Jr.'s. Jr.'s. Jr.'s. > 4 j Girls' Clothing r [p jr / */ have my father's nose - My nose looks like my father's nose; I inherited the shape of my nose from my father. 346 ■ CHAPTER 8

9, It's important to respect other people's opinions. 10. My husband's sister is visiting us this week. 11. Excuse me. Where is the men's room? 12. That store sells children's toys. 8-9 POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS: MINE, YOURS, HIS, HERS, OURS, THEIRS (a) This book belongs to me. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE A possessive adjective is used in front of a noun. It is my book. ADJECTIVE PRONOUN noun: my book, It is mine. my book (b) That book belongs to you. yours A possessive pronoun is used alone, without a noun following it: It is yours, his Thai book is mine ours theirs theirs incorrect: Thai is mine book. ■

EXERCISE 27: Complete the sentences. Use object pronouns, possessive adjectives, and POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. 1. I own this book. This book belongs to me. This is my book. This book is mine. 2. They own these books. These books belong to them. These are their books. These books are theirs. 3. You own that book. That book belongs to you. That is your book. That book is yours. 4. She owns this pen. This pen belongs to her. This is her pen. This pen is hers. 5. He owns that pen. That pen belongs to him. That is his pen. That pen is his. 6. We own those books. Those books belong to us. Those are our books. Those books are ours. ■ NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS ■ 347

■ EXERCISE 28: Complete the sentences. Use the correct possessive form of the words in italics. 1. I a. This bookbag is mine Sue b. That bookbag is Sue's I c. . . Mx _ bookbag is red. she d. Hers is green. 2. we a. These books are . they b. Those books are we c. books are on the table. they d. are on the desk. 3. To m a. This raincoat is Mary b. That raincoat is he c. is light brown. she d. is light blue. 4. / a. This notebook is ■ you b. That one is * I c. has name on it. you d. has name on it. 5. Jim a. apartment is on Pine Street. we b. is on Main Street. he c. apartment has three rooms. we d. has four rooms. 6. I a. This is pen. you b. That one is * I c. is in pocket. you d. is on desk. 348 ■ CHAPTER 8

we a. car is a Chevrolet. they b. is a Volkswagen. we c. gets
17 miles to the gallon. they d. car gets 30 miles to the gallon. Ann
a. These books are Paul b. Those are she c. are on desk. he d. are on
desk. ■ EXERCISE 29: Choose the correct completion. 1. Is this
your _ pen? (your \ yours) 2. Please give this dictionary to Olga.
It's _ . (her \ hers) 3. A: Don't forget _ hat. Here. (your \ yours) B:
No, that's not _ hat. _ is green. (my \ mine) (My \ Mine) 4. A: Please
take this wood carving as a gift from me. Here. It's _ (your \ yours)
B: Thank you. You're very thoughtful. 5. A: Isn't that the Smiths'
car? That one over there. The blue one. B: No, that's not _ . _ car is
dark blue. (their \ theirs) (Their \ Theirs) 6. A: Jim and I really like
_ new apartment. It has lots of (our \ ours) space. How do you like _
? (your \ yours) B: _ is small, but it's comfortable. (Our \ Ours) 7. A:
Excuse me. Is this _ umbrella? (your \ yours) B: I don't have an
umbrella. Ask Ken. Perhaps it is _ . (him \ his) NOUNS.
ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS B 349

8. A: When do _ _ classes begin? (your \ yours) B: September second. How about _ _ ? When do (your \ yours) _ begin? (your \ yours) A; _ begin August twenty-ninth. (.Mv \ Mine)
 9. A: Maria, _ spaghetti sauce is delicious! (your\ yours) B: Thank you, but it's not as good as _ . (your \ yours) A: Oh, no. _ is much better! h tastes just as good as Anna's. (Your \ Yours) B: Do you like Anna's spaghetti sauce? I think _ is too salty, (her\ hers) A: Mavbe. _ husband makes good spaghetti sauce too. (My\ Mine) _ is thick and rich. (His \ He) B: In truth, making spaghetti sauce is easy, but everyone's sauce is just a little different. 350 ■ CHAPTER 8



8- 1 0 QUESTIONS WITH WHOSE (a) Whose book is this?
 > Mine. Whose asks about possession. > It's mine. > It's my book.
 Whose is often used with a noun (e.g., (b) Whose books are these
 ? > Rita's, whose book), as in (a) and (b). > They're Rita's. *
 They're Rita's books. (c) Whose is this? (The speaker is pointing to
 a book.) Whose can be used without a noun if (d) Whose are these?
 (The speaker is pointing to some books.) the meaning is clear, as in
 (c) and (d). ■ EXERCISE 30: Choose the correct completion. 1 .
 Whose watch is this ? (is \ are) (this \ these) 2. Whose glasses ? (is
 \ are) (that \ those) 3. Whose keys ? (is \ are) (this \ these) 4.
 Whose hat ? (is \ are) (that \ those) 5. Whose shoes ? 6. Whose
 handbag (is \ are) (that \ those) (is \ are) (this \ these) NOUNS.
 ADJECTIVES. AND PRONOUNS 351



■ EXERCISE 31 : Point to or touch something in the classroom that belongs to someone and ask a question with whose .
 Example: STUDENT A: STUDENT B: STUDENT A: STUDENT B:
 (Student A points to or touches a grammar book.) Whose book is this? It's mine. / Mine. / It's my book. Whose book is that? It's PoY / PoY / It's Po's book. *Nouns are regularly contracted with is in spoken English. In written English, contractions of a noun and is (e.g. > Tom's happy) are found in informal English (for example, in a letter to a friend), but not in formal English (for example, an academic paper). In general, verb contractions (Tm, you're, isn't, there's, etc) are found in informal English, but are not used in very formal English. 3S2 ■ CHAPTER 8

8-11 SUMMARY: USES OF THE APOSTROPHE

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) <i>I'm</i> happy. (INCORRECT: <i>I am happy</i>.)
 <i>She's</i> happy.
 <i>We're</i> happy.</p> <p>(b) <i>Tom's</i> happy.</p> <p>(c) <i>That's</i> my notebook.</p> <p>(d) <i>There's</i> a book on the table.
 <i>There're</i> some books on the table.</p> <p>(e) <i>What's</i> this?
 <i>Where's</i> Anna?</p> <p>(f) <i>Who's</i> that? → It's <i>Mike</i>.
 <i>Whose</i> is that? → It's <i>Mike's</i>.</p> | <p>USES OF THE APOSTROPHE</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • With contractions of pronouns and <i>am, is,</i> and <i>are.</i>
 See Chart 1-4. • With contractions of nouns and <i>is.</i>
 In (b), <i>Tom's</i> = <i>Tom is</i>.* • With the contraction of <i>that</i> and <i>is.</i> • With the contractions of <i>there</i> and <i>is/are.</i> • With contractions of some question words and <i>is.</i> <p>COMPARE
 In (f): <i>Who's</i> = <i>who is</i>.
 In (g): <i>Whose</i> = a question word that asks about possession. It has NO apostrophe.</p> |
| <p>(h) Tina <i>isn't</i> here.</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • With negative contractions: <i>isn't, aren't, wasn't, weren't, doesn't, don't, won't, can't.</i> |
| <p>(i) <i>Tom's</i> hair is brown.</p> <p>(j) My <i>parents'</i> house is white.</p> <p>(k) This pen belongs to Ann. It is <i>hers</i>.</p> <p>(l) INCORRECT: It is <i>her's</i>.</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • With possessive nouns, as in (i) and (j). See Charts 8-7 and 8-8. <p>Apostrophes are NOT used with possessive pronouns. In (l): <i>hers</i> with an apostrophe (<i>her's</i>) is NEVER correct.</p> |
| <p>(m) <i>It's</i> sunny today.</p> <p>(n) I'm studying about India. I'm interested in <i>its</i> history.</p> <p>(o) INCORRECT: <i>I'm interested in it's history</i>.</p> | <p>COMPARE: In (m): <i>it's</i> = <i>it is</i>.
 In (n): <i>its</i> = a possessive adjective: <i>its</i> history = <i>India's</i> history. A possessive adjective has NO apostrophe.</p> |

■ EXERCISE 32: Add apostrophes where necessary. 1. That's Ann's book. * ■ Thai's Anri's book. 2. That book is hers. -> (no change) 3. Jim's car is small. 4. Jim's in New York this week. 5. He's visiting his brother. 6. I'm a little hungry this morning. 7. Tony's my neighbor. 8. Tony's apartment is next to mine. 9. Who's that woman? 10. She's Bob's wife. 1 1 . Whose book is that? 1 2. Is it yours? 13. It's Gina's book. 14. Where's your dictionary? 15. Amy won't go to the movie with us. She doesn't have enough money. 1 6. Paris is a popular tourist destination. Its most famous attraction is the Eiffel Tower. Its most famous building is the Louvre Museum. Its also famous for its night life. ■ EXERCISE 33: Add apostrophes where necessary. Yoko's 1 . Yokos A last name is Yakamoto. 2. Yokos a student in my English class. 3. Pablo is a student. He's in my class. His last name is Alvarez. NOUNS. ADJECTIVES. AND PRONOUNS ■ 353

4. Pablos full name is Pablo Alvarez, 5. You're a student. Your name is Ali, 6* I'm a student. I am in Mr. Lee's English class. 7. Mary and Anita have purses. Mary's purse is black. Anita's purse is brown. 8. Mary's in class today. Anita's at home. 9. Whose books are these? 'This book is mine. That's yours. 10. What's wrong? What's happening? Who's that man? Where's he going? 11. I'm looking at a book. It's a grammar book. Its cover is red. It's on my desk. It's open. Its title is Basic English Grammar, 1 2. There's a bird in the tree. It's black and red. Its chest is red. Its wings, tail, and back are black. It's sitting on a branch. 13. People admire the tiger for its beauty and strength. It's a magnificent animal. Unfortunately* its survival as a species is in doubt. It's an endangered species. There're very few tigers in the world today. 354 ■ CHAPTER 8

8-12 SUMMARY: USES OF NOUNS

NOUN (a) | Birds | fly. | subject verb

NOUNS ARU USED AS: 4 subjects of a sentence, as in (a).

NOUN (b) | Ken | opened | the door. \ subject verb object

4 objects of a verb, as in (b).

NOUN (c) | Birds | fly | in | the sky. \ subject verb prep, object of prep. 4 objects of a preposition, as in (c).

NOUN (d) | Yoko | is \ a student. [subject be noun complement • noun complements* after be, as in (d).

NOUN + NOUN (e) I don't like winter weather. 4 modifiers of other nouns, as in (e)

NOUN + NOUN (f) I like Jim's hat . 4 possessives, as in (1) ■ *A complement is a word i-hat completes a sentence or a thought. ■

EXERCISE 34: Write the sentences that fit the grammatical descriptions. Circle the nouns,

a. A kangaroo is an animal

b. My wallet is in my pocket.

i. My (wallet') « 1 in | myrpocKet) . | subject he prep. object oTprep.

2. 1 1 1 subject be noun complement

c. Jason works in an office.

d. Karen held the baby in her arms.

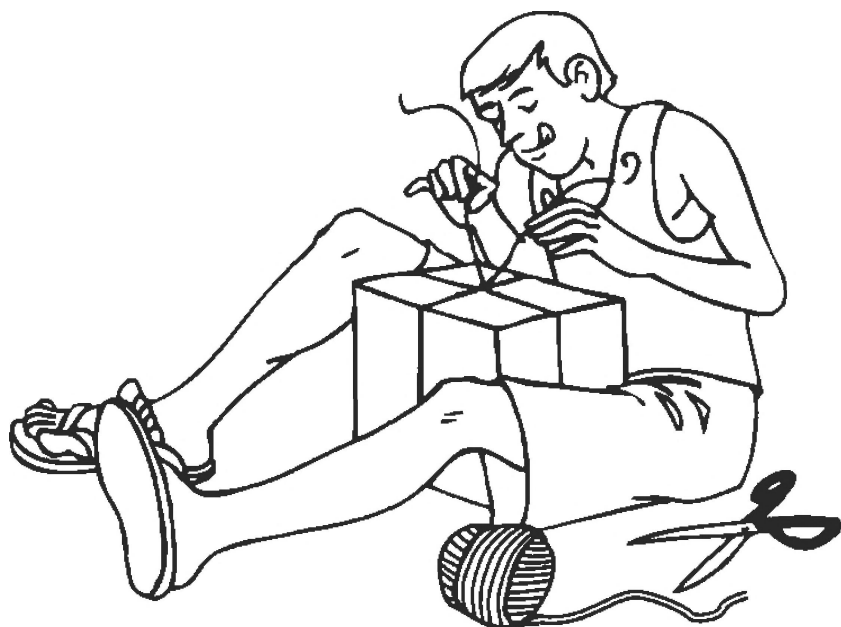
e. Restaurants serve food,

3. i i 1 1 subject verb object

4. 1 | 1 1 1 5. subject 1 1 verb prep. object of prep. 1 1 subject verb object prep. object of prep.

NOUNS. ADJECTIVES. AND PRONOUNS ■ 355

f. g6. Korea is in Asia. Korea is a peninsula. L_ 1_ L 1 1
 subject be prep. object of prep. 7. 1 1 1 1 subject be noun
 complement h. Children play with toys. i. Monkeys eat fruit. j. Jack
 tied a string around the package. 8. L 1 1 subject verb object 9. 1 1
 1 1 subject verb prep. object of prep. 10. L 1 | 1 I subject verb
 object prep. object of prep. 356 ■ CHAPTER 8



8-13 CONNECTED NOUNS: NOUN + AND/OR + NOUN

noun + and + noun (a) \ Birds and airplanes | fly. j subject verb
noun + and + noun (b) | Ken | opened \ the door and the window.
| subject verb object NOUN + NOUN + and + NOUN (c) | I | have
\ a book, a pen, and a pencil* \ subject verb object And can connect
two or more nouns. In (a): the subject = two nouns. In (b): the
object - two nouns. In (c): the object - three nouns. Three (or more)
nouns are separated by commas, as in (c). Two nouns, as in (a) and
(b), are NOT separated by commas. NOUN + or + NOUN (d) Fd
like some coffee or some tea. Or can also connect two nouns, as in
(d). ■ EXERCISE 35: Find the connected nouns and discuss how
they are used. 1 . You bought apples and bananas. * apples and
bananas = connected nouns, used as the object of the verb “
bought ” 2. I bought apples, bananas, and oranges, © 3. Jack and
Olga bought bananas. 4. Julia wants apples or bananas. 5. Julia is
at the market with Jack and Olga. 6. Tennis and golf are popular
sports. 7. Tokyo has excellent museums and libraries. 8. A tree has a
trunk, branches, leaves, and roots. 9. Automobiles, trains, and
trucks are kinds of vehicles. 10. I'll have some soup or a sandwich
for lunch. NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS ■ 357

■ EXERCISE 36: Add commas where necessary. 1. Ants bees and mosquitoes are insects. - * Ants , bees y and mosquitoes are insects* 2. Ants and bees are insects, (no change) 3. Bears tigers and elephants are animals. 4. Bears and tigers are animals. 5. I bought some rice fruit and vegetables at the market. 6. I bought some rice and fruit at the market. 7. The three countries in North America are Canada the United States and Mexico. 8. I read a lot of newspapers and magazines. 9. I had some soup and a sandwich for lunch. 10. Shelley had some soup a salad and a sandwich for lunch. 11. My favorite things in life are sunny days music good friends and books. 12. What do birds butterflies and airplanes have in common? ■

EXERCISE 37: Find the nouns. Discuss how they are used. 1. A turtle is a reptile, turtle = a noun , used as the subject of the sentence. ► reptile - a noun ? used as a complement after “be” 2. A turtle has a hard shell. 3. A turtle pulls its head, legs, and tail into its shell. 4. Some turtles spend almost all of their lives in water. 5. Some turtles live on land for their entire lives. 6. Turtles don’t have teeth, but they have powerful jaws. *In a series of connected nouns, the comma immediately before and is optional. also correct: Ants bees and mosquitoes are insects. 358 m CHAPTER 8

7. Turtles bury their eggs in sand or mud. 8. Baby turtles face many dangers. 9. Birds and fish eat baby turtles. 10. Some green sea turtles live for 100 years. 11. Turtles face many dangers from people. 12. People destroy turtles' natural homes. 13. People replace beaches, forests, and other natural areas with towns and farms. 14. People poison natural areas with pollution. 15. Many species of turtles face extinction. NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS ■ 359



8-14 SUMMARY: USES OF ADJECTIVES

ADJECTIVE + NOUN (a) I bought some beautiful flowers. Adjectives describe nouns; they give information about nouns. See Chart 4-2 for a list of common adjectives. Adjectives can come in front of nouns, as in (a). **BE + ADJECTIVE** (b) The flowers were beautiful. Adjectives can follow be , as in (b). The adjective describes the subject of the sentence. See Chart 1-6. **LINKING VERB + ADJECTIVE** (c) The flowers looked beautiful . (d) The flowers smelled good. (e) I feel good. (f) Candy tastes sweet. (g) That book sounds interesting , Adjectives can follow a few other verbs. These verbs are called “linking verbs.” The adjective describes the subject of the sentence. Common linking verbs are: look , smell, feel , taste, and sound. ■

EXERCISE 38: Find the adjectives and discuss ways adjectives are used, 1 . The sun is bright today. > bright - an adjective. It follows “be” and describes the subject of the sentence, “sun.” 2. I drank some cold water. 3. My dog’s nose is cold. 4. Ice feels cold. 5. This exercise looks easy. 6. Our teacher gives easy tests. 7. English grammar is easy. 8. Lemons taste sour. 9. What’s the matter? You look unhappy. 10. I’m sad. 11 . Who is your favorite author? 12. What’s the matter? You sound angry. 13. Ummm. These flowers smell wonderful! 14. That chair looks soft and comfortable. 15. Air. White is a good history teacher. 360 ■ **CHAPTER 8**

1 EXERCISE 39 — ORAL: Practice using linking verbs.

PART I: Do any of the following adjectives describe how you feel today? 1. good 5. sleepy 9. happy 2. fine 6. tired 10. calm 3. terrible 7. lazy 11. sick 4. terrific 8. nervous 12. old PART II: Name things that . . . 13. taste good 17. taste sour 14. taste terrible 18. smell good 15. taste delicious 19. smell bad 16. taste sweet 20. smell wonderful PART III: Name something in this room that looks . . . 21. clean 25. expensive 22. dirty 26. comfortable 23. new 27. messy 24. old 28. familiar ■ EXERCISE 40— ORAL: Describe how your

classmates look. Student a: Choose one of the emotions listed below. Show that emotion through expressions on your face and through your actions. Don't tell anyone which emotion you're trying to show. student e: Describe how Student A looks. Use the linking verb look and an adjective. 1. angry 2. sad / unhappy 3. happy 4. tired / sleepy 5. busy 6. comfortable 7. surprised 8. nervous ■ EXERCISE 41: Use any possible completions for the

following sentences. Use the words in the list or your own words. easy good / terrific / wonderful / great interesting hard / difficult terrible I awful tired / sleepy 1 . Rosa told me about a new book. I want to read it. It sounds _ interesting / good L terrific . 2. Karen learned how to make paper flowers. She told me how to do it. It sounds NOUNS. ADJECTIVES. AND PRONOUNS ■ 361

3. There's a new play at the community theater. I read a review of it in the newspaper. I'd like to see it. It sounds _ , 4. Professor Wilson is going to lecture on the problems of overpopulation tomorrow evening. I think I'll go. It sounds _ . 5. Chris explained how to fix a flat tire. I think I can do it. It sounds 6. Shelley didn't finish her dinner because it didn't taste _ _ . 7. What's for dinner? Something smells _ . Ummm! What is it? 8. Amy didn't get any sleep last night because she studied all night for a test. Today she looks _ . 9. Ymmmm! This dessert tastes _ _ . What is it? 10. A: What's the matter? Do you feel okay? B: No. I feel _ . I think I'm getting a cold. 11. A: Do you like my new dress, darling? B: You look _ , honey. 12. A: Pyew!* Something smells _ ! Do you smell it too? B: I sure do. It's the garbage in the alley. ■ EXERCISE 42: Work in pairs or small groups. In a given time limit (e.g., fifteen seconds, thirty seconds, a minute) , think of as many adjectives or nouns used as adjectives as you can that can be used to describe the nouns. Make a list. Example: car Response: big, little, fast, slow, comfortable, small, large, old, new, used, noisy, quiet, foreign, electric, antique, police, etc. 1. weather 2. animal 3. food 4. movie 5. country 6. person 7. river 8. student *Pyew is sometimes said "p.u." Both Pyew and p.u. mean that something smells very bad.

362 U CHAPTER 8

8- 1 5 SUMMARY: PERSONAL PRONOUNS SUBJECT
PRONOUNS OBJECT PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS
POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES / me mine my name(s) & you you yours
your time(s) & she her hers her name(s) & he him his his
name(s) & it it its name(s)

(12) are yellow. Its name is Whiskers. Its a friendly cat. Sometimes they're cat leaves a (13) dead mouse outside ours door. (14) Tarn looking forward to you're visit. Love, Carl 8-16 INDIRECT OBJECTS (a) I wrote | a letter | | to Alex . | direct object indirect object (a) I wrote Alex \ | a letter | INDIRECT object direct object (c) INCORRECT; / wrote to Alex a letter , Some verbs are followed by two objects; a direct object and an indirect object. (a) and (b) have the same meaning. The preposition to is NOT used when the indirect object is first and the direct object is second. (d) DIRECT OBJECT What did you write? -* A letter. A direct object answers the question l XAul? (e) INDIRECT OBJECT Who(m) did you write a letter to? > Alex. (f) — Did you write these letters to Alex? — Yes, I did. I wrote them to him . (g) INCORRECT: I zvrote him them. An indirect object answers the question Whofm)} When die direct object is a pronoun (e,g., them), it must precede the indirect object, as in (f). VERBS FOLLOWED BY INDIRECT OBJECTS INTRODUCED BY TO give send hand show lend tell pass write ■ EXERCISE 44: Use the given words to complete the grammar descriptions. 1 . my pen \ Heidi \ I gave a- i / gave 1 mvpen 1 to Heidi. 1 b. 1 subject and verb laave direct object 1 Heidi 1 INDIRECT object mv pen. 1 subject and verb INDIRECT Object / t direct object 2. I wrote \ Kim \ a letter a. 1 subject and verb direct objeec INDIRECT object b- 1 1 1 1 subject and verb INDIRECT object direct object 364 ■ CHAPTER 8

3. Jack handed \ a book \ Hiroki subject and verb direct
 object INDIRECT object b. 1 1 . 1 1 subject and verb 4. Stacy \ I
 passed \ the salt INDIRECT object direct object a. | | 1 subject and
 verb direct object INDIRECT Object b. i i 1 . 1 [subject and verb 5.
 I lent \ my car \ Tom INDIRECT Object direct object a- 1 1 1 1
 subject and verb direct object INDIRECT Object b. 1 1 1 1 subject
 and verb 6. Alice \ a postcard \ I sent INDIRECT object direct object
 a. 1 1 subject and verb direct object INDIRECT object b. | _ ... 1 1 1
 subject and verb 7, Ann told \ a story \ us INDIRECT object direct
 object a. | 1 (1 subject and verb direct object INDIRECT object b. (1 1 J
 subject and verb 8. us \ a picture \ Jack showed INDIRECT
 object direct object a. | 1 1 1 subject and verb direct object
 INDIRECT object b. | 1 | 1 subject and verb INDIRECT object direct
 object NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS ■ 365

| EXERCISE 45 — ORAL: Change the position of the indirect object in the following sentences. Be sure to omit to. 1. I gave my pen to Alex. -* I gave Alex my pen. 2. Please hand that book to me. 3. Rosa wrote a letter to her brother. 4. I gave a birthday present to Ahmed. 5. Please tell a story to us. 6. Did you send a package to your parents? 7. Mr. Hong showed a photograph of his wife to me. 8. Would you lend your camera to me? ■

EXERCISE 46— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Change the position of the INDIRECT OBJECT. Example: You gave your book to (. . .). What did you do? Response: I gave (...) my book. 1. You gave your pen to (. . .). 2. You wrote a letter to (. . .). 3. You sent a package to (. . .). 4. You told a funny story to (. . .). 5. You showed a photograph to (. . .). 6. You sent a check to the telephone company. 7. You passed your dictionary to (. . .). 8* You handed your notebook to (. . .). 9. You lent (an amount of money) to (. . .). EXERCISE 47— ORAL: Complete the sentences using the words in italics 1. a letter , my sister I wrote * . . yesterday. I wrote a letter to n i v s i s t e r y e s t e r d a y . -► I i v r o l e m y s i s t e r a l e t t e r y e s t e r d a y . 2. my parent s y a t e l e g r a m I s e n t . . . t w o d a y s a g o . 3. s o m e c a n d y y h e r c h i l d r e n M r s . K e l l y g a v e . . . a f t e r d i n n e r . 4. h e r c a r y m e S u e i s g o i n g t o l e n d . . . t o m o r r o w . 5. t h e c l a s s , a j o k e S a m t o l d . . . y e s t e r d a y . 6. a l e t t e r y t h e n e w s p a p e r f r o m g o i n g t o w r i t e . . . 7. t h e s c i s s o r s , J o h n D i d y o u h a n d . . . ? 8. m e y t h e s o y s a u c e C o u l d y o u p l e a s e p a s s , . . ? 9. L i z y a p i c t u r e M r . S c h w a r t z s h o w e d . . . o f h i s b a b y 10. t h e s t u d e n t s s o m e g o o d a d v i c e Y e s t e r d a y t h e t e a c h e r g a v e . . . 366 ■ CHAPTER 8

■ EXERCISE 48 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Perform the action. Answer the question. Example: Give your book to (. , .). What did you do? Response: I gave my book to (. . .). or: I gave (...) my book. 1. Pass your dictionary to (. . .). 2. Please hand me your pen/pencil, 3. Lend (...) some money. 4. Tell (...) your name. 5. Please pass my pen to (. . .). 6. Give (...) some good advice. 7. Show (...) a picture. 8. Write (...) a note and pass it to him/her. 9. Give (. . .) a gift. 10. Please hand that piece of chalk to me.

NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS ■ 367

8-17 INDIRECT OBJECTS: USING FOR

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>(a) Bob opened <u>the door</u> <u>for Mary.</u>
 <small>direct obj. INDIRECT obj.</small></p> <p>(b) Sue answered <u>a question</u> <u>for me.</u>
 <small>direct obj. INDIRECT obj.</small></p> <p>(c) INCORRECT: <i>Sue answered me a question.</i></p> <p>(d) INCORRECT: <i>Ken opened Anita the door.</i></p> | <p>With some verbs, for is used with the indirect object. With these verbs, the indirect object follows the direct object. For is not omitted. The position of the indirect object is not changed.</p> |
| <p>VERBS FOLLOWED BY INDIRECT OBJECTS WITH FOR</p> <p><i>answer</i> He <i>answered</i> a question for me.</p> <p><i>cash</i> The teller <i>cash</i>ed a check for me.</p> <p><i>fix</i> Can you <i>fix</i> my car for me?</p> <p><i>open</i> Mr. Smith <i>opened</i> the door for his wife.</p> <p><i>pronounce</i> I <i>pronounced</i> the word for the students.</p> <p><i>translate</i> I <i>translated</i> a letter for my brother.</p> | <p>Notice in the examples: All of the sentences give the idea that someone is helping another person.</p> |



■ EXERCISE 49: Complete the sentences by adding/or or to . 1 . The teacher answered a question _ me. 2. I opened the door _ my mother. 3. My roommate translated a newspaper story __ me. 4. Fred gave some candy _ his girlfriend. 5. The teller cashed a check _____ me. 6. The mechanic fixed my car _ _ me. 7. Mrs. Baker handed the baby _ her husband. 8. The teacher pronounced “bat” and “but” _____ the students. 9. Our landlord fixed the air conditioner _ us. 10. Could you please answer a question _ me? 11. My hands are wet. Could you please open this jar of pickles _ ■

EXERCISE 50— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Ask and answer questions. student a: Use “Could you please . . .forme?” student b: Answer the question. Example: open the window student a: Could you please open the window for me? student b: Certainly. / I’d be happy to. / Sure. 1 . answer a question 2. translate a word 3. pronounce a word 4. cash a check 5. fix (name of something) 6. open the door me?

■ EXERCISE 51— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Ask and answer questions. student A: Ask a question using “Could you please , * * ?” Use me, to me, or for me in your question. student b: Answer the question. Example: pass the butter student a: Could you please pass me the butter/pass the butter to me? student b: Certainly. / I’d be happy to. / Sure. 1. pass the salt 6. 2. hand a napkin 7. 3. pass the salt and pepper 8. 4. answer a question 9. 5. translate this paragraph 10. pronounce this word open the door lend your dictionary give (name of something in the classroom) fix (name of something) 8- 1 8 **INDIRECT OBJECTS WITH BUY, GET, MAKE (a)** Tina bought a gift for us. With the verbs buy , get , and make, two patterns are (b) Tina bought us a gift. possible: (c) I got a new toy for my son. **■** for introduces the indirect object, OR (d) I got my son a new toy . **■** the indirect object precedes the direct object. (e) Tom made lunch for his wife. (f) Tom made his wife lunch . **■ EXERCISE 52 — ORAL:** Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. 1 . I bought . . . (Jim, a new hat) / bought a new hat for Jim, I bought Jim a new hat . 2. Jack got . . . (a stuffed animal, his daughter) 3. I bought . . . (some gloves, Robert) 4. I made . , . (Mike, a cake) 5. Carmen got . . , (a new television set, her parents) 6. Eric bought . . . (a necklace, his mother) 7. Oscar made . . . (his guests, dinner) 8. Heidi bought . . . (a nice birthday gift, her brother) 9. Could you please get . . . (a glass of water, me) **NOUNS. ADJECTIVES. AND PRONOUNS ■ 369**

8-19 INDIRECT OBJECTS WITH EXPLAIN AND

INTRODUCE (a) The teacher explained the grammar to us, (b) Anna introduced her sister to me. (c) incorrect: explained us the grammar. (d) IKCORRf-CT: An mi in t reduced me her sisie r. With the verbs explain and introduce: 4 to is used with the indirect object, and 4 the indirect object always follows the direct object. ■

EXERCISE 53 — ORAL: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. 1 . Elizabeth explained . . . (me, the problem) -* lilizabeth explained the problem to me. 2. The professor explained . . . (the students, the chemistry formula) 3. Tina introduced . . . (her son, me) 4. Mr. Schwartz explained . . . (the doctor \ his problem) 5. Could you please translate . . . (me, this sentence) 6. Could you please explain . . . (me, this sentence) 7. Fred told . . . (me, his ideas) 8. I explained . . . (my husband, Fred's ideas } ■ EXERCISE

54: Add the word(s) in parentheses. If necessary, add to or for . 1 . (Bob) I wrote a letter. -► I wrote Bob a letter. OR: I wrote a letter to Bob. * 2. (my cousin) I sent a postcard. 3. (me) The teacher answered a question. 4. (his girlfriend) Jim opened the car door. 5. (the bride and groom) Ann Miller gave a nice wedding present. 6. (the class) The teacher pronounced the new vocabulary words. 7. (us) The teacher explained the meaning of the word, 8. (my roommate) I translated the title of a book, 9. (me) My friend answered the phone because my hands were full. 10. (the University of Texas) I sent an application. */ wrote a ki ter for Bob is possible, bui it has a special meaning: It gives the idea that I helped Bob. (Bor example: Bob broke his hand. He can't write. He wanted to write a letter. I helped him by writing the letter) 370 m

CHAPTER 8

1 1. (his wife) Ron fixed the sewing machine. 12. (us) Don told a funny joke at the party. 13. (me) Jane explained her problems* 14. (me) My father wrote a letter. 15. (the teacher) Samir showed a picture of his 16. (my friend) I bought a gift. ■

EXERCISE 55— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Answer the questions in complete sentences. Example: It's (, . .)'s birthday next week. What are you going to give her/him? [Followup: What is (Student A) going to do?] styjohnt a; A box of candy. ti-achbr: What is (Student A) going to do? STUDHNT b: She/He's going to give (...) a box of candy for her/his birthday, or She/He's going to give a box of candy to (. . .) for her/his birthday. 1 . (...) is getting married next month. What are you going to give her/him? [Followup: What is (Student A) going to do?] 2. Take something out of your pocket or purse and hand it to (...) [What did (Student A) do?] 3. Please explain the location of your country to (. . .). [What did (Student A) explain?] 4. (...) > ask (...) a question. (...) > answer the question for her/him. [What did (Student A) do and (Student B) do?] 5. (...) needs some money desperately to pay her/his rent so s/he won't get kicked out of her/his apartment. How much money will you lend her/him? [What is (Student A) going to do?] 6. Hide a small item in your hand. Show it to (... but don't show it to (. . .). [What did (Student A) do?] 7. Say a word in your native language and then translate it into English for (...). [What did (Student A) do?] 8. Teach (...) how to say a word in your native language. Pronounce it for (...) several times. [What did (Student A) do?] 9. Get a piece of chalk for (...)■ [What did (Student A) do?] 10. Make a paper airplane for (. . .). [What did (Student A) do?] NOUNS. ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS ■ 371

■ EXERCISE 56— WRITTEN: Write complete sentences by adding direct objects and INDIRECT OBJECTS. 1. I wrote _ yesterday. 2. I sent _ last week. 3. Please pass _ . 4. The taxi driver opened _ 5. (...) gave _ . 6. Could you please pronounce _ _ 7. Could you please lend _ _ 8. (...) translated _ . 9. Could you please answer _ 10. My friend explained _ _ 11. I bought _ . 12. Could you please get _ _ ■ EXERCISE 57 — REVIEW: Choose the correct completion. 1.

This newspaper is yours. That newspaper is _ . A. our B. ours C, our's D. ours' 2. The teacher gave a test paper to every _ A. student B, students in the class. C, of student D. of students 3. Rosa is a _ woman. A. beautiful Mexican young C. Mexican beautiful young B. beautiful young Mexican D. young beautiful Mexican 4. _ the students in our class have dark hair. A. All most of C. B, Almost of D. Almost Almost all of 5. I handed _ . A. to the teacher my book B. my book to the teacher C. my book the teacher D. my book for the teacher 6. I had some _ soup for lunch, A. vegetable good B. good vegetables C. vegetables good D. good vegetable 372 ■ CHAPTER 8

7. Jack introduced me to one A. friends B. of his friend C. of his friends D. his friends 8. My name is Ernesto. A. father B. fathers C. fathers' D. father's 9. Ahmed pronounced A. for me his name C. his name to me B. me his name D. his name for me 10. books are these? A. Who's B. Whose C. Who D. Who are ■

EXERCISE 58 — ERROR ANALYSIS: Find and correct the mistakes.

1. I bought an airplane's ticket. Was expensive. 2. Some of those book's is mine. 3. Hiroki is a Japanese businessman. 4. There's an old big tree in our backyard. 5. Did you give to Jim my message? 6. The cat licked it's paw. 7. Everybody want to be happy. 8. One of the building on Main Street is the post office. 9. Whose that woman? 10. What are those peoples names? 11. Is the bedroom's window open? 12. Mr. and Mrs. Swan like their's apartment. Its large and comfortable. 13. I walk in the park every days. 14. Who's book is this? 15. I'm studying English. 16. Tina her last name Miller. NOUNS. ADJECTIVES. AND PRONOUNS ■ 373

17. Please explain me this sentence. 18. My roommate desks are always messy. 19. Could you pronounce me this word? 20. I know the name's of almost of the students' in my class. ■

EXERCISE 59— REVIEW: Play this game in small groups. Think of a noun. Describe this noun to your group by giving clues. Don't mention the noun. The group will guess the noun you're thinking of. Examples: student a: I'm thinking of a kind of plant. It's small and colorful. It smells good. group: A flower! STUDENT 11: group: I'm thinking of a person. She has short black hair. She's wearing a blue sweater and a black skirt today. That's too easy! Yoko!

STUDENT C: group: STUDENT C: group: I'm thinking of a very big cat. It's a wild animal. A lion! No. It's orange and black. It lives in Asia. It has stripes. A tiger! ■ EXERCISE 60 — REVIEW: Bring to class an object from your country. In a small group, describe your object and tell your classmates about it: What is it? How is it used? Why is it special? Answer questions from the group. When all of the groups finish discussing the objects, all of the objects should be brought to the center of the room. student A: Choose one of the objects. Ask questions about it. Find out w'ho it belongs to and what it is. (The owner of the object should NOT speak. People from the owner's group will give Student A the necessary information.) student B: Choose another one of the objects and ask questions. STUDENT c: Etc. After all of the objects have been discussed, choose five of them to write about. Write a short paragraph on each object. What is it? What does it look like? Whose it? What's it for? Why is it special? Why is it interesting to you? Etc. 374 ■

CHAPTER 8

8-20 MORE IRREGULAR VERBS become - became feed — fed bend — bent fight - fought bite - bit hide - hid build - built hold - held shake - shook ■ EXERCISE 61— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Practice using the irregular verbs in the above list, 1 . become - became 2. bend -bent 3. bite - bit 4. build -built 5 . feed - fed 6. fight - fought 7. hide - hid 8. hold -held 9. shake - shook When strangers meet, they can become friends, I met (. , .) (a length of time) ago, We became friends. What happened between (...) and me? When I drop something, I bend over to pick it up. I just dropped my pen, and then I bent over to pick it up. What did I do? Sometimes dogs bite people. Yesterday my friend's dog bit my hand while we were playing. What happened to my hand? I have some friends who know how to build houses. They built their own house next to the river. What did my friends do? I have a (dog, cat s parrot , etc.). I have to feed it every day. Yesterday I fed it once in the morning and once in the evening. What did I do yesterday? People fight in wars. People fight diseases. They fight for freedom and equality. My country fought a war (against another country in a time period}. What happened (in that time period)? I have a coin in my hand. Close your eyes while I hide it. Okay, open your eyes. I hid the coin, Where's the coin? Why don't you know? When it rains, I hold my umbrella. Yesterday it rained. I held my umbrella. What did I do yesterday? People sometimes shake their finger or their head. Sometimes they shake when they're cold. Right now I'm shaking my finger/my head. What did I just do? ■ EXERCISE 62: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. 1 . I (hide) _ my husband's birthday present in the closet yesterday. 2. A: Ow! B: What's the matter? A: I (bit) _ my tongue. 3. When I asked Dennis a question, he (shake) his head no. NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS ■ 375

4. A: I've lost touch with some of our childhood friends. What happened to Greg Jones? B: He (become) _ a doctor. A: What happened to Sandy Peterson? B: She (become) _ a lawyer. 5. I offered the child a red lollipop or a green lollipop. He (choose) _ the red one. 6. Doug is a new father. He felt very happy when he (hold) _ his baby for the first time. 7. Nancy and Tom saved money. They didn't buy a bookcase for their new apartment. They (build) _ one. 8. We saw a strong man at the circus. He (bend) _ an iron bar. 9. A: Why did the children fight? B: They (fight) _ because both of them wanted the same toy. 10. Diane is a computer programmer. Yesterday she (feed) _ information into the computer.

■ EXERCISE 63: Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs from the given list. become build hide bend feed hold bite fight ✓ shake

1. When my dog got out of the lake, it shook shake themselves when they're wet. itself. Dogs always 2. Many countries in the world in World War II. 3. Sometimes snakes _ people. My cousin Jake died after a poisonous snake _ him. 4. My daughter _ a table in her woodworking class in high school. 376 rn CHAPTER 8

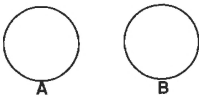
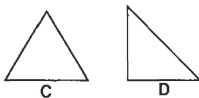

5. When Kathy dropped her pen, Sam _ over and picked it up for her. 6. The baby is sleeping peacefully. She's not hungry. Her mother _ her before she put her in bed. 7. Mike stole a spoon from the restaurant. He _ it in his pocket before he walked out of the restaurant. 8. David is a Canadian citizen. Maria was born in Puerto Rico, but when she married David, she _ a Canadian citizen too. ■

EXERCISE 64— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): In order to practice irregular verbs, answer yes. Example: Did you write a letter yesterday? Response: Yes, I did. I wrote a letter yesterday. 1 . Did you fly to (this city)? 2. Did you drink a cup of tea this morning? 3. Did you come to class yesterday? 4. Did you go downtown yesterday? 5. Did you eat breakfast this morning? 6. Did you lend some money to (. . .)? 7. Did you lose your pen yesterday? Did you find it? 8. Did you give your dictionary to (. . .)? 9. Did you throw your book to (. . .)? (...), did you catch it? 10. Did someone steal your wallet? Did you get it back? 11 . Did you wake up at seven this morning? 12. Did you get up at seven this morning? 13. Did the wind blow yesterday? 14. Did you shut the door? 15. Did class begin at (. . .)? 16. Did you say hello to (. . .)? 17. Did you tell (...) to sit down? (...), did you sit down? 18. Did you hear my last question? 19. Did you teach your daughter/son to count to ten? 20. Did you bring your books to class today? 21 . Did you forget your books? 22. Did you see (...) yesterday? 23. Did you meet (. . .)'s wife? 24. Did you leave your sunglasses at the restaurant? 25. Did you read the newspaper this morning? 26. Did you go shopping yesterday? 27. Did you drive your car to school today? 28. Did you ride a horse to school today? NOUNS. ADJECTIVES. AND PRONOUNS ■ 377

29. Did a barber cut your hair? 30. Did you run to class this morning? 31. Did your pen cost (an amount of money)? 32. Did you understand my question? 33. Did you come to class yesterday? 34. Did you make a mistake? 35. Did you take the bus to school today? 36. Did you write a letter yesterday? Did you send it? 37. Did the telephone ring? 38. Did you break your arm? 39. Did you shake your head? 40. Did you draw a picture? 41. Did you bend your elbow? 42. Did you win a million dollars? 43. Did you feel good yesterday? 44. Did you feed the birds at the park? 45. Did you bite your finger? 46. Did you hurt your finger? 47. Did you hold (. . .)'s hand? 48. Did you build a bookcase? 49. Did you stand at the bus stop? 50. Did you sing in the shower this morning? 51. Did you grow up in (country)? 52. Did you become an adult? 53. Did (name of a sports team) win yesterday? 54. Did you fall down yesterday? 55. Did you think about me yesterday? 56. Did you fight yesterday? 57. Which pen do you want? Did you choose this one? 58. Did you hide your money under your mattress? 59. Did your car hit a telephone pole yesterday? 60. Did you put your books under your desk? 378 rn CHAPTER 8

CHAPTER — — Making Comparisons 9- 1 COMPARISONS:
 USING THE SAME (AS), SIMILAR (TO), AND DIFFERENT (FROM)

■ EXERCISE 1— ORAL: Which of the pictures are the same, similar, or different? 1 . Are Pictures A and B the same? 2. Are Pictures A and C the same? 3. Are Pictures A and C similar? 4* Are Pictures A and C different? 5. Are Pictures C and D similar? 6. Are Pictures C and D different? MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 379

| THE SAME (AS) | SIMILAR (TO) | DIFFERENT (FROM) |
|--|--|--|
| <div>  </div> <p>A and B are <i>the same</i>.
 A is <i>the same as</i> B.</p> | <div>  </div> <p>C and D are <i>similar</i>.
 C is <i>similar to</i> D.</p> | <div>  </div> <p>E and F are <i>different</i>.
 E is <i>different from</i> F.</p> |

■ EXERCISE 2: Complete the sentences. Use the same (as), similar (to), and different (from) in your completions. 1. a is the same as _ e 2. d and e gre_similgr or: ore different* 3. c _ D. 4. B _ D. 5. B and D _ . 6. C and D _ . 7. A and F _ . 8. F and G _ . 9. F _ G. 10. G _ A and F, but _ C. ■ EXERCISE 3 — ERROR ANALYSIS: Find and correct the mistakes, 1 . A rectangle is similar a square. 2. Pablo and Rita come from same country. 3. Girls and boys are differents. Girls are different to boys. 4. My cousin is the same age with my brother. 5. Dogs are similar with wolves. 6. Jim and I started to speak at same time. *Similar gives the idea that two things are the same in some ways (e.g., both D and E have four edges) but different in other ways (e.g., D is a rectangle and E is a square). 380 m CHAPTER 9

■ EXERCISE 4: Answer the questions. 1 . Which of the figures are the same? 2. Is there at least one figure that is different from all the rest? 3. How many triangles are there in figure 1 ? (answer: Seven.) 4. How many triangles are there in figure 2? 5. How many triangles are there in figure 6? ■ EXERCISE 5— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Practice using the same (as), similar (to), and different (from). Example: Look at (. . .)'s clothes and (. . .)'s clothes. What is different about the clothes they are wearing today? Response: Their shoes are different. Mr. Lopez is wearing running shoes, and Mr. Gow is wearing sandals. 1. Look around the room. Name things that are the same, 2. Look around the room. Name things that are similar but not the same. 3. Find two pens that are the same length. Find two pieces of paper that are the same size. Find two notebooks that are different sizes. 4. Find two people in the class who are wearing (earrings). Are their (earrings) the same, similar, or different? 5. Who in the class has a (notebook, briefcase, bookbag) that is similar to yours? Does anyone have a (notebook, briefcase, bookbag) that is the same as yours? 6. Do any of the people in this room have the same hairstyle? Name two people who have similar hairstyles. 7. Whose shirt is the same color as yours today? Name some things in this room that are the same color. Name things that are similar colors. 8. Do any of the people in this room come from the same country? Who? Name two people who come from different countries. 9. Name an animal that is similar to a tiger. Name a bird that is similar to a duck. 10. Are Egypt and Italy on the same continent? Egypt and Algeria? Thailand and Korea? Mexico and Brazil? MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 381

9-2 COMPARISONS: USING LIKE AND ALIKE You have a ballpoint pen with blue ink, I have a ballpoint pen with blue ink, (a) Your pen is like my pen, (b) Your pen and my pen are alike. (c) Our pens are alike. like - similar to alike = similar Like and alike have the same meaning, but the sentence patterns are different:

This + be + like + that. This and that + be + alike. ■ EXERCISE

6: Complete the sentences with like and alike . 1 . You and I have similar books. In other words, your book is _ [ike _ mine. Our books are _ alike _ . 2. Mr. Chang and I have similar coats. In other words, Mr. Chang's coat is _ mine. Our coats are _ , _ . 3. Ken and Sue have similar cars. In other words, their cars are _ _ . 4. You and I have similar hats. In other words, your hat is _ mine, 5. A town is _ _ a city in some ways. 6. A foot and a hand are _ in some ways, but different in other ways. 7. A dormitory and an apartment building are _ in many ways. 8. A motorcycle is _ a bicycle in some ways. ■

EXERCISE 7— ORAL: Make sentences with like . Compare the things in Column A with the things in Column B, Discuss how the two things you are comparing are similar. Example: A pencil is like a pen in some ways. They are both writing instruments. COLUMN A an alley a bus a bush a cup a hill honey a monkey's hand an orange ✓ a pencil a sea a sofa a sports jacket COLUMN B a glass a human hand a lemon a chair a mountain an ocean ✓ a pen a street sugar a suit coat a taxi a tree 382 ■ CHAPTER 9

9-3 THE COMPARATIVE: USING -ER AND MORE Mary is 25 years old. John is 20 years old. (a) Mary is older than John. (b) Health is more important than money. (c) INCORRECT: Mary is more old than John. (d) incorrect: Health is more important than money. When we use adjectives (e.g., old, important) to compare two people or two things, the adjectives have special forms: In (a): we add -er to an adjective, or in (b): we use more in front of an adjective. The use of -er or more is called the comparative. Notice in the examples: than follows the comparative form: older than, more important than. ADJECTIVES WITH ONE SYLLABLE ADJECTIVE COMPARATIVE old older cheap cheaper big bigger Add -er to one-syllable adjectives. Spelling note: if an adjective ends in one vowel and one consonant, double the consonant: big-bigger, fat-fatter, thin-thinner, hot-hotter, ADJECTIVES THAT END IN -Y pretty prettier funny funnier If an adjective ends in -y, change the -y to i and add -er. ADJECTIVES WITH TWO OR MORE SYLLABLES famous more famous important more important interesting more interesting Use more in front of adjectives that have two or more syllables (except adjectives that end in -y). IRREGULAR COMPARATIVE FORMS good better bad worse far farther / further The comparative forms of good, bad, and far are irregular. ■ EXERCISE 8: Write the comparative forms for the following ADJECTIVES. 1. old older than 9. sweet 2. small 10. expensive 3. big 11. hot 4. important 12. cheap 5. easy 13. good 6. difficult 14. bad 7. lone 15. far 8. heavy 16. late MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 383

■ EXERCISE 9: Complete the sentences. Use the comparative form of the words in italics. 1. comfortable This chair is more comfortable than that chair. 2. large Your apartment is larger than mine. 3. warm It's warmer today than yesterday. 4. dark Tom's mustache is darker than Don's. 5. important Love is more important than money. 6. lazy I'm lazier than my roommate. 7. tall My brother is taller than I am.* 8. heavy Iron is heavier than wood. 9. difficult My physics course is more difficult than my math course. 10. good Nadia's English is better than her husband's. 11. long The Nile River is longer than the Mississippi. 12. intelligent A dog is less intelligent than a chicken. 13. good My wife's cooking is better than mine. 14. bad My cooking is worse than my wife's. 15. short My little finger is shorter than my middle finger. 16. pretty This dress is prettier than that one. 17. far Your apartment is farther from school than mine. 18. strong A horse is stronger than a person. 19. curly Ken's hair is curlier than mine. 20. beautiful A rose is more beautiful than a weed. ^Formal written English: My brother is taller than I (am). Informal spoken English: My brother is taller than me. 384 ■ CHAPTER 9

■ EXERCISE 10: Complete the sentences. Use the comparative form of the words in italics . 1. good 2. bad 3. funny 4. interesting 5. smart 6. famous 7. zoide 8. deep 9. confusing 10. hot 11. thin 12. far 13. good 14. easy 15. nervous The weather today is The weather yesterday was This story is _ This book is _ Joe is _ it was yesterday. _ it is today. _ that story. _ that book. A movie star is A highway is _ his brother. _ 1 am. an alley. The Pacific Ocean is This story is _ Thailand is _ the Mediterranean Sea. _ that story. _ Korea, A giraffe's neck is My house is _ . an elephant's neck, from downtown Reading a good book is My English class is _ your house is. . watching television. _ my history class. MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 385

The groom was _____
 at the wedding _____ the bride.



1 EXERCISE 1 1 — ORAL: Compare the following. Use the adjectivu in parentheses. Use more or - er . Example: A mouse is smaller than an elephant. 1 . a mouse 5. biology 9. this book an elephant chemistry that one (small) (interesting) (good) 2, my old shoes 6. I 10. the weather here my new shoes my brother the weather in my hometown (comfortable) (thin) (bad) 3. your hair 7. my hair 11. this chapter my hair her hair Chapter 8 (dark) (curly) (easy) 4. my arm 8. her hair 12. Japanese grammar your arm his hair English grammar (long) (straight) (difficult.) EXERCISE 12 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Practice comparative forms. A. Put several different books in a central place. Compare one to another, using the given adjectives. Example: big Response: This book is bigger than that book /that one. 1, large 5. difficult 9. expensive 2. interesting 6. easy 10. cheap 3. small 7. good 1 1 . thick 4. heavy 8. bad 12. important B. The following adjectives describe a man named Bob. A man named Jack does not have the same qualities. Draw pictures of Bob and Jack on the board. Compare Bob to Jack. Example: tall Response: Bob is taller than Jack. 1. tall 5. young 9. friendly* 2. strong 6. happy 10. responsible 3. lazy 7, kind 11. famous 4. intelligent 8. generous 12. busy *The comparative oi friendly has two possible forms; friendlier than or more friendly than. 386 ■ CHAPTER 9

EXERCISE 13: Complete the sentences. Use the comparative form of the words in the list (or your own words) . big easy important bright expensive intelligent cheap fast large cold high small comfortable hot sweet a lemon. 1 . An elephant is bigger than. (larger than) a mouse, 2. A lemon is sour. An orange is _ _ 3. The weather today is _ it was yesterday. 4. A diamond costs a lot of money. A diamond is a rubv. 5. I can afford a radio, but not a TV set. A radio is a TV set. 6. An airplane moves quickly. An airplane is _ _ 7. A lake is _ an ocean. 8. A person can think logically. A person is 9. Hills are low. Mountains are _ an automobile. an animal. . hills. 10. The sun gives off a lot of light. The sun is 1 1 . Texas is a large state, but Alaska is _ Texas. 12. Sometimes my feet hurt when I wear high heels. Bedroom slippers are shoes with high heels. 13. Arithmetic isn't difficult. Arithmetic is _ _ _ _ algebra. the moon. 14. Good health is . money. ■ \ t MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 387

■ EXERCISE 14 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Compare the following. Example: an elephant to a mouse Response: An elephant is bigger than a mouse 1. an orange to a lemon 2. a lake to an ocean 3. good health to money 4. a radio to a TV set 5. an airplane to an automobile 6. (Alaska) to (Texas) 7. a person to an animal 8. the sun to the moon 9. a mountain to a hill 10. arithmetic to algebra 11. a diamond to a ruby mouse / more intelligent than a mouse, etc. 12. bedroom slippers to high heels 13. a child to an adult 14. a horse to a person 15. the Nile River to the Mississippi River 16. your little finger to your ring finger 17. love to money 18. your hair to (. . .)'s hair 19. food in (your country) to food in (another country) 20. the weather today to the weather yesterday ■

EXERCISE 15— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Make sentences by using -er/more with these ADJECTIVES. Example: large Response: Canada is larger than Mexico. / My feet are larger than yours. / etc. 1. tall 11. small 2. important 12. intelligent 3. cold 13. big 4. curly 14. heavy 5. expensive 15. cheap 6. long 16. sweet 7. easy 17. high 8. comfortable 18. interesting 9. old 19. good 10. strong 20. bad ■

EXERCISE 16: Write a sentence by using -er/more with an adjective in the list in Exercise 15 above. Tear the sentence into pieces, with one word or phrase on each piece. Give the pieces to a classmate who will reassemble your sentence. Repeat this exercise several times, using a different adjective for each new sentence you write.

9-4 USING AS... AS; USING LESS

John is 21 years old. Mary is 21 years old. (a) John is as old as Mary, Notice the pattern: as + adjective + as In (a): Their ages are the same. (b) This watch is as expensive as that watch. In (b): The price of the watches is the same. Fred is 20 years old. Jean is 21 years old. (c) Fred isn't as old as Jean. (d) Fred is younger than Jean . (c) and (d) have the same meaning. (e) This book isn't as expensive as that book. (f) This book is cheaper than that book. (e) and (f) have the same meaning. (g) This book isn't as expensive as that book. (h) This book is less expensive than that book. (g) and (h) have the same meaning. Less is the opposite of more. Less is used with adjectives that have two or more syllables (except most adjectives that end in - y). Less is usually not used with onesyllable adjectives or adjectives that end in -y. incorrect: Fred is less old than Jean. CORRECT: Fred isn't as old as Jean. Fred is younger than Jean. ■

EXERCISE 17: Complete the following sentences by using as ... as and the adjective in italics. 1. tall Marv is 05 toll OS her brother. 2. sweet A lemon isn't an orange. 3. big A donkey isn't a horse. 4. friendly People in this city are the people in my hometown. 5. dark Paul's hair isn't his brother's. 6. cold The weather isn't today yesterday. 7. pretty This dress is that one. 8. expensive A pencil isn't a pen. MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 389

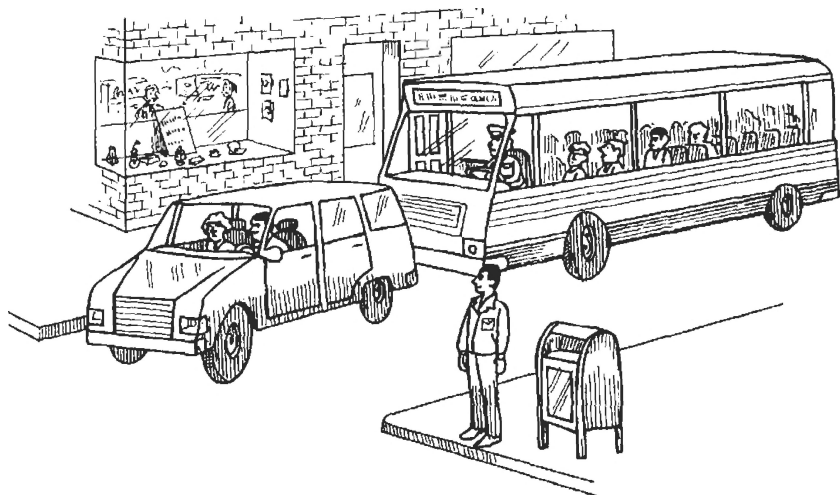
■ EXERCISE 18: Make sentences with the same meaning by using less, if possible. 1. This book isn't as expensive as that book. This book is less expensive than that book. 2. Bob isn't as old as Jim. " (no change) 3. Arithmetic isn't as difficult as algebra. 4. Arithmetic isn't as hard as algebra. 5. This chair isn't as comfortable as that chair. 6. This box isn't as heavy as that box. 7. A hill isn't as high as a mountain. 8. Swimming isn't as dangerous as boxing. 9. I'm not as tall as my brother. 10. This letter isn't as important as that letter. ■ EXERCISE 19: Make sentences with the same meaning by using as ... as with the adjective in parentheses. 1. Bob is younger than Sally, (old) y Bob isn 't as old. as Sally . 2. This book is less expensive than that one. (expensive) This book isn't as expensive as that one. 3. I'm shorter than my sister, (tall) 4. This exercise is more difficult than the last one. (easy) 5. My new shoes are less comfortable than my old shoes, (comfortable) 6. My little finger is shorter than my index finger, (long) 7. A radio is less expensive than a TV set. (expensive) 8. This book is worse than that book, (good) 390 ■ CHAPTER 9

9. My apartment is smaller than yours, (big) 10. In my opinion, chemistry is less interesting than psychology, (interesting)

■ EXERCISE 20: Make sentences with the same meaning by using as . . . as .

1. This room is smaller than that room. v This room isn't as big as that room.
2. An animal is less intelligent than a human being.
3. Soda pop is less expensive than fruit juice.
4. The Mississippi River is shorter than the Nile River.
5. Tom's pronunciation is worse than Sue's.
6. Algebra is more difficult than arithmetic.
7. Money is less important than good health.
8. American coffee is weaker than Turkish coffee.
9. A wooden chair is less comfortable than a sofa.
10. A van is smaller than a bus.

MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 391



■ EXERCISE 21— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Work in pairs. Practice making comparisons. student a: Your book is open. student b: Your book is closed. Respond in complete sentences. 'Example: Name something that is sweeter than an apple. student a: What's sweeter than an apple? / Can you name something that is sweeter than an apple? / Name something that is sweeter than an apple, student b: Candy is sweeter than an apple. 1. Name a country that is larger than Mexico. 2. Name a planet that is closer to or farther away from the sun than the earth, 3. Name someone in the class who isn't as old as (I am, you are). 4. Name an animal that is more dangerous than a zebra. 5. Name an animal that is as dangerous as a wild tiger. 6. Name a bird that is larger than a chicken. 7. Name something that is more expensive than a diamond ring. 8. Name something that is less expensive than (an object in this room). 9. Name someone who is more famous than (name of a famous person), Szoilch roles. 10. Name something that is more interesting than (name of a field of study). 1 1. Name something that is less important than good health. 12. Name a place that is as far away from here as (name of a place). 13. Name an ocean that is smaller than the Pacific Ocean. 1 4. Name an animal that is stronger than a horse. 15. Name an animal that isn't as strong as a horse. 16. Name a game that is, in your opinion, more exciting than (name of a sport). 17. Name a sport that is less popular internationally than (name of a sport). 18. Name a place that is more beautiful than this city. ■ EXERCISE 22: Complete the following with your own words. 1 . I'm taller _ 2. I'm not as old _ _ 3. A monkey isn't as big _ _ _ 4. American food isn't as good _ 5. An ocean is deeper and wider _ _ _ 6. An apple is less expensive _ 7. It's warmer / colder today _ 8. _ 's hair isn't as curly _ 9. A hill isn't as high _ 392 ■ CHAPTER 9

10. A dog is less intelligent _ but more intelligent 1 1 . _ 's hair is darker _ 12. A hotel room is less comfortable _ 1 3. Moonlight isn't as bright _ 14. Money is less important _ 15. English grammar isn't as difficult _ 16. Earth is closer to the sun _ 17. Venezuela isn't as far south _ 18. Tokyo isn't as far north _ 19. People in _ are friendlier 20. Children are less powerful _ 9-5 USING BUT (a) John is rich, but Mary is poor. But gives the idea that "This is the opposite of that." (b) The weather was cold, but we were A comma usually precedes but. warm inside our house. B EXERCISE 23: Complete the following sentences by using adjectives. 1 . An orange is sweet, but a lemon is SOUr. _ 2. The weather is hot today, but it was _ yesterday. 3. These dishes are clean, but those dishes are _ 4. This suitcase is heavy, but that suitcase is _ 5. My hair is light, but my brother's hair is _ 6. These shoes are uncomfortable, but those shoes are _ 7. Linda is tall, but her sister is _ 8. This street is narrow, but that street is _ MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 393

9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24.
25. This exercise is easy, but that exercise is _ My old apartment is
big, but my new apartment is _ This food is good, but that food is _
A chicken is stupid, but a human being is _ Smoke is visible, but
clean air is _ This answer is right, but that answer is _ This towel is
dry, but that towel is _ This cup is full, but that cup is _ This street is
noisy, but that street is _ "This picture is ugly, but that picture is _
This sentence is confusing, but that sentence is _ This car is safe,
but that car is _ A kitten is weak, but a horse is _ This watch is
expensive, but that watch is _ Tom is hard-working, but his
brother is _ My apartment is messy, but Bob's apartment is always A
pillow is soft, but a rock is _ _ ... _ 394 ■ CHAPTER 9



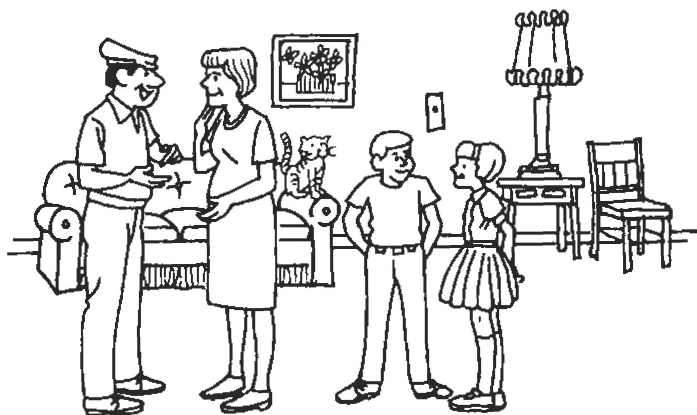
9-6 USING VERBS AFTER BUT AFFIRMATIVE VERB + but
+ NEGATIVE verb Often the verb phrase following but is (a) John
is rich. but Mary isn't. shortened, as in the examples. (b) Balls are
round. but boxes aren't , (c) I was in class. but Po wasn't. (d) Sue
studies hard. but Sam doesn't. (

15. Mike doesn't write clearly but Ted _ 16. I ate breakfast this morning, but my roommate 17. Carol has a car, but Jerry _ 18. Jerry doesn't have a car, but Carol _ 19. Ron was at the party, but his wife _ 20. Ron went to the party, but his wife _ 21. Ellen can speak Spanish, but her husband _ 22. Boris can't speak Spanish, but his wife _ 23. I won't be at home tonight, but Sue _ 24. Ken will be in class tomorrow, but Chris _ 25. Amy won't be here tomorrow, but Alice _

■ EXERCISE 25— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Practice using but Example: teacher: STUDENT A: teacher: STUDENT B: teacher: STUDENT c: Who in the class was at home last night? Who wasn't at home last night? Who was at home last night? I was. Who wasn't at home last night? I wasn't at home last night. Summarize, using but. (Ali) was at home last night, but (Kim) wasn't. 1. Who wears glasses? Who doesn't wear glasses? 2. Who is married? Who isn't married? 3. Who didn't watch TV last night? Who watched TV last night? 4. Who will be in class tomorrow? Who won't be in class tomorrow? 5. Who has a car? Who doesn't have a car? 6. Who studied last night? Who didn't study last night? 7. Who can play fa musical instrument)? Who can't play (that musical instrument)} 8. Who is hungry right now? Who isn't hungry right now? 9. Who lives in an apartment? Who lives in a house or in a dorm? 10. Who doesn't drink coffee? Who drinks coffee? 1 1 . Who won't be at home tonight? Who will be at home tonight? 1 2. Who was in class yesterday? Who wasn't in class yesterday? 13. Who can't speak (a language)} Who can speak (a language)} 14. Who didn't stay home last night? Who stayed home last night? 15. Who has (a mustache)? Who doesn't have (a mustache)? 396 m CHAPTER 9

■ EXERCISE 26: Picture A and Picture B are not the same. There are many differences between A and B. Can you find all of the differences? Example: There's a wooden chair in Picture A, but there isn't a chair in B. • EXERCISE 27 — ERROR ANALYSIS: Find and correct the mistakes. 1. My cousin is the same tall as my brother. 2. A blue whale is more large from an elephant. 3. A dog is less small as a wolf. 4. Your handwriting is more better than mine. 5. Robert and Maria aren't same age. Robert is more young than Maria. 6. A lake isn't as deep than an ocean. MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 397

A



B EXERCISE 28 — WRITTEN: Write about one or more of the following topics. 1. Write about this city. Compare it to your hometown. 2. Write about your present residence. Compare it to a past residence. For example, compare your new apartment to your old apartment. 3. Write about two members of your family. Compare them. 4. Write about two animals. Compare them. 5. Write about two countries. Compare them.

CHECKLIST OF WORDS
USHD IX COMPARISONS the same (as) like -erf more similar (co) alike less different (from) as . . . as but I 9-7 **THE SUPERLATIVE:**
USING -EST AND MOST (a) comparative: My thumb is shorter than my index finger. (b) superlative: My hand has five fingers. My thumb is the shortest (finger) of all. The comparative (-er/more) compares two things or people. The superlative (-est/most) compares three or more things or people.

ADJECTIVE COMPARATIVE
SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES WITH old older (than) the oldest (of all) **ONE SYLLABLE** big bigger* (than) the biggest (of all) **ADJECTIVES THAT** pretty prettier (than) the prettiest (of all) **END IN -Y** easy easier (than) the easiest (of all) **ADJECTIVES WITH** expensive more expensive (than) the most expensive (of all) **TWO OR MORE SYLLABLES** important more important (than) the most important (of all) **IRREGULAR** good better (than) the best (of all) **FORMS** bad worse (than) the worst (of all) far farther* further (than) the farthest/furthest (of all)

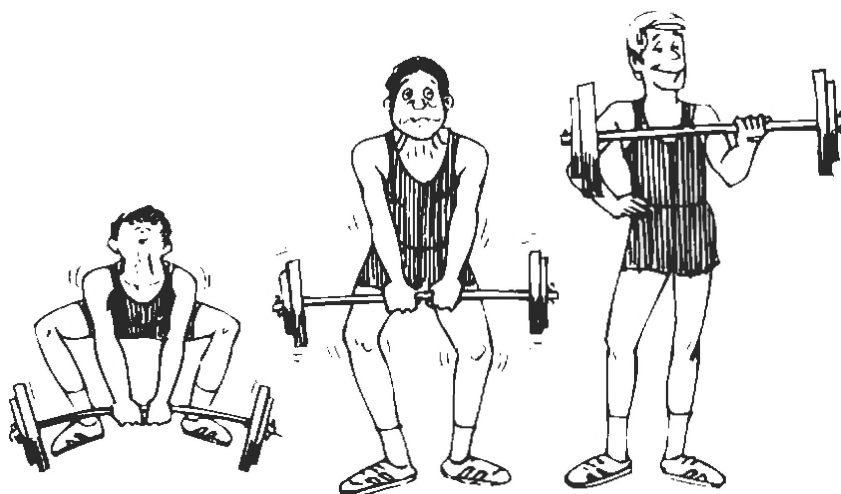
398 ■ **CHAPTER 9**

■ EXERCISE 29: Write the comparative and superlative forms of the following adjectives. comparative superlative
 1. long longer (than) _ the longest L olaR) 2. small _ 3. heavy _ 4. comfortable _ 5. hard _ 6. difficult _ 7. easy _ 8. hot* _ 9. cheap _ 10. interesting _ 11. pretty _ 12. strong _ 13. good _ 14. bad _ 15. far _ . ■ EXERCISE 30: Complete the sentences. Use the correct form of the adjectives in italics. 1. large 2. long 3. interesting 4. h igh 5. tall _ The l_Qrge\$ t _ city in Canada is Toronto. T he Nile is _ river in the world. I'm taking four classes. My history class is _ of all, Mt. McKinley in Alaska is _ mountain in North America. The Sears Tower is _ building in Chicago. ^Spelling note: If an adjective ends in one vowel and one consonant, double the consonant to form the superlative: big-biggest, fat-fa ties i, thin-t/iinttesL hoi-hot test. MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 399

6. big Lake Superior is America. lake in North 7. short 8. far 9. beautiful 10. bad 11. good 12. comfortable February is . Pluto is _ month of the year. In my opinion, Seattle is city in the United States. In my opinion, Harry's Steak House is _ restaurant in the city. In my opinion, the Doghouse Cafe has food in the city. Ken is sitting in room. planet from the sun. chair in the 13. fast _ way to travel is by airplane. 14. good When you feel depressed, laughter is _ medicine. 15. large 16. small 17. expensive 18. easy 19. important 20. famous Asia is _ continent in the world. Australia is _ _ continent in the world. Sally ordered _ food on the menu for dinner last night. Taking a taxi is _ way to get to the airport. I think good health is _ thing in life. The Gateway Arch is _ landmark in St. Louis, Missouri. 400 ■ CHAPTER 9

■ EXERCISE 31: Make at least four statements of comparison about each group of pictures. A. COMPARE THE SIZES OF THE THREE BALLS. 1. 2. 3. 4. The golf ball is smaller than the soccer ball. The soccer ball is smaller than the baseball. The baseball isn't as big as the soccer ball. B. COMPARE THE AGES OF THE CHILDREN. TOMMY HELEN ANN (3 years old) (6 years old) (8 years old) 5. 6. 7. 8. Ann is younger than Tommy. Helen is older than Ann. Helen and Ann are younger than Tommy. MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 401

C. COMPARE THE HEIGHTS OF THE THREE WOMEN.
 LINDA KAREN ALICE is the tallest is the shortest. is taller than _ but
 9. 10. 11. shorter than 12. isn't as tall as . D. COMPARE THE
 STRENGTH OF THE THREE MEN. MIKE JOE DON 13. 14. 15. 16.
 402 rn CHAPTER 9



E. COMPARE THE PRICES OF THE THREE VEHICLES. 17.
18. 19. 20. F. COMPARE HOW GOOD THE THREE TEST PAPERS
ARE. 21. 22. 23. 24. MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 403

G. COMPARE HOW INTERESTING (TO YOU) THE THREE BOOKS LOOK. 25. 26. 27. 28. | EXERCISE 32: Complete the sentences. Use the correct form (comparative or superlative) of the adjectives in *italics*. 1. long 2. long 3. large 4. large 5. high 6. high 7. big 8. small 9. large 10. big 11. large The Yangtze River is the Mississippi River. The Nile is river in the world. The Caribbean Sea is the Mediterranean Sea. The Caribbean Sea is sea in the world. Mt. Everest is mountain in the world. Mt. Everest is Mt. McKinley. Africa is North America. Europe is South America. Asia is continent in the world. Canada is the United States in area. Indonesia is Japan in population 404 m CHAPTER 9

12. good Fruit is _ for your health _ candy. 13. good The student cafeteria has _ _ roast beef sandwiches in the city. 14. comfortable I have a pair of boots, a pair of sandals, and a pair of running shoes. The sandals are _ _ the boots, but the running shoes are _ _ _ of all. 15. easy This exercise is _ that one. This is one of _ exercises in the book. 16. bad There are over 800 million people in the world who don't get to eat. With few exceptions, poverty and hunger are _ in rural areas than in cities and towns. 9-8 USING ONE OF + SUPERLATIVE + PLURAL NOUN (a) The Amazon is one of the longest rivers in the world. (b) A Rolls Royce is one of the most expensive cars in the world. (c) Alice is one of the most intelligent people in our class. The superlative often follows one of. Notice the pattern: one of + superlative + plural noun See Chart 8-5 for more information about one of ■ EXERCISE 33: Make sentences about the following. Use one of + superlative + plural noun. 1 . a high mountain in the world -*■ Mt. McKinley is one of the highest mountains in the world. 2. a pretty park in (this city) -* Forest Park is one of the prettiest parks in St. Louis. 3. a tall person in our class -*■ 'la led is one of the tallest people* in our class. 4. a big city in the world 5. a beautiful place in the world 6. a nice person in our class 7. a long river in the world * People is usually used instead of persons in the plural. MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 405

8. a good restaurant in (this city) 9. a famous landmark in the world 10. an important event in the history of the world ■

EXERCISE 34— WRITTEN: Make sentences using one of + superlative + plural noun. Example: a big city in Canada Written: Montreal is one of the biggest cities in Canada. 1. a big city in Asia 2. a large state in the U.S. 3. a beautiful city in the world 4. a friendly person in our class 5. a good place to visit in the world 6. a famous person in the world 7. an important thing in life 8. a bad restaurant in (this city) 9. a famous landmark in (name of a country) 10. a tall building in (this city) 11. a dangerous sport in the world 12. a serious problem in the world ■ EXERCISE 35 —

ORAL: Discuss the questions. 1 . How many brothers and sisters do you have? Are you the oldest? 2. Who is one of the most famous movie stars in the world? 3. In your opinion, what is the most exciting sport? 4. What is one of the most interesting experiences in your life? 5. In your opinion, what is the most beautiful place in the world? 6. What is one of the most important inventions in the modern world? 7. What is one of the worst experiences of your life? 8. What are the best things in life? 9. What was the happiest day of your life — or one of the happiest days of your life? 10. Who are the most important people in your life today? 406 m CHAPTER 9

■ EXERCISE 36: Take this quiz. If you don't know an answer, guess. After you take the quiz, form small groups to discuss the answers. You can figure out the correct answers by looking at the Table of Statistics on page 410. PART 1 . What is the longest river in the world? A. the Yangtze B. the Amazon C. the Nile D. the Mississippi 2. Is the Amazon River longer than the Mississippi River? A. yes B. no 3. Is the Yangtze River longer than the Mississippi River? A. yes B. no 4. Is the Yangtze River as long as the Nile River? A. yes B. no 5. Which two rivers are almost the same length? A. the Nile and the Amazon B. the Amazon and the Yangtze C. the Nile and the Mississippi D. the Mississippi and the Amazon

PACIFIC OCEAN BRAZIL SOUTH i AMERICA L-y , 3*0 PAULO ATLANTIC OCEAN J MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 407



PART II 6. What is the largest sea in the world? A. the Mediterranean Sea B. the South China Sea C. the Caribbean Sea 7. Is the South China Sea the smallest of the three seas listed above? A. yes B. no PART III 8. What is the deepest ocean in the world? A. the Atlantic Ocean B. the Indian Ocean C. the Pacific Ocean 9. Is the Indian Ocean larger than the Atlantic Ocean? A. yes B. no PART IV 10. Below is a list of the continents in the world. List them in order according to size, from the largest to the smallest. Africa Europe Antarctica North America Asia South America Australia (1) _ (the largest) (2) _ (3) _ (4) _ (5) _ Asia (6) _ (7) _ (the smallest) 408

■ CHAPTER 9

PARTV 1 1 . Which of the following cities is the largest in population in the world? A. New York City, U.S.A. B. Seoul, Korea C. Mexico City, Mexico D. Tokyo, Japan 12. Is the population of Sao Paulo, Brazil, larger than the population of New York City, U.S.A.? A. yes B. no 13. Is the population of Sao Paulo, Brazil, larger than the population of Seoul, Korea? A. yes B. no 14. What is the largest city in North America? A. Mexico City B. New York City PART VI 1 5. Which of the following countries is the largest in area in the world? A. Canada B. China C. the United States D. Brazil 16. Which of the following two countries is larger in area? A. Canada B. Brazil 17. Which of the following countries is the largest in population in the world? A. India B. China C. the United States D. Indonesia 18. Which of the following two countries is larger in population? A. India B. Indonesia 19. Which of the following two countries is larger in population? A. the United States B. Brazil 20. Which of the following two countries is smaller in population? A. Egypt B. Japan

MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 409

TABLE OF STATISTICS PART I RIVER LENGTH the Amazon River 3,915 miles the Mississippi River 2,348 miles the Nile River 4,145 miles the Yangtze River 3,900 miles PART II SEA SIZE the Caribbean Sea 970,000 square miles the Mediterranean Sea 969,000 square miles the South China Sea 895,000 square miles PART III OCEAN SIZE AVERAGE DEPTH Atlantic Ocean 33,420,000 square feet 1 1,730 feet Indian Ocean 28,350,500 square feet 12,598 feet Pacific Ocean 64,186,300 square feet 12,925 feet PART IV CONTINENT SIZE Africa 11,707,000 square miles Antarctica 5,500,000 square miles Asia 17,129,000 square miles Australia 2,942,000 square miles Europe 4,057,000 square miles North America 9,363,000 square miles South America 6,886,000 square miles PART V CITY POPULATION* Mexico City, Mexico 28 million New York, U.S.A. 15 million Sao Paulo, Brazil 25 million Seoul, Korea 22 million Tokyo, Japan 30 million PART VI COUNTRY AREA POPULATION* Brazil 3,286,470 sq mi 180 million Canada 3,851,809 sq mi 29 million China 3,691,000 sq mi 1,250 million ** Egypt 386,650 sq mi 65 million India 1,269,339 sq mi 960 million Indonesia 788,430 sq mi 205 million Japan 145,740 sq mi 128 million the United States 3,615,123 sq mi 268 million • Approximate population in the year 2000. ** 1 > 250 million is said as "one billion, two hundred fifty million," (It can also be said as "one thousand, two hundred and fifty million" in old-fashioned British English.) 410 ■ CHAPTER 9

9-9 ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS adjective (a) Ann is a careful driver. adverb (b) Ann drives carefully. ADJECTIVE careful slow quick easy ADVERB carefully slowly quickly easily An adjective describes a noun. In (a) : careful describes driver , An adverb describes the action of a verb. In (b): carefully describes drives. Most adverbs are formed by adding -ly to an adjective. adjective The adjective form and the (c) John is a fast driver. fast fast adverb form are the same for hard hard fast, hard , early , late . adverb early early (d) John drives fast. late late adjective Well is the adverb form of (e) Linda is a good writer. good well good * adverb (f) Linda writes well. *Well can also be used as an adjective to mean “not sick/1 Paul was sick last zueek, but now he's well

EXERCISE 37: Complete the sentences by using the adjective or adverb in italics . 1 . quiet, quietly My hometown is small and CfUiCt _ 2. quiet, quietly 3. clear, dearly 4. clear, clearly 5. careless , carelessly Mr. Wilson whispered. He spoke Anna pronounces every word _ We like to go boating in _ quietly weather. Boris makes a lot of mistakes when he writes. He's a writer. 6. careless > carelessly 7. easy, easily 8. easy, easily 9. goody well 10. good, well Boris writes _ . The teacher asked an _ question. I answered the teacher's question _ . You speak English very _ * Your English is very _ .

MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 47 7

B EXERCISE 38: Complete the sentences by using the correct form (adjective or adverb) of the word in *italics*. 1. careful 2. correct 3. correct 4. fast 5. quick 6. fast 7. neat 8. neat 9. hard 10. hard 11. honest 12. slow 13. careless 14. quick 15. early 16. early 17. good 18. good Do you drive _ ? Carmen gave the _ answer to the question. She answered the question _ . Mike is a _ reader. Alike reads _ . Mike reads _ . Barbara has _ handwriting. It is easy to read what she writes. Barbara writes _ . I study _ . The students took a _ test. Roberto answered the question _ . Karen and Fumiko walked through the park _ , I made some _ mistakes in my last composition. We were in a hurry, so we ate lunch _ . Last night we had dinner _ because we had to leave for the theater at 6:00. We had an _ dinner last night. 412 ■ CHAPTER 9

Jake has poor eyesight. He can't see

_____ without
his glasses.

David is kind, generous,
and thoughtful. He is a

_____ person.



19. loud 20. slow, clear I speak _ because he has trouble hearing. Kim speaks English _ . when I talk to my grandfather _ and _ .

EXERCISE 39: Complete the sentences by using the correct form (adjective or adverb) of the word in *italics*. 1. good 2. fast 3. quick 4. fast 5. soft 6. easy 7. hard 8. clear 9. late 10. safe 11. hard 12. hard 13. late 14. easy 15. quiet 16. fast 17. honest 18. honest 19. good 20. good

Did you sleep . Anita is a _ She learns everything . Ahmed walks too _ Please speak _ This is an _ It rained _ Our teacher explains everything . Spiro came to class _ The plane arrived at the airport . Ms. Chan is a _ She works _ I paid my telephone bill . Ron lifted the heavy box . Olga entered the classroom . she was late for class. Mike talks too . Shelley is an „ She speaks _ last night? learner. _ I can't keep up with him. The children are asleep. exercise. . yesterday. . yesterday. worker. .. He's very strong. _ because I can't understand him. person. I trust her completely. I didn't understand the teacher's explanation very _ _ We had a _ _ time at the party' last night.

MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 413

21. good Linda speaks but she doesn't write 22. fluent Nadia speaks French * Exception: early- earlier- earliest. ■

EXERCISE 40: Complete the sentences by using the correct form (comparative; or SUPERLATIVE) of the ADVERBS in italics. 1. late Karen got home later than Alice (did). 2. quickly I finished my work Tom (did), 3. beautifully Gina sings Susan (does). 4. beautifully Ann sings of all. 5. hard My sister works I (do). 6. hard My brother works of all. 7. carefully My husband drives I (do) 8. early We arrived at the party the Smiths (did) . 9. early The Wilsons arrived at the party of all. 414 ■ CHAPTER 9

9-10 MAKING COMPARISONS WITH ADVERBS

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (a) Kim speaks <i>more fluently</i> than Ali (does).
(b) Anna speaks <i>the most fluently of all</i> . | COMPARATIVE
<i>more fluently</i>
<i>more slowly</i>
<i>more quickly</i> | SUPERLATIVE
<i>the most fluently</i>
<i>the most slowly</i>
<i>the most quickly</i> | Use more and most with adverbs that end in <i>-ly</i> .* |
| (c) Mike worked <i>harder</i> than Sam (did).
(d) Sue worked <i>the hardest of all</i> . | <i>harder</i>
<i>faster</i>
<i>earlier</i>
<i>later</i> | <i>the hardest</i>
<i>the fastest</i>
<i>the earliest</i>
<i>the latest</i> | Use -er and -est with irregular adverbs: hard , fast , early , late . |
| (e) Rosa writes <i>better</i> than I do.
(f) Kim writes <i>the best of all</i> . | <i>better</i> | <i>the best</i> | Better and best are forms of the adverb <i>well</i> . |

10. well You can write I (can). 1 1 . well Ken can write of all. 12. dearly Anita pronounces her words Tina (does) 13. fast I work Jim (does). 14. fast Toshi finished his work of all. 1 5 . loudly Ali speaks Yoko (does,) 16. fluently Sue speaks Spanish r (do). 17. fluently Ted speaks Spanish of all. 1 DC A snail moves a crab (does).

■ EXERCISE 41: Use the correct form (adjective or adverb, comparative or superlative) of the words in italics , 1. careful 2. beautiful 3. neat 4. neat 5. neat 6. neat 7. heavy 8. dear Karen drives more carefully thgn A tiger is _ Paul's apartment is _ Peter's apartment is _ You write _ Ann writes _ This suitcase is _ This author explains her ideas _ her brother does. _ a goat. _ mine. _ of all. _ I do. _ of all. _ that one. _ that author. MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 475



9. good 10. good 11. good 12. hard 13. hard 14. long 15. late 16. clear 17. sharp 18. artistic 19. slow 20. dangerous I like rock music . My husband can sing . My daughter can sing . Sue studies _ Jean studies _ classical music. _ I can. _ of all. . Fred. . of all. Almost universally, wives work _ _ hours than their husbands because women take primary responsibility for household chores and child-rearing. Robert usually goes to bed his roommate. Anna pronounces her words _ of all the students in the class. A razor is usually _ My son is _ I eat _ a kitchen knife. _ my daughter. A motorcycle is . . my husband does. _ a bicycle. 9- 11 USING AS... AS WITH ADVERBS (a) Bob doesn't study as hard as his brother (does). (b) I didn't finish my work as quickly as Sue (did). (c) Yoko can speak English as well as Tony (can). Notice the pattern in the examples: as + adverb + as (d) Em working as fast as I can. (e) Em working as fast as possible. (f) Alex came as quickly as he could. (g) Alex came as quickly as possible. Notice the patterns in the examples: as + adverb + as is frequently followed by subject + can! could or by possible. ■ EXERCISE 42: Complete the sentences. Compare John to your classmates or yourself. 1 . John is lazy. He doesn't work as hard OS Yoko (docs). / OS i (do). 2. John is a reckless driver. He doesn't drive as carefully _ 3. I can't read John's handwriting. He doesn't write as neatly _ 4. John goes to bed late. He doesn't go to bed as early _ 416 U CHAPTER 9

5. John was the last person to finish the test. He didn't finish it as quickly _ 6. John speaks softly. He doesn't speak as loudly _ 7. John is never in a hurry. He takes his time. He doesn't walk as fast _ 8. John is an insomniac. He doesn't sleep as well _ 9. John rarely studies. He doesn't study as hard _ ■ EXERCISE 43 — ORAL: Change the sentences by using as ... as + possible or can/could. Example: Please come early. Response: Please come as early as possible, / Please come as early as you can. Example : (...) walked fast. Response: Surasuk walked as fast as possible. / Surasuk walked as fast as he could. 1 . Please come quickly. 2. (...) came quickly. 3. Please write neatly. 4. I opened the door quietly. 5. Please come soon. 6. (...) came soon. 7. Pronounce each word clearly. 8. Do you study hard? 9. When (...) saw a mean dog, he/she ran home fast. I write to my parents often. (...) is working fast. Please give me your homework soon. I'll get home early. (...) answered the question well. I'll call you soon. (...) goes swimming often. Please finish the test soon. I'll pay my telephone bill soon. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. ■ EXERCISE 44 — REVIEW: Choose the correct completion. A lion is A. similar a tiger. B. similar with C. similar from D. similar to Lions and tigers are A. the same B. similar C. similar to D. the same as 3. Good health is one of _ in a person's life. A. best thing C. the best things B. the best thing D. best things 4. There were many chairs in the room. I sat in _ chair. A. the comfortablest C. most comfortable B. the most comfortable D. more comfortable MAKING COMPARISONS 477

5. Jane's story was _ Jack's story. A. funnier than B. funny than C. more funnier than D. more funny 6. My last name is . A. same my cousin s. B. same from C. same as D. the same as 7. I live _ A. far away from school than you do. B. farther C. more far D. farthest 8. ALi speaks _ than Hamid. A. more clearly B. clearlier C. more clear D. more clearer 9. The weather in Canada _ the weather in Mexico. A. is less hot than C. is hotter B. isn't as hot as D. isn't hot 10. Robert works hard every day, but his brother _ . A. is B. isn't C. does D, doesn't ■ EXERCISE 45— ERROR ANALYSIS: Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences. 1. Your pen is alike mine. 2. Kim's coat is similar with mine. 3. Jack's coat is same mine. 4. Soccer balls are different with basketballs. 5. Soccer is one of most popular sports in the world. 6. Green sea turtles live more long from elephants. 7. My grade on the test was worst from yours. You got a more better grade. 8. A monkey is intelligenter than a turtle. 9. Africa isn't as large than Asia. 10. Pedro speaks English more fluent than Ernesto. 11. The exploding human population is the most great threat to all forms of life on earth. 12. The Mongol Empire was the bigger land empire in the entire history of the world. 418 ■ CHAPTER 9

■ EXERCISE 46— ORAL REVIEW (BOOKS CLOSED): Pair up with a classmate. student a: Your book is open. student b: Your book is closed. Respond in complete sentences. 1 . What's the longest river in the world? 2. What's the biggest continent? What's the second biggest continent? 3. What country has the largest population? 4. Is a square the same as a rectangle? 5. Name a country that is farther south than Mexico. 6. Name an animal that is similar to a horse. 7. Name a place that is noisier than a library. 8. Is a dormitory like an apartment building? How are they different? How are they similar? 9. Is (. . .)'s grammar book different from yours? 10. What is one of the most famous landmarks in the world? Switch roles. 11. Is the population of Seoul, Korea, larger or smaller than the population of Sao Paulo, Brazil? 12. Is the Atlantic Ocean deeper than the Indian Ocean? 13. What's the smallest continent in the world? 14. Name two students in this class who speak the same native language. Do they come from the same country? 15. Look at (. . .) and (...). How are they different? 16. Is a lake like a river? How are they different? How are they similar? 17. Name an insect that is smaller than a bee. 18. Name a city that is farther north than Rome, Italy. 19. What is the most popular sport in your country? 20. What is one of the most important inventions in the modern world? Why is it more important than (name of another invention).

■ EXERCISE 47— REVIEW: Write about or talk about things and people in this room. Orally or in writing, compare things and people you see in the classroom right now. Look at this thing and that thing, and then compare them. Look at this person and that person, and then compare them. ■ EXERCISE 48— REVIEW: Write about one or more of the following topics. 1 . Write about your family. Compare the members of your family. Include yourself in the comparisons. (Who is younger than you? Who is the youngest of all? Etc.) 2. Write about your childhood friends when you were ten years old. Compare them. Include yourself in the comparisons. (Who could run faster than you? Who could run the fastest of all? Etc.) 3. What are your three favorite places in the world? Why? Compare them. 4. What are the roles of health, money, and love in your life? Compare them. MAKING COMPARISONS ■ 419

CHAPTER 10 Expressing Ideas with Verbs 10-1 USING SHOULD (a) My clothes are dirty. I should wash them. (b) Tom is sleepy. He should go to bed, (c) You're sick. You should see a doctor. Should means "This is a good idea. This is good advice." (d) / \ You She He > should go. h We They) Should is followed by the simple form of a verb. INCORRECT: He should goes. incorrect: He should to go. (e) You should not leave your grammar book at home. You need it in class. (f) You shouldn't leave your grammar book at home. NEGATIVE: should not contraction: should + not - shouldn't ■ EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentences. Begin the sentences with " You should . . . Use the expressions in the list or your own words. buy a new pair of shoes call the landlady go to the bank go to the immigration office ✓ go to the post office go to bed and take a nap see a dentist study harder 1 . A; I want to mail a package. B: You should go to the post office 420 ■ CHAPTER 10



CHAPTER 10

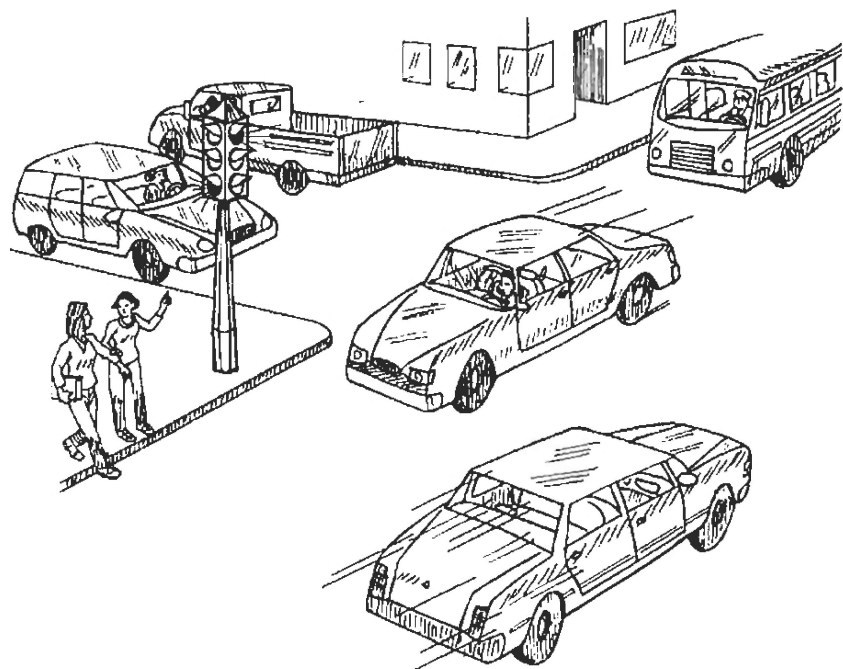
Expressing Ideas with Verbs

2. A: I'm sleepy. B: _ 3. A: I need to cash a check. B: _ 4. A: I have a toothache. B: _ 5. A: I'm flunking all of my courses at school. B: _ 6. A: The plumbing in my apartment doesn't work. B: _ 7. A: I need to renew my visa. B: _ 8. A: My shoes have holes in the bottom. B: _ ■ EXERCISE 2: Complete the sentences. Use should or shouldn't. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. Students _ should Students _ _ shouldn't _ We _ It's raining. You _ leave. Jimmy, you _ People _ Your plane leaves at 8:00. You 7:00. Life is short. We _ You _ bothers other people. _ come to class every day. _ cut class. waste our money on things we don't need. _ take your umbrella when you _ pull the cat's tail! _ be cruel to animals. _ get to the airport by _ waste it. smoke in a public place because the smoke EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■ 421

10. We _ cross a street at an intersection, We jaywalk. 11. When you go to New York City, you _ see a play on Broadway. 12. You _ walk alone on city streets after midnight. It's dangerous. 13. When you go to Bangkok, you _ visit the Floating Market. 14. When you go to a football game, you _ throw things on the Field. ■

EXERCISE 3— ORAL: In groups of four, give advice using should and shouldn't. Student A should request advice first, then Student B, etc. 1. student a: English is not my native language. What advice can you give me about good ways to learn English? 2. student b: I am a teenager. What advice can you give me about being a good person and living a happy life? 3. student c: I am a newcomer. What advice can you give me about going to this school and living in this city? 4. student d: I have a job interview tomorrow. What advice can you give me about going to a job interview? ■ EXERCISE 4 —

WRITTEN: Write about your hometown. Use a separate piece of paper. I'm a tourist. I'm going to visit your hometown. Is your hometown a good place for a tourist to visit? Why? What should I do when I'm there? Where should I go? What should I see? What shouldn't I do? Are there places I shouldn't visit? Will I enjoy my visit? Write a composition in which you tell me (a tourist) about your hometown. 422 ■ CHAPTER 10



10-2 USING LET'S (a) Bob: What should we do tonight?
 Let's (do something) = I have a suggestion for you and Ann: Let's
 go to a movie. me. (lei 's - let us) Bob: Okay. In (a): Let's go to a
 movie — / think we should go 10 a (b) Sue: I'm tired. movie. Do
 you want to go to a movie? Don: I'm tired, too. Let's take a break .
 Sue: That's a good idea! ■ EXERCISE 5: Complete the dialogues.
 Use let's. Use the expressions in the list or your own words. eat go
 to a seafood restaurant get a cup of coffee go to the zoo go dancing
 ✓ leave at six- thirty go to Florida walk go to a movie 1 . A: What
 time should we leave for the airport? B: Let's leave at six -thirty. _ A:
 Okay. 2. A: Where should we go for our vacation? B: _ A: That's a
 good idea. 3. A: Where do you want to go for dinner tonight? B: _ 4.
 A: The weather is beautiful today. _ B: Okay. Great! 5. A: I'm bored.
 _ B: I can't. I have to study. 6. A: Should we take the bus downtown
 or walk downtown? B: It's a nice day. _ 7. A: Dinner's ready! The
 food's on the table! B: Great! _ I'm starving! EXPRESSING IDEAS
 WITH VERBS ■ 423

8. A: Where should we go Saturday night? B: _ A: Good idea! 9. A: We have an hour between classes. _ B: Okay. That sounds like a good idea. ■ EXERCISE 6— ORAL: Pair up with a classmate. Practice using let's. student a: Your book is open. Say the words in the book. student b: Your book is closed. Use let's in your response. student a: Respond to Student B's suggestion. Example: student a: student b: student a: It's a beautiful day today. What should we do? It's a beautiful day today. What should we do? Let's go to Woodland Park Zoo. Great! What a good idea! Let's go! 1 . What time should we go out to dinner tonight? 2. When should we go to (name of a place)? 3. What should we do this evening? 4. I want to do something fun tomorrow. Switch roles. 5. What should we do tomorrow? It's a holiday, and we don't have to go to class. 6. I'm bored. Think of something we can do. 7. My plane leaves at six. What time should we leave for the airport? 8. It's (name of a classmate's) birthday tomorrow. Should we do something special for him/her? 424 ■ CHAPTER 10

10-3 USING HAVE + INFINITIVE (HAS TO / HAVE TO)

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) People need to eat food.</p> <p>(b) People have to eat food.</p> <p>(c) Jack needs to study for his test.</p> <p>(d) Jack has to study for his test.</p> | <p>(a) and (b) have basically the same meaning.</p> <p>(c) and (d) have basically the same meaning.</p> <p>Have + infinitive has a special meaning: it expresses the same idea as need.</p> |
| <p>(e) I had to study last night.</p> | <p>PAST FORM: had + infinitive.</p> |
| <p>(f) Do you have to leave now?</p> <p>(g) What time does Jim have to leave?</p> <p>(h) Why did they have to leave yesterday?</p> | <p>QUESTION FORM: do, does, or did is used in questions with have to.</p> |
| <p>(i) I don't have to study tonight.</p> <p>(j) The concert was free. We didn't have to buy tickets.</p> | <p>NEGATIVE FORM: do, does, or did is used with have to in the negative.</p> |

■ EXERCISE 7— ORAL: Answer the questions. 1 . What do you want to do today? 2. What do you have to do today? 3. What do you want to do tomorrow? 4. What do you have to do tomorrow? 5. What does a student need to do or have to do? 6. Who has to go shopping? Why? 7. Who has to go to the post office? Why? 8. Who has to go to the bank? Why? 9. Where do you have to go today? Why? 10. Where do you want to go tomorrow? Why? 11. What did you have to do yesterday? Why? 12. Did you have responsibilities at home when you were a child? What did you have to do? 11 . If you're driving a car and the traffic light turns red, what do you have to do? 12. What do you have to do before you cross a busy street? 13. Do you have to learn English? Why? 14. Who has a job? What are some of the things you have to do when you're at work? 15. What kind of job did you have in the past? What did you have to do when you had that job? ■ EXERCISE 8 — ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Use have to/has to. Use because. Example : go downtown / buy some new shoes STUDENT a: I have to go downtown because I have to buy some new shoes. TEACHER: Why does (Student A) have to go downtown? STUDENT B: (Student A) has to go downtown because he/she has to buy some new shoes. 1 . go to the drugstore / buy some toothpaste 2. go to the grocery store / get some milk 3. go shopping / get a new coat 4. go to the post office / mail a package 5. stay home tonight / study grammar 6. go to the hospital / visit a friend 7. go to the bank / cash a check 8. go downtown / go to the immigration office 9. go to the bookstore / buy a notebook 10. go to (name of a store in the city) / buy (a particular thing at that store) EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■

■ EXERCISE 9: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. Use a form of has /have + infinitive in all the completions.

1. A: Jack can't join us for dinner tonight. B: Why not? A: (he, work) He has to work _____. B: (he, work) Does he have to work tomorrow night too? If he doesn't, maybe we should postpone the dinner until then.
2. A: Why (you, go) _____ to the library later tonight? B: (I, find) _____ some information for my research paper.
3. A: It's almost four-thirty. What time (Sue, leave for) _____ the airport? B: Around five, (she, he) _____ at the airport at six-fifteen.
4. A: Why did you go to the bookstore after class yesterday? B: (I, buy) _____ some colored pencils. A: Oh? Why (you, buy) _____ colored pencils? B: I need them for some drawings I plan to do for my botany class.
5. A: (I, go) _____ to the store. B: Why? A: Because (I, get) _____ some rice and fresh fruit.
6. A: Kate didn't come to the movie with us last night. B: Why? A: Because (she, study) _____ for a test.
7. A: What time (you, be) _____ at the dentist's office? B: Three. I have a three o'clock appointment.
8. A: (Tom, find) _____ a new apartment? B: Yes, he does. He can't stay in his present apartment.
9. A: (Yoko, not, take) _____ another English course. Her English is very good. B: (you, take) _____ another English course? A: Yes, I do. I need to study more English.

426 m CHAPTER 10

10. A: Was Steve at home yesterday evening? B: No. (he, slay) _ late at the office. B: Why? A: (he, finish) _ a report for his boss.

10-4 USING MUST (a) People need food. People have to eat food. (a) and (b) have the same meaning: (b) People need food. People must eat food. must eat -- have to eat (C) / \ Must is followed by the simple form of a verb. You She incorrect: He must works. He f,) must work. incorrect: He must to zwork . It We They / (d) You must not be late for work if you must not - Don't do this! You don't have a choice. want to keep your job. (e) You don't have to go to the movie don't have to = It's not necessary, but you have a with us if you don't want to. choice. Compare the following examples. Notice the difference between should and must. MUST SHOULD SOMETHING IS VERY IMPORTANT, something is a good idea, but you have a SOMETHING IS NECESSARY. YOU DO NOT CHOICE. HAVE . \ CHOICE. (f) I must study tonight. Pm going to take (g) 1 should study tonight. I have some a very important test tomorrow. homework to do, but I'm tired. I'll study tomorrow night. I'm going to go to bed now*. (h) You must take an English course. You (i) You should take an English course. It will cannot graduate without it. help you. (j) Johnny, this is your mother speaking. You (k) Johnny, you should eat your vegetables. must eat your vegetables. You can't leave They're good for you. You'll grow' up to be the table until you eat your vegetables. strong and healthy.

EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■ 427

■ EXERCISE 10: Complete the sentences. Use must. Use the expressions in the list. close the door behind you pay an income tax go to medical school read English newspapers and magazines ✓ have a driver's license speak English outside of class every day have a library card stop have a passport study harder listen to English on the radio and TV talk to myself in English make new friends who speak English take one pill every six hours 1. According to the law * a driver must have a driver's license. 2. If a traffic light is red, a car _ 3. If you want to check a book out of the library, you _ 4. Nancy has a job in Chicago. She earns a good salary. According to the law, she 5. I failed the last two tests in my biology class. According to my professor, I 6. I want to travel abroad. According to the law, I 7. If you want to become a doctor, you _ 8. John's doctor gave him a prescription. According to the directions on the bottle, John _ 9. Jimmy ! It's cold outside. When you come inside, you 10. I want to improve my English. According to my teacher, I

MiOTOWN
 PHARMACY 305 auin ST. 321-5*77 Me 94122-36 Or Hjnstn r&kt
 one every s'ia hoars. John Smith PbrviCi*f,r\ 500 mg. * according
 to the law - the law says. 428 ■ CHAPTER 10

■ EXERCISE 11— ORAL: Answer the questions. 1. When must you have a passport? 2. If you live in an apartment, what is one thing you must do and one thing you must not do? 3. Name one thing a driver must do and one thing a driver must not do. 4. If you are on an airplane, what is one thing you must do and one thing you must not do? 5. Name something you must have a ticket for. Name something you don't have to have a ticket for. ■ EXERCISE 12: Choose the correct completion. 1 . If you want to keep your job, you _ be late for work. It is necessary for you to be on time. A. must not B. don't have to C. doesn't have to 2. My office is close enough to my apartment for me to walk to work. I _ take a bus. I only take a bus in bad weather. A. must not B. don't have to C. doesn't have to 3. Some schools require schoolchildren to wear uniforms to school, but my children's school doesn't require uniforms. My children _ wear uniforms to school. A. must not B. don't have to C. doesn't have to 4. Jimmy, it is very important to be careful with matches! You _ play with matches. A. must not B. don't have to C. doesn't have to EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■ 429

5. Jack is twenty-four, but he still lives with his parents. That saves him a lot of money. For example, he _ pay rent or buy his own food. A. must not B. don't have to C. doesn't have to 6. The water in that river is badly polluted. You _ drink it. A. must not B. don't have to C. doesn't have to _ 7. If you have a credit card, you _ pay for a purchase in cash. You can charge it. A. must not B. don't have to C. doesn't have to 8. When an airplane is taking off, you have to be in your seat with your seat belt on. You _ stand up and walk around when an airplane is taking off. A. must not B. don't have to C. doesn't have to 10-5 MODAL AUXILIARIES (a) Anita / / can \ couldn't may might \ go to class. must should ^ w ill j An auxiliary is a helping verb. It comes in front of the simple form of a main verb. The following helping verbs are called "modal auxiliaries": can > could , may , might , must should \ will would. They are followed by the simple form of a verb (without to). (b) Anita ' (is able to \ is going to / go to class. (has to } Expressions that are similar to modal auxiliaries are: be able to > be going to , have to * ■ EXERCISE 13: Add to where necessary. If to is not necessary, write "X." 1 . My sister can X play the guitar very well. 2. We have to pay our rent on the first of the month. 3. Could you please _ open the window? Thanks. 4. I wasn't able _ visit my friends yesterday because I was busy. 5. You shouldn't _ drink twenty cups of coffee a day. 6. Will you _ be at the meeting tomorrow? 7. Does everyone have _ be at the meeting? 8. You must not _ miss the meeting. It's important. 430 ■ CHAPTER 10

9. Jennifer might not _ be there tomorrow. 10. May I _ use your telephone? 11. We couldn't _ go to the concert last night because we didn't have tickets. 12. Can you play a musical instrument? 13. What time are you going _ arrive? 14. It may _ be too cold for us to go swimming tomorrow. *See the following charts for more information: can* Charts 7-1 and 7-2; could , Chart 7-4; may and might Chart 6-10; must Chart 10-4; should , Chart 10-1; will Charts 6-5, 6-6, and 6-10; would Chart 7-14; be able to. Chart 7-12; be going to Chart 6-1; has/have/had to , Chart 10-3.

EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■ 437

10-6 SUMMARY CHART: MODAL AUXILIARIES AND SIMILAR EXPRESSIONS

| AUXILIARY* | MEANING | EXAMPLE |
|--------------------------|------------------|---|
| (A) can | ability | I <i>can</i> sing. |
| | polite question | <i>Can</i> you please help me? |
| (b) could | past ability | I <i>couldn't</i> go to class yesterday. |
| | polite question | <i>Could</i> you please help me? |
| (c) may | possibility | It <i>may</i> rain tomorrow. |
| | polite question | <i>May</i> I help you? |
| (d) might | possibility | It <i>might</i> rain tomorrow. |
| (e) must | necessity | You <i>must</i> have a passport. |
| (f) should | advisability | You <i>should</i> see a doctor. |
| (g) will | future happening | My sister <i>will</i> meet us at the airport. |
| (h) would | polite question | <i>Would</i> you please open the door? |
| (i) be able to | ability | I <i>wasn't able to</i> attend the meeting. |
| (j) be going to | future happening | Tina <i>is going to</i> meet us at the airport. |
| (k) has / have to | necessity | I <i>have to</i> study tonight. |
| (l) had to | past necessity | I <i>had to</i> study last night too. |

■ EXERCISE 14— ORAL: In small groups, give responses to the following. Each person in the group should give a different response. Example: STUDENT A: STUDENT B: STUDENT C: STUDENT D: Name something you had to do yesterday. I had to go to class. I had to go to the post office to buy some stamps. I had to study for a test. Etc. 1. Name something you can do. 2. Name something you couldn't do yesterday. 3. Name something you may do tomorrow, 4. Name something you might do tomorrow, 5. Name something you must do this week. 6. Name something you have to do today. 7. Name something you don't have to do today. 8. Name something you should do this evening. 9. Name something you will do this evening. 10. Name something you are going to do this week. 11. Name something you weren't able to do when you were a child. 12. Name something you had to do when you were a child. 13. You want to borrow something from a classmate. Ask a polite question with could. 14. You want a classmate to do something for you. Ask a polite question with would. 15. A classmate has something that you want. Ask a polite question with may. 16. Name something that may happen in the world in the next ten years. 17. Name something that (probably) won't happen in the world in the next ten years. 18. Name some things that this school should do or shouldn't do to make the school a better place for students. ■

EXERCISE 15— ERROR ANALYSIS: Find and correct the mistakes in the following, 1. Would you please to help me? 2. I will can go to the meeting tomorrow. 3. Ken should writes us a letter. 4. I have to went to the store yesterday. 5. Susie! You must not to play with matches! 6. May you please hand me that book? 432 ■ CHAPTER 10

7. Ann couldn't answered my question. 8. Shelley can't goes to the concert tomorrow. 9. Let's to go to a movie tonight. B

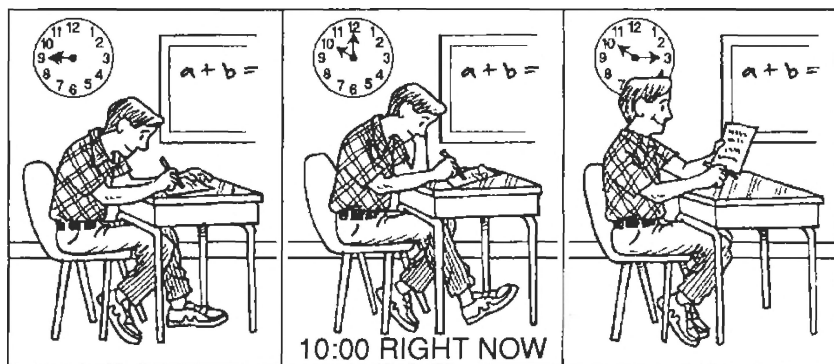
EXERCISE 16 — REVIEW OF VERBS: Choose the correct completion.

1. 2. 3. Tom _ every day. A. shaves B. is shaving _ go to class every day? A. Are you B. Do you have Yoko _ to be here tomorrow. A. will B. may C. has to shaves C. Do you C. is going 4. Jack _ be in class yesterday. A. didn't B. can't C. couldn't 5. Fatima _ to her sister on the phone yesterday. A. spoke B. can speak 6. I _ my rent last month. A. might pay B. will pay 7. Shh. Ken. A, talks . on the phone right now. B. can talk C. speaks C. paid C. is talking 8. I want to go to a movie tonight, but I _ home and study. A. should stay B. stayed C. stay 9. We to the zoo tomorrow. A. will going B. might go C. will can go 10. I in class right now. A. sit B. am sitting c. sitting

EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■ 433

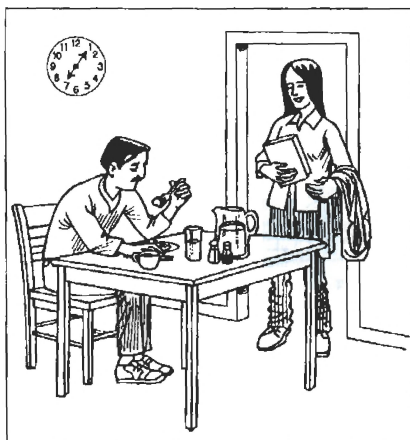
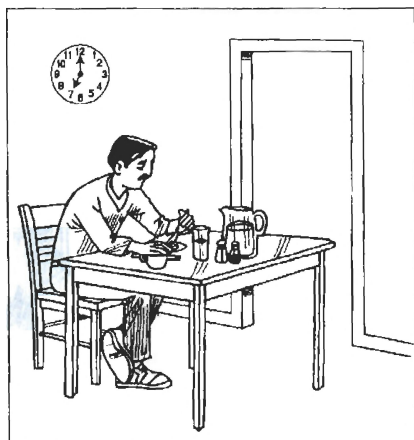
I 10-7 THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE AND THE PAST PROGRESSIVE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE (right now) (a) It's 10:00 now. Boris is sitting in class. The present progressive describes an activity in progress right now, at the moment of speaking. See Chart 3- 1 . In (a); Right now it is 10:00. Boris began to sit before 10:00. Sitting is in progress at 10:00. PAST PROGRESSIVE (in progress yesterday) The past progressive describes an activity in progress at a particular time in the past. (b) It was 10:00. Boris was sitting in class. In (b): Boris began to sit in class before 10:00 yesterday. At 10:00 yesterday, sitting in class was in progress. PRESENT PROGRESSIVE FORM: AM, IS , ARE + -/ING The forms of the present progressive and the past (c) It's 10:00. I am sitting in class. progressive consist of be + - ing . Boris is sitting in class. The present progressive uses the present forms of be: am* is, and are + -ing. PAST PROGRESSIVE FORM: WAS, WERE + -ING The past progressive uses the past forms of be: was (d) It was 10:00. Boris was sitting in class. We were sitting in class. and were + -ing. Boris was sitting in class yesterday at ten o'clock.

434 ■ CHAPTER 10



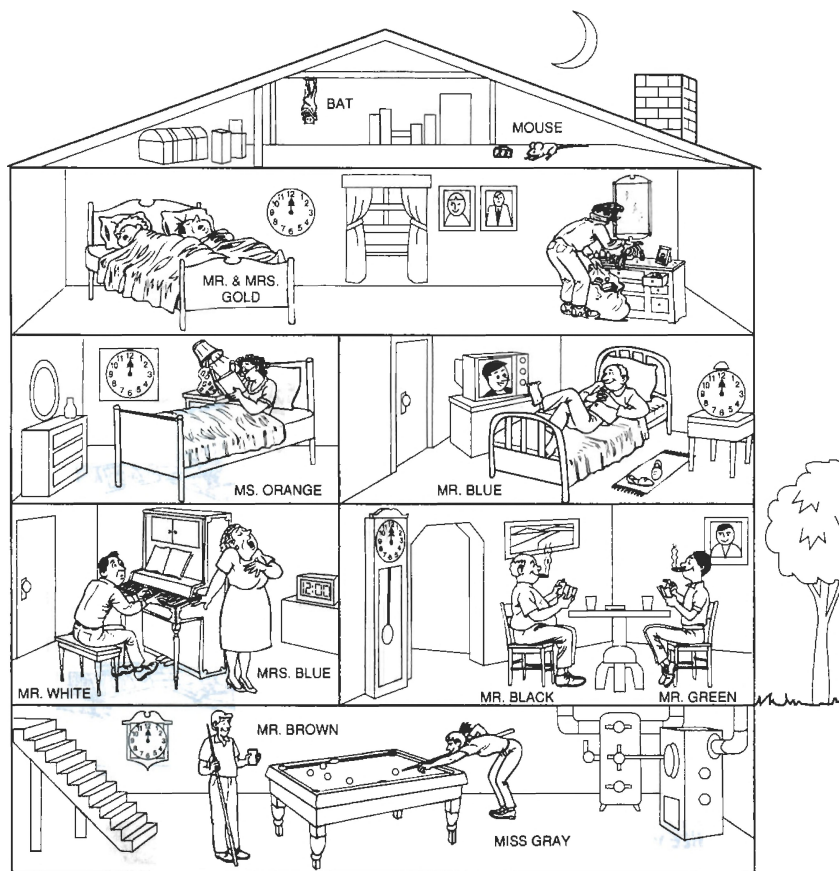
Boris **is sitting** in class right now at ten o'clock.

■ EXERCISE 17: Complete the sentences. Use a form of be + sit. 1. i Q/77 sitting 2. i was sitting 3. You _ 4. You _ 5. Tony _ _ 6. He _ 7. We _ 8. We _ 9. Rita _ 10. She _ 11. Rita and Tony _ 12. They _ in class right now. in class yesterday too. in class right now. in class yesterday too. in class right now. in class yesterday too. in class today, in class yesterday too. in class now. in class yesterday too. in class today, in class yesterday too. EXERCISE 18: Use the words in parentheses to complete the sentences. Discuss the meaning of the phrase "in progress." 1 . Paul started to eat dinner at 7:00. At 7:0i, Mary came. Paul (eat) _ when Mary (come) _ at 7:0i> . EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■ 435



2. Bobby was at home yesterday evening. His favorite program was on television last night. It started at 8:00. It ended at 9:00. At 8:30, his friend Kristin called. When Kristin (call) _ at 8:30, Bobby (watch) _ _ TV. 3. Rosa played her guitar for an hour yesterday morning. She started to play her guitar at 9:30. She stopped at 10:30. Mike arrived at her apartment at 10:00. At 10:00, Rosa (play) _ her guitar. 436 ■ CHAPTER 10

■ EXERCISE 19— ORAL: Look at the pictures. Use the past progressive to describe the activities that were in progress. Mr. and Mrs. Gold invited several friends to their house for the weekend. A thief stole Mrs. Gold's jewelry at midnight on Saturday. What were the guests doing at midnight? EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS * 437



1 0-8 USING WHILE WITH THE PAST PROGRESSIVE (a)

The phone rang while I was sleeping, or: while + subject 4- verb - a time clause (b) While I was sleeping, the phone rang. While I was sleeping is a time clause. A WffYc-clause describes an activity that was in progress at the time another activity happened. The verb in a while-e\ause is often past progressive (e.g. ? was sleeping). ■

EXERCISE 20— ORAL: Combine the sentences. Use while . 1 . I was studying last night. Rita called. While I was studying last night, Rita called . Rita called while I teas studying last night . 2. Someone knocked on my apartment door. I was eating breakfast yesterday morning. 3. 4. 5. 6. I was studying last night. A mouse suddenly appeared on my desk. Yoko raised her hand. The teacher was talking. A tree fell on my car. I was driving home yesterday. 438 ■

CHAPTER 10

I was cooking dinner yesterday evening.

I burned my hand.

I was studying last night.

A mouse suddenly appeared
on my desk.

Yoko raised her hand.

The teacher was talking.

A tree fell on my car.

I was driving home yesterday.



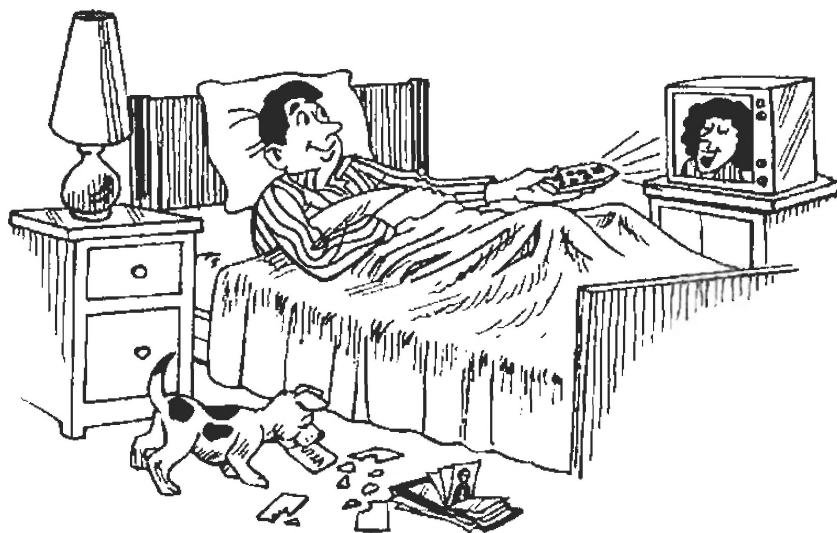
10-9 WHILE vs. WHEN IN PAST TIME CLAUSES

- (a) The mouse appeared *while I was studying*. OR:
- (b) *While I was studying*, the mouse appeared.
- (c) *When the mouse appeared*, I was studying. OR:
- (d) I was studying *when the mouse appeared*.

The verb in a *while*-clause is often past progressive, as in (a) and (b).

The verb in a *when*-clause is often simple past, as in (c) and (d).

■ EXERCISE 21: Complete the sentences. Use the past progressive in the twW/e-clauses. Use the siMPLl past in the w/i en-clauses. 1. While i (wash) was washing _ dishes last night, I (get) got _ a phone call from my best friend. 2. When my best friend (call) _ last night, I (wash) _ _ _ dishes. 3. My friend Jessica (come) _ while I (eat) _ _ dinner last night. 4. I (eat) _ _ _ dinner when my friend Jessica (come) _ last night. 5. Jason (wear) _ a suit and tie when I (see) _ him yesterday. 6. My roommate came home late last night. I (sleep) _ when she (get) _ home. 7. When Gina (call) _ last night, I (take) _ a bubble bath. 8. While I (watch) _ TV last night and (relax) _ after a long day, my new puppy (take) _ my wallet from my bedside table. EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■ 439



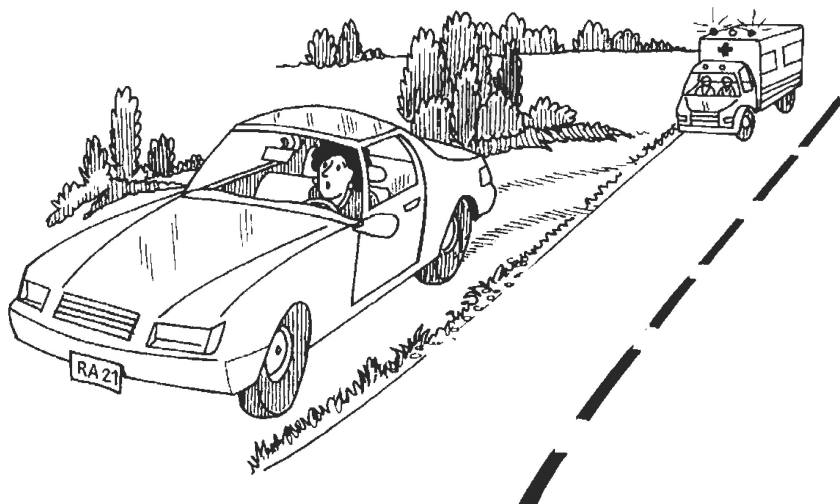
■ EXERCISE 22 — ORAL: Perform and describe actions using io/**7e-clauses or tu/ien-clauses. student a: Perform your action. Use the present progressive to describe what you are doing. Continue to perform the action. student b: Perform your action, then stop. student A: After Student B stops, you stop too. Example: teacher; student a: TEACHER; STUDENT B: teacher: STUDENT C: A; erase the board B; open the door (Student A), what are you doing? I'm erasing the board right now. (Student B), would you please open the door? (Student B opens the door.) Thank you, You may both sit down again. (Student C), will you please describe the two actions we saw? While (Student A) was erasing the board, (Student B) opened the door. (Student A) was erasing the board when (Student B) opened the door. or: 1 . A: Write on the board. B: Drop a book on the floor. 2. A; Walk around the room, B; Say hello to (Student A). 3. A: Look out the window. B; Take (Student A)'s grammar book. 4. A: Draw a picture on the board, B: Ask (Student A) a question. 440 ■ CHAPTER 10

10-10 SIMPLE PAST vs. PAST PROGRESSIVE

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>(a) Jane called me yesterday.
 (b) I talked to Jane for an hour last night.
 (c) We went to Jack's house last Friday.
 (d) What time did you get up this morning?</p> | <p>The simple past describes activities or situations that began and ended at a particular time in the past (e.g., <i>yesterday, last night</i>).</p> |
| <p>(e) I was studying when Jane called me yesterday.
 (f) While I was studying last night, Jane called.</p> | <p>The past progressive describes an activity that was in progress (was happening) at the time another action happened. In (e) and (f): The studying was in progress when Jane called.</p> |
| <p>(g) I opened my umbrella when it began to rain.</p> | <p>If both the <i>when</i>-clause and the main clause in a sentence are simple past, it means that the action in the <i>when</i>-clause happened first and the action in the main clause happened second. In (g): First, it began to rain; second, I opened my umbrella.</p> |
| <p>COMPARE
 (h) When the phone rang, I answered it.
 (i) When the phone rang, I was studying.</p> | <p>In (h): First, the phone rang; second, I answered it.
 In (i): First, the studying was in progress; second, the phone rang.</p> |

EXERCISE 23: Complete the sentences. Use the simple past or the past progressive. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. I (have) . a busy day yesterday. I (go) _ . to _ lunch with my brother after class. to the airport to pick up my cousin. I class in the morning. I (eat) _ In the afternoon, I (drive) _ (lake) _ her to a restaurant for dinner. After dinner, we (go) _ back to my apartment and (zcatch) _ a movie on TV. After the movie, we (talk) _ hours before we (go) _ to bed. While I (walk) _ _ for a couple of . Abdullah. We (say) . to class yesterday morning, I (see) _ hello and (walk) I (eat) . (remember) _ the airport. While I (drive) . an accident. While my cousin and I (have) . restaurant last night, we (see) _ the rest of the way to school together. _ lunch with my brother when I suddenly _ ____ my promise to pick my cousin up at to the airport, I (see) . . dinner at the . a friend of mine. I (introduce) When I (hear) . her to my cousin. _ a knock at the door last night, I (walk) to the door and (open) it. When I (open) . (greet) _ the door, I (see) . him and (ask) . my brother. I _ him to come in. My cousin and I (watch) a movie on TV last night when my brother (come) He (zcatch) the end of the movie with us. EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■ 447

EXERCISE 24: Complete the sentences. Use the simple past or the past progressive. 1 . Mrs. Reed (mnrn) _ on the radio in her car while she (drive) _ home yesterday. She (listen) _ to some music when she suddenly (hear) a siren. When she (look) in her rearview mirror, she (see) . an ambulance behind her. She immediately to the side of the road and (ivait) _ 2. I her car for the ambulance to pass. a strange experience yesterday. I (read) _ my book on the bus when a man (sit) money. I (want, nor) down next to me and (hand) . me some very confused. I (stand) _ his money. I (be) _ up and (walk) . toward the door of the bus. While I (wait) _ for the door to open, the man (offer) _ me some money again. When the door (open) I (get) _ off the bus quickly. I still don't know why he was trying to give me money. 442 m CHAPTER 10



3. A: I (be) _ at my friends' house last night. While we (eat) _ dinner, their cat (jump) _ _ on the table. My friends (seem, not) _ _ _ to care, but I lost my appetite. B: What (you, say) _ ? A: Nothing. B: Why (you, ask, not) _ your friends to get their cat off the table? A: I (lean, not) _ _ to be impolite. B: I think your friends were impolite to let their cat sit on the table during dinner. ■

EXERCISE 25 — REVIEW: Choose the best completion. 1. I was watching TV. I heard a knock on the door. When I heard the knock on the door, I _ it. A. open C. opened B. am opening D. was opening 2. "When _ you talk to Jane?" "Yesterday." A. do B. should C. did D. were 3. I _ TV7 when Gina called last night. We talked for an hour. A. watch C. was watching B. watched D. am watching EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■ 443



4. Mike is in his bedroom right now, He A. is sleeping B. sleeps _ , so we need to be quiet. C. slept D. was sleeping 5. Kate _ tell us the truth yesterday. A. don't B. doesn't She lied to us. C. didn't D. wasn't 6. I saw a fish while I in the ocean yesterday. A. swim C. were swimming B. was swimming D. was swimming When I heard the phone ring, I it. A. answer C. answered B. am answering D. was answering 8. " _ you go to concerts often?" "Yes. I go at least once a month." A. Do B. Did C. Was D. Were 9, While I _ dinner last night, I burned my finger. A. cooking B. cook C. was cooking D. was cook "Where after work yesterday?" A. you went B. you did go C. did you went D. did you go 10-11 USING HAVE BEEN (THE PRESENT PERFECT) SITUATION: 1 came to this city' on February 1st. It is now April 1st. I am still in this city. (a) I have been here since February 1st. (b) I have been here for two months. situation: Kim came to this city on January 1st. It is now April 1st. Kim is still in this city. (c) Kim has been here since January . (d) Kim has been here for three months. Have been expresses the idea that a situation began in the past and still exists at present. Have been is used with since or for to tell how long the situation has existed, (a) and (b) have the same meaning. Third person singular = has been , as in (c) and (d). situation: I came to the classroom at nine o'clock. Since is followed by a specific time : I am in the classroom now. It's nine-thirty now. since February (specific month) (e) I have been here since nine o' clock. since nine o'clock (specific clock time) (f) I have been here for 30 minutes. since 1995 (specific year) situation: Ann lives in another city. She came to For is followed by a length of time : visit me Monday morning. Now it is Friday for tzvo months (number of months) morning. She is still here. for 30 minutes (length of clock time) (g) Ann has been here since Monday . for four days (number of days) (h) Ann has been here for four days. for three years (number of years) 444 ■ CHAPTER 10

■ EXERCISE 26: Complete the sentences with since or for.

1. I came to this city six months ago. I am still here. I have been in this city for _ _ six months. 2. Kim has been in this city Since _ January. 3. It's now two o'clock. Carmen has been in class _ one o'clock. 4. Carmen has been in class _ an hour. 5. Erica has been a teacher _ 1994. 6. Mr. Gow has been a plumber _ 20 years. 7. My parents are visiting me this week. They have been here _ five days. 8. They have been here _ last Saturday. 9. India has been an independent nation _ 1947. 10. I have been awake _ six o'clock this morning. 11. My friend is very ill. She has been in the hospital _ four days. 12. I hope the weather gets warmer soon. It's been cold and rainy _ two weeks. ■ EXERCISE 27: Complete the following with your own words. Example: a. Today is _ Monday March 4 b. I came to this city in January or; two months ago ■ c. I have been in this city since _ January _ . d. I have been in this city for _ two months _ . Example: a. Today is _ Monday March 2 b. I came to this city _ on Friday, March 7 or 1 three days ago . c. I have been in this city since _ Friday or: March 1 . d. I have been in this city for _ three days _ . EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■ 445

10-12 USING *SINCE*-CLAUSES

- Notice in the examples: The verb in the main clause is **present perfect**. The verb in the *since*-clause is **simple past**.

■ EXERCISE 28: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Use the present PERFECT or the SIMPLE PAST. 1. Maria got some bad news last week. She (be) has been _ sad since she (get) —got _ the bad news. 2. I started school when I was five years old. I (be) _ in school since I (he) _ five years old. 3. Ann's brother arrived a few days ago to visit her. She loves her brother and is happy to be with him. She (be) _ happy since her brother (come) _ . 4. Jack moved to Hong Kong after he graduated from the university. Jim (be) _ in Hong Kong since he (graduate) _ from the university. 5. The weather was hot and dry for many weeks. Two days ago it rained. The weather (be) _ cool and wet since it (begin) _ two days ago. 6. Jack broke his leg five days ago. He's in the hospital. He (be) _ in the hospital since he (break) _ _ his leg.

EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■ 447



10-13 FORM OF THE PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE FORM

be know have see teach live own zwork touch SIMPLE PAST PAST PARTICIPLE was, were been knew known had had saw seen taught taught lived lived ozvned owned worked worked touched touched

Form of the present perfect: have/ has + past participle Irregular verbs have irregular past participles. (Sec Chan 10-18 and Appendix 5 for additional lists of irregular verbs.) The past participle of regular verbs is the same form as the simple past: verb + -ed (a) I have known Tom for five years. Notice in the examples: (b) Sue has had a bad cold for three days. The present perfect is formed by (c) They have lived here since 1 994. have / has + past participle. (d) We have owned our own home since 1989. (e) I've \ Have and has are contracted with subject pronouns We've as shown in the examples. You've They've) been here for two months. She's He's ft's

J COMPARE (f) She's been here for two months. In (f): she's - she has In (g): she's - she is ■ EXERCISE 29: Complete the sentences with the given verbs. Use the present perfect. 1 . leach 2. knozv 3. be 4. live 5. have 6. zwork 7. be Mr. Jackson is a teacher. He 5 tQUQht _ biology for twenty years. I _ Mary Adams since I was a child. She _ a good friend for a long time. My parents live in a suburb of Mexico City. They _ _ in the same apartment for twenty-five years. Janet and Sam _ their dog Fido for three years, A4y uncle _ at the automobile factory for seventeen years. We _ in class since nine o'clock this morning. 448 m CHAPTER 10

8. own Ken is a businessman. He sells car parts. He _ his own business since 1994. 9. have Mr. Cook's hair started to turn gray when he was forty. He _ _ gray hair since he was forty years old. 10. see I _ several movies since I came to this city. ■ EXERCISE 30 — ORAL: Complete the sentences with the given verbs and your own words. Use the present perfect. Example: 1 . be 2. live 3. have 4. be 5. know 6. work 7. be 8. teach 9. live 10. be know I . . . (name of a person) for I've known Li Ming for three months. - + My best friend is Maria Alvarez, I've known her for fifteen years, I ... in this classroom today since Right now I am living (in an apartment , a dorm} etc.), I . . . there since I have (name of something you own). I . . . it/them for I ... in (name of a place) since I . . . (name of a classmate) since (name of someone you know) works at (name of a place), He/She . . . there for I , , , awake since Our teacher . . . English since My (name of a family member y . , , (name of a place) for I . . . afraid of . . . since 10-14 USING NEVER WITH THE PRESENT PERFECT (a) (b) I've never touched an elephant. Anna has never seen the Pacific Ocean. Never is frequently used with the present perfect. In (a): the speaker is saying, "From the beginning of my life to the present moment, I have never touched an elephant. In my entire lifetime, since I was born, I have never touched an elephant." ■ EXERCISE 31— ORAL: Use never with the present perfect. Example: Name some places you have never lived. student a: Eve never lived in a small town. student b: I've never lived in a dormitory. student c: I've never lived in South America, STUDENT D: Etc. 1. countries you've never been in 4. animals you've never touched 2. cities you've never lived in 5. things you've never seen 3. pets you've never had 6. things you've never owned EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■ 449

10-15 PRESENT PERFECT: QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVES (

a) Have you lived here for a long time? (b) Has Ken been in this class since the beginning of the term? Question form of the present perfect: have! has + subject + past participle (c) I have not (haven't) lived here for a long time. (d) Ken has not (hasn't) been in the class since the beginning of the term. Negative form of the present perfect: have has + not + past participle Negative contractions: have not = haven't has not = hasn't V ■ EXERCISE 32: Complete the sentences with the appropriate preposition. 1. (Mr. Jackson, teach) _ Has Mr. Jackson taught _ biology for a long time? 2. Ms. Smith is a new teacher. She (teach, not) hasn't taught _ biology for a long time. 3. (you, know) _ Mary Adams since you were a child? 4. I met Mary Adams only two months ago. I {know, not} _ _ her for a long time. I've known her for only a short time, 5. (she, he) _ _ a good friend of yours for a long time? 6. She (be, not) _ _ a friend of mine for a long time. 7. (your parents, live) _ _ near Mexico City for a long time? 8. I came here only a couple of months ago. I (live, not) _ here for a long time. 9. (Janet and Sam, have) _ _ their dog for a long time? 10. Pedro got his new bicycle a few months ago. He (have, not) _ _ his bicycle for a long time. 11. (your uncle, work) _ _ at the automobile factory for a long time? 12. My aunt has a new job at a candy factory. She (work, not) _ there for a long time, 450 m CHAPTER 10

10-16 USING EVTR WITH THE PRESENT PERFECT (a)

Have you ever been in Hawaii? (b) Has Pedro ever had a job (in his lifetime)? In (a); ever means "in your lifetime, from the time you were born to the present moment." Questions with ever frequently use the present perfect. (c) A: Have you ever been in London? B: Yes, I have. (I have been in London,) (d) A: Has Tom ever lived in Chicago? B: Yes, he has. (He has lived in Chicago.) (c) A: Have you ever been in Korea? B: No, I haven't. (I haven't ever been in Korea.) (f) A: Has Sue ever lived in Paris? B: No, she hasn't, (She hasn't ever lived in Paris.) In a short answer to a yes/no question with the present perfect, the helping verb {have or has} is used. In (e): Speaker B is saying that he has been in London at some time in his lifetime. (g) I haven't ever been in Korea. (h) I've never been in Korea. (i) She hasn't ever lived in Paris. (j) She's never lived in Paris. (g) and (h) have the same meaning. haven V ever been - have never been (i) and (j) have the same meaning. hasn't ever lived — has never lived ■ EXERCISE 33: Answer the questions. Use short answers. 1. A: (you, be . ever) Have you ever been in Russia? B: No, I haven't . I (be. never) 've never been in Russia. 2. A: (you, be, ever) in Turkey? B: Yes, I . f (be) in 'Iur key several times. 3. A: (you , visit, ever) the Metropolitan Museum of Art in New York City? B: No, I . I (visit, never) that museum. 4. A: fSain, be, ever j in Argentina? B: No, he . He (be, never) in Argentina, 5. A: (Carmen, be, ever i in Canada? B: Yes, she . She (be) there many times. EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■ 451

6. A: (you, have, ever) _ a serious illness? B: No, I _ . I (have, never) _ a serious illness. I've been very lucky, 7. A: (your brother, live, ever) _ in an apartment by himself? B: No, he _ . He still lives with my parents. 8. A: (you, talk, ever) _ to a famous person? B: No, I _ . I don't know any famous people. 9. A: (you, see, ever) _ a hummingbird? B: Yes, I _ .

■ EXERCISE 34— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED): Answer the questions. Use short answers. Several people should answer the same question. Example: Have STUDENT a: No, I STUDENT b: No, I STUDENT c: Yes, I 1 . Have you ever 2. Have you ever 3. Have you ever 4. Have you ever 5. Have you ever 6. Have you ever 7. Have you ever 8. Have you ever 9. Have you ever 10. Have you ever 1 1 . Have you ever 1 2. Have you ever 13. Have you ever 14. Have you ever 1 5 . Have you ever 16. Have you ever 17. Have you ever you ever been in (Africa)? haven't. haven't. have. been in (Egypt)? (Italy)? been to (Indonesia)? (Venezuela)?* been in (Washington, D.C.)? (Tokyo)? been to (Toronto)? (Istanbul)? had a pet? had a bicycle? had a (kind of car)? had a purple umbrella? lived in an apartment? a dormitory? lived in a one-room apartment? lived in (name of a city or country)? touched an elephant? a snake? a cow? called (...) on the phone? stayed in a hotel in this city? watched (name of a program) on TV? been to (name of a place in this city)? seen a whale? *Have you ever been in Indonesia and Have you ever been to Indonesia have the same meaning, 452

■ CHAPTER 10

10-17 THE PRESENT PERFECT: QUESTIONS WITH HOW LONG (a) A How long have you been in this city ? Question form of the present perfect ; B For five months. have + subject + past participle (b) A How long has Alt had a mustache? B Since he was twenty-one years old. (c) A How long have you known Maria? B Since the beginning of the school term. ■ EXERCISE 35: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. 1 . A: How long (you, be) _ _ _ at this school? B: Since the middle of January, 2. A: How long (you, know) _ _ _ Shelley? B: For three years. 3. A: How long (Mr. Lake, be) _ _ _ a teacher? B: Since he graduated from college in 1990. 4. A: How long (you, have) _ _ _ your car? B: For a couple of years, 5. A: How long (your roommate, be) _ _ _ out of town? B: Since Friday. ■ EXERCISE 36 — ORAL: Pair up with a classmate. PART I: student a: Ask questions with how long and the present perfect. STUDENT b: Answer the questions. Example: have a mustache student a: How long have you had a mustache? student b: I've had a mustache since I was seventeen years old. 1 . be in (this city / country) 2. be in this class 3. know (name of a classmate) 4. be a student at (this school) 5. be in this room today 6. live at your present address 7. have (something Student B owns) 8. have (something else Student B owns) EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■ 453

PART II: Switch roles. student A: Ask the questions. If the answer is yes, ask for more information, including how long. Use the present perfect in the question with how long. If the answer is no, think of other similar questions until Student B answers yes.

student b: Answer the questions. Example: STUDENT a: STUDENT B: STUDENT A; STUDENT B: STUDENT A: STUDENT B: Do you have a pet? Do you have a pet? Yes, I do. What kind of pet do you have? A dog. How long have you had your dog? She's six years old. I've had her since she was a puppy. I've had her for six years.

Example : STUDENT A: STUDENT B: STUDENT A! STUDENT B: STUDENT A: STUDENT B: STUDENT A: STUDENT B: STUDENT A: STUDENT B: Do you have a pet? Do you have a pet? No. Do your parents have a pet? No. Does anyone you know have a pet? Yes. My brother does. What kind of pet does he have? A cat. How long has he had a cat? For five or six years. 9. Do you have a pet? (Do your parents? Does anyone you know have a pet?) 10. Are you a student at (this school)? 11. Do you live in an apartment? (a dormitory? a house?) 12. Do you have a roommate? 13. Do you have a briefcase or a bookbag? (a wallet? a purse?) 14. Do you know (name of a classmate)? 15. Do you have a car? (a bicycle? a personal computer? a calculator?) 16. Are you married? (Is the teacher married? Is anyone in this class married?) 454 ■ CHAPTER 10

* Thu simple past and the past participle of the verb read are both pronounced “red” — the same pronunciation as the color red. EXERCISE 37— ORAL (BOOKS CLOSED) : Add the past participles. Example: eat, ate, . . . Response: eaten ■ 1 . eat, ate, . . . 8. see, saw, . . . 2. go, went, . . . 9. speak, spoke, 3. have, had, . . . 10. take, took, . . . 4. know, knew, . . . 11 . tell, told, . . . 5. lose, lost, . . . 12. wear, wore, . 6. meet, met, . . . 13. write, wrote, 7. read, read, . . . EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■ 455

10-18 PAST PARTICIPLES OF COMMON IRREGULAR VERBS

- (a) I have never **touched** an elephant.
 (b) Has Jim ever **stayed** at a hotel in Bangkok?
 (c) Tom has never **eaten** Thai food.
 (d) Have you ever **gone** to a rock concert?

The past participles of regular verbs end in **-ed**.
 Examples: *touched, stayed*.
 Irregular verbs have *irregular* past participles.
 Examples: *eaten, gone*.

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF SOME COMMON IRREGULAR VERBS

| Simple Form | Simple Past | Past Participle |
|--------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>be</i> | <i>was, were</i> | <i>been</i> |
| <i>eat</i> | <i>ate</i> | <i>eaten</i> |
| <i>go</i> | <i>went</i> | <i>gone</i> |
| <i>have</i> | <i>had</i> | <i>had</i> |
| <i>know</i> | <i>knew</i> | <i>known</i> |
| <i>lose</i> | <i>lost</i> | <i>lost</i> |
| <i>meet</i> | <i>met</i> | <i>met</i> |
| <i>read</i> | <i>read*</i> | <i>read*</i> |
| <i>see</i> | <i>saw</i> | <i>seen</i> |
| <i>speak</i> | <i>spoke</i> | <i>spoken</i> |
| <i>take</i> | <i>took</i> | <i>taken</i> |
| <i>teach</i> | <i>taught</i> | <i>taught</i> |
| <i>tell</i> | <i>told</i> | <i>told</i> |
| <i>wear</i> | <i>wore</i> | <i>worn</i> |
| <i>write</i> | <i>wrote</i> | <i>written</i> |

| EXERCISE 38: Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the list. PART I: go ✓ lake lose tell meet write
1 . I've never _ taken 2. Have you ever _ 3. Have you ever _ 4. I've never _ 5. Have you ever _ 6. Have you ever _ PART II: eat see know speak read wear 7. How long have you _ Abdul? Have you been friends for a long time? 8. I've never _ the movie Gone with the Wind. 9. Have you ever _ the book Gone with the Wind? 10. Ann has never _ raw meat. a physics class. _ Maria's sister? _ the keys to your apartment? to a rock concert in my whole life. _ a lie? _ _ a poem? 456 ■ CHAPTER 10

1 1 . Mr, Cook never dresses casually. He has never _ blue jeans in his life. 12. Have you ever _ to your teacher on the phone?

■ EXERCISE 39 — ORAL: Pair up with a classmate. student a: Your book is open. Ask a question beginning with “Have you ever . . . student b: Your book is closed. Give a short answer to the question. Example: STUDENT A: student b: be in (name of a country) Have you ever been in Malaysia? Yes, I have, or: No, I haven’t. 1 . meet (name of a person) 2. go to (a place in this city) 3. lose the keys to your front door 4. be in (name of a building in this city) 5. read (name of a book) 6. wear cowboy boots 7. speak to (name of a classmate) about (something) 8. eat fish eggs 9. write a letter to (name of a person) 10. tell (name of the teacher) about (something) 1 1 . see (name of a movie) 1 2. have (name of a kind of food) Szvitch roles , 1 3. read (name of a book) 14. eat (a kind of food) 15. write a letter to (name of a person) 16. see (name of a television program) 17. go to (a place in this city) 18. have (name of a kind of food) 19. be in (name of a place at this school) 20. meet (name of a person) 2 1 . wear (a kind of clothing) 22. speak to (name of a teacher) about (something) 23. lose (name of something Student B has) 24. tell (name of a classmate) about (something) ■ EXERCISE 40— ERROR ANALYSIS: Find and correct the mistakes. 1 . Let’s going to a restaurant for dinner tonight. 2. I’ve never see a whale. 3. The phone rang while I was eat dinner last night. 4. How long you have been a student at this school? EXPRESSING IDEAS WITH VERBS ■

5. Ken doesn't has to go to work today. 6. I must to study tonight. I can't going to the movie with you. 7. I have been in this city' since two months. 8. Why you have to leave now? 9. You shouldn't to speak loudly in a library. 10. I've known Olga since I am a child. 11. You don't must be late for work. 12. Have you ever went to a baseball game? 13. I am in this class since the beginning of January. ■ EXERCISE 41 — WRITTEN: Write about your experiences as a member of this class. Suggestions of things to write about: • the first day of class • the teacher • your classmates • the classroom • your learning experiences • the textbook(s) i a memorable event in this class 458 m CHAPTER 10

APPENDIX 7 The English Alphabet A a B b C c D d N n O o
P p Q q E e F f G g H h I i R r S s T t U u V v J j W w K k X x L l Y y
M m Z /* Vowels = a, e, i, o u. Consonants - b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l,
in, n, p, q, r, s, U v, w, x, _v, z. *The letter “z” is pronounced in
American Hnglish and “zed” in British English. THE ENGLISH
ALPHABET ■ A1



APPENDIX 1

The English Alphabet

1 one 1st first 2 two 2nd second 3 three 3rd third 4 four 4th fourth 5 five 5th fifth 6 six 6th sixth 7 seven 7th seventh 8 eight 8th eighth 9 nine 9th ninth 10 ten 10th tenth 11 eleven 11th eleventh 12 twelve 12th twelfth 13 thirteen 13th thirteenth 14 fourteen 14th fourteenth 15 fifteen 15th fifteenth 16 sixteen 16th sixteenth 17 seventeen 17th seventeenth 18 eighteen 18th eighteenth 19 nineteen 19th nineteenth 20 twenty 20th twentieth 21 twenty-one 21st twenty-first 22 twenty-two 22nd twenty-second 23 twenty-three 23rd twenty-third 24 twenty-four 24th twenty-fourth 25 twenty-five 25th twenty-fifth 26 twenty-six 26th twenty-sixth 27 twenty-seven 27th twenty-seventh 28 twenty-eight 28th twenty-eighth 29 twenty-nine 29th twenty-ninth 30 thirty 30th thirtieth 40 forty 40th fortieth 50 fifty 50th fiftieth 60 sixty 60th sixtieth 70 seventy 70th seventieth 80 eighty 80th eightieth 90 ninety 90th ninetieth 100 one hundred 100th one hundredth 200 two hundred 200th two hundredth 1,000 one thousand 10,000 ten thousand 100,000 one hundred thousand 1,000,000 one million A2 m NUMBERS



APPENDIX 2

Numbers

PPENDIX 3 Days of the Week and Months of the Year
DAYS MONTHS Monday (Mon.) January (Jan.) Tuesday (Tues.)
February (Feb.) Wednesday (Wed.) March (Mar.) Thursday (Thurs.)
April (Apr.) Friday (Fri.) May (May) Saturday (Sat.) June (June)
Sunday (Sun.) July (July) August (Aug.) September (Sept.) October
(Oct.) November (Nov.) December (Dec.) Using numbers to write
the date: month/day/year 10/31/41 = October 31, 1941 4/15/92
= April 15, 1992 Saying dates: USUAL WRITTEN FORM January 1
March 2 May 3 June 4 August 5 October 10 November 27 USUAL
SPOKEN FORM January first /the first of January March second/
the second of March May third /the third of May June fourth/the
fourth of June August fifth/the fifth of August October tenth/ the
tenth of October November twenty-seventh /the twenty-seventh of
November DAYS OF THE WEEK AND MONTHS OF THE YEAR ■
A3



APPENDIX 3

Days of the Week and Months of the Year

APPENDIX m Ways of Saying the Time 9:00 It's nine o'clock. It's nine. 9:05 It's nine-oh-five. It's five (minutes) after nine, It's five (minutes) past nine. 9:10 It's nine-ten. It's ten (minutes) after nine, It's ten (minutes) past nine. 9:15 It's nine-fifteen. It's a quarter after nine. It's a quarter past nine. 9:30 It's nine-thirty. It's half past nine, 9:45 It's nine-forty-five. It's a quarter to ten. It's a quarter of ten. 9:50 It's nine-fifty. It's ten (minutes) to ten. It's ten (minutes) of ten. 12:00 It's noon. It's midnight. a.m. = morning It's nine a.M. p.m. = afternoon/evening/night It's nine p.M. A4 m
WAYS OF SAYING THE TIME



APPENDIX 4

Ways of Saying the Time

SIMP IT SIMP! T PAST SIMPLE simple: PAST EORM PAST
 PARTICIPLE EORM PAST PARTICIPLE be was, were been keep kept
 kept become became become know knew known begin began begun
 lend lent lent bend bent bent leave left left bite bit bitten lose lost
 lost blow blew blown make made made break broke broken meet
 met met bring brought brought pay paid paid build built built put
 put put buy bought bought read read read eat eh caught caught ride
 rode ridden ehooose chose chosen ring rang rung come came come
 run ran run cost cost cost say said said cut cut cut see saw seen do
 did done sell sold sold draw drew drawn send sent sent drink drank
 drunk shake shook shaken drive drove driven shut shut shut eat ate
 eaten sing sang sung fall fell fallen sit sat sat feed fed fed sleep slept
 slept feel felt felt speak spoke spoken fight fought fought spend
 spent spent find found found stand stood stood fly flew flown steal
 stole stolen forget forgot forgotten swim swam swum get got
 gotten/got take took taken give gave given teach taught taught g°
 went gone tear tore torn grow grew grown tell told told hang hung
 hung think thought thought have had had throw threw thrown hear
 heard heard understand understood understood hide hid hidden
 wake up woke up woken up hit hit hit wear wore worn hold held
 held win won won hurt hurt hurt write wrote written IRREGULAR
 VERBS ■ A5



APPENDIX 5

Irregular Verbs

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

A Alan, 2, 4, 143 vs. some, 144 Able to, 301 A couple of, 238 Adjectives, defined, 10, 129, 325 vs. adverbs, 411 be + adjective, 10, 20, 129 comparative, 383 with enough, 295, 299 following linking verbs, 360 list of, 129 possessive (e.g., my, his, our), 27, 347, 363 superlative, 398, 405 with too, 293-294 uses of, 360 with very, 287 word order of, 329 Adverbs: vs. adjectives, 41 1 in comparisons, 414, 416 Adverbs of frequency, 46-47 A few, 238 A few! a little, 141 After, 216, 258 Ago, 238 Alike, 382 (Almost) All of, 334 A lot of, 141 Alphabet, Al Always, usually, often, sometimes, seldom, rarely, never, 46 Am, is, are: negative, 8 simple present, 4, 8, 20-21, 24 And, 4, 357-358 Any, 161 Any one (anything, 163-164 Apostrophe, 352 defined, 7 (see also Contractions) with possessive nouns, 343 Articles (a, an, the), 2, 4, 143, 156, 160 As . . . as, 389, 4 1 6 At for location, 3 1 1 for time, 73 Be be + adjective, 10, 20, 129 be + -ing, 84, 434 be + location, 16, 20, 24, 106 be + noun, 2, 4, 6, 20 be + prepositional phrase, 1 6 contractions with, 7, 21, 30, 32, 106, 172 question forms with, 21, 24, 61, 67, 89, 173 simple past (was, were), 171, 245-246 simple present (am, is, are), 4, 8, 20-21, 24, 245-246 there + be, 106, 109 Be able to, 301, 430-431 Be going to, 231, 245-256, 258, 263, 430—43 1 Before, 216, 258 INDEX ■ 1



Index

But, 393, 395 Buy, 369 C Can, 430-43 1 ability/possibility, 281 in questions, 282, 302 Clauses, 216, 219 future time clauses, 258 with if, 260, 263 with when, 440 with while, 438 Colon, 72 fri. Comma, 216, 357, 3 58fn., 393 Comparatives (-erj-more), 383 Comparisons: with adverbs, 414, 416 as . . . as, 389 bin, 393, 395 -erjmore, 383 -estjmosi, 398 less, 389 like, alike, 382 same, similar, different, 379 Consonants, 2, 87fn., 186 Contractions: defined, 7 negative, 192 with not (srk Negatives) with pronouns, 448 in questions, 282 in short answers, 243/m. with will , 242 with would, 1 00 Contractions of be: with not, 21, 172 with pronouns, 7, 21 with question words, 32 in short answers, 2 1 with that, 30 with there, 106 Could, 430-431 past of can, 285 in polite questions, 302, 304 Count/noncount nouns, 141, 150 D Dates, spoken and written forms, A3 Days of the week, A3 Did : in the negative, 1 92 in questions, 194, 209 Different (from), 379 Direct objects, 364 Dojdoes: in the negative, 57, 307 in questions, 61, 64, 66-67, 212 E -Ed, past participle, 448, 455 -Ed, simple past, 177 pronunciation, 180, 186 spelling, 183, 186 English alphabet, A1 Enough : with adjectives, 295 with infinitives, 299 with nouns, 297 -Erjmore, 383 -Estjmost, 398 Ever, 451 Every, 34 1 Everyone jevery body, 34 1 Explain, 370 F Feminine pronouns, 6 For , 367, 444 Frequency adverbs, 46-47 Full stop, 57/m. Future time: be going to, 23 1 clauses, 258 with if, 260, 263 future time words, 235, 238-239 will, 242 G Get, 369 Going to, with be, 231 , 258, 263 2 m INDEX

H Habitual present, 263 Have/has, 26 in the present perfect, 448 Have been, 444 Have to/has to, 424, 430-431 Hear and listen to, 97 How long , 453 How many Show much , 109 I I, you, he, she, it, we, they, 6-7, 131, 171-172, 177, 192 Idioms, 299 [fn. //'-clause, 260 habitual present with, 263 Imperative sentences, 307 In for future time, 238 for location, 3 1 1 Indefinite pronouns, 163-164 Indirect objects: with buy, get, make, 369 with explain and introduce, 370 introduced by for, 367 introduced by to, 364 Infinitives, defined, 98, 231 fn. with be able , 301, 430-431 with be going, 231, 245-246, 258, 263, 430-431 with enough , 299 with have/has, 424, 430-431 with knozv hozv, 284 with too, 293-294 following verbs, 98, 100 Information questions, defined, 64 with be, 67, 173 with do/does/did, 61, 64, 66—67, 194, 209, 212 -Ing, spelling, 87, 186 be + -ing, 84 Introduce, 370 Irregular noun plurals, 1 39 possessive form, 345 Irregular singular verbs (e.g., has, does, goes), 52, 54 Irregular verbs: introduction, 52 list, 190, A5 More Irregular Verbs, 198, 213, 266, 270, 321, 375 past participles of, 455 Is + noun, 2, 6, 20-2 1 It. used for time, 72 used for weather, 74 K Know how to, 284 L Last, 235 Less, 389 Let's, 423 Like and alike, 382 Like vs. would like, 1 0 1 Linking verbs, 360 Location, 16, 20, 24, 106, 1 1 1 M Main clauses, 216 Make, 369 Many /much, 141 with hozv, 109 Masculine pronouns, 6 May, 430-43 1 in polite questions, 302 possibility, 253 Maybe vs. may be, 255 Me, you, him, her, it, us, them, 1 3 1 Measurements with noncount nouns, 150 Might, 253, 430-431 Mine, yours, his, hers, ours, theirs, 347, 363 Modal auxiliaries, 430-431 Adonths of the year, A3 More: comparative, 383 meaning additional, 297 More Irregular Verbs, 198, 213, 266, 270, 321, 375 Most, 398 INDEX ■ 3

Most of, 334 Must, 427, 430-431 My, your, his, her, our, their, 347, 363 N Negatives: amlis/are + not, 8, 231, 245-246 can + not, 281 could + not, 285 did + not, 192 does/do + not, 57, 307 have/has + not, 450-451 I should + not, 420 was/were + not, 172 will + not, 242, 245-246 Never, 449 Next, 235 No one / nothing, 164 Nonaction verbs, 95 Noncount nouns, 141, 150 None of, 331 Not (SEE Negatives) Nouns: be + noun, 2, 4, 6, 20 connected with and and or, 357-358 count/noncount, 141, 150 irregular plural possessives, 345 modifying other nouns, 325, 355 as noun complement, 355 as object, 127, 355 possessive, 343, 345, 355 singular/plural, 2, 4, 134, 139 as subject, 10/n., 20, 127, 355 uses of, 355 Numbers, A2 O Object pronouns, 131, 363 Objects and subjects, 127, 355 Objects, direct and indirect, 364, 367-370 One of, 337, 405 Or, 357 P Past participle, 448, 455 Past time: past progressive, 434, 438, 440 past time words, 178, 235, 239 simple past, 177, 190, 192, 245-246, 440, 446 with be, 171 Period, 2 1 Personal pronouns, 363 Plural, defined, 4 Plural nouns, 4, 6, 134, 139 Polite questions, 302, 304 Possessive: adjectives (e.g., my, his, our), 27, 347, 363 nouns, 343, 345, 355 pronouns, 347, 363 Prepositional phrase, defined, 1 6 Prepositions: followed by an object, 16, 111, 127, 216 in for future, 235, 238 list of, 16, 111 location, 16, 20, 24, 106, 111, 31 1 place, 11 1/n. time, 73, 216, 235, 444 Present perfect, 444, 446, 448-451, 453 Present progressive, 84 in questions, 89 vs. simple present, 92 verbs not used in, 95 Present time, 44, 57 present continuous/continuous present, 84/n. present progressive, 84, 89, 92, 95, 245, 434 present time words, 239 simple present, 44, 64, 66, 92, 245-246 with be, 4, 8, 20-21, 24 in (/"-clauses, 260 negative, 57 in time clauses, 258 Pronouns, defined, 6 contractions with, 448 feminine/masculine, 6 indefinite (e.g., someone, anything), 163-164 object (e.g., me, them), 131, 363 personal, 363 possessive, 347, 363 4 ■ INDEX

subject (e.g., I, they), 6-7, 131, 171-172, 177, 192, 363
 Pronunciation: -ed, 180, 186 -sj-es, 49, 51, 54 Punctuation:
 apostrophe, 7, 352 colon, 72/??, comma, 216, 357, 358/??, 393
 full stop, 57/??, period, 21 question mark, 21 Q Quantity,
 expressions of, 334, 336-337 Question mark, 21 Question words,
 32 how many /how much, 109 what, 32, 67, 206, 212 what time,
 66-67, 203 when, 66—67, 203, 219 to here, 24, 64, 67, 89, 203
 zvho, 32, 206, 209 ioho(m), 209 why, 89, 203 Questions: with be,
 21, 24, 61, 89, 173 with be + going to, 231, 245-246 with can, 282
 with could, 302, 304 with did, 194, 209 with do/does, 61, 64,
 66-67, 212 information, 64 polite, 302, 304 with there isj there are,
 107, 109 about time, 203 with will, 243, 245-246 yes/no, 64 (see
 also Question words, Yes/no questions) S -S/-es: plural nouns, 4, 6,
 134 simple present verbs, 44, 54 spelling and pronunciation, 49, 51,
 54 Same, similar, different, 379 See, look at, watch, 97 Short
 answers, 21, 173, 194, 203, 206, 243/??, Should, 420, 430-431 vs.
 must, 427 Similar (to), 379 Simple past, 171, 177 irregular verbs, 1
 90, A5 negative, 172, 192 vs. past progressive, 440 questions, 173,
 194, 203 summary of forms, 245-246 Simple present, 44, 54 with
 be, 4, 8, 20-21, 24 in ?/-clauses, 260 negative, 57 vs. present
 progressive, 92 present time words, 239 questions, 61, 64, 66
 summary of forms, 245-246 in time clauses, 258 Since, 444, 446
 Singular nouns, 1 34 defined, 2 with pronouns, 6, 44 Some, 141 vs.
 ajan, 144 vs. any, 161 Some of, 334 Someone /something, 163
 Spelling: -ed, 183, 186 -ing, 87, 186 -s/es, 49, 51, 54 Subject,
 defined, 10/??, 20 Subject pronouns, 6-7, 131, 171-172, 177,
 192, 363 Subject-verb agreement, 336 Subjects and objects, 127
 Superlatives (-est/most), 398, 405 T Tenses: future, 231, 235,
 238-239, 242, 258, 260, 263 past progressive, 434, 438, 440 INDEX

present continuous/continuous present, 84 fn. present perfect, 444, 446, 448-451, 453 present progressive, 84, 89, 92, 245, 434 simple past, 17 1, 177, 190, 192, 245-246, 440 simple present, 44, 57, 245-246 in time clauses, 258 Than, 383 The, 156, 160 The same as, 379 There is /there are, 1 06 in questions, 107, 109 Thesejthose, 31 Think about and think that, 1 02 This morning /afternoon, etc., 239 This /that, 30 Time: asking questions about, 203 clauses, 216, 219, 258, 263, 438 prepositions of, 73, 216, 235, 444 present/past/future words, 235, 238-239 using it, 72 ways of saying, 73, A4 (st:t: also Tenses) To, 3 1 0, 364 (see also Infinitives) Today, tonight, this morning, etc., 239 Too, 287, 293-294 Too manyjtoo much, 290 Two vs. too vs. to, 3 1 0 V Verbs: after but, 395 irregular, 266, 270, 321, 375, 455, A5 linking, 360 modal auxiliaries, 430-43 1 not used in the present progressive, 95 tense summary, 245 forms of be, 246 transitive/intransitive, \21fn. (see also Tenses and individual items) Very, 287 Voiced and voiceless sounds, 49, 54, ISO Vowels, 2 fn., 87 fn., A1 W Was /were, 172-173 What, 32, 67, 206, 212 What + a form of do, 25 1 What time, 66-67, 203 When, 66-67, 203, 219, 258 HTien-clause, 440 Where, 24, 64, 67, 89, 203 While, 438 Who, 32, 206, 209 Who(m), 209 Whose, 351 Why, 89, 203 Will, 242-246, 430-43 1 vs. may /might, 253 Would, 430-43 1 in polite questions, 304 Would like , 100 vs. like, 101 Y -Y, words that end in, 4, 54, 1 34 Yes/no questions, defined, 64 with be going to, 231, 245-246 with can, 282, 302 with could, 302, 304 with did, 194, 209 with does /do, 61, 64 with is / are, 21 present progressive, 84, 89, 95 with may, 302 there + be, 107 with was /were, 173 with will, 243, 245-246 with zcould, 304 with zvould like, 1 00 Yesterday, last, ago, 1 78 6 U INDEX

BASIC ENGLISH GRAMMAR Betty Schramper Azar BASIC ENGLISH GRAMMAR features: - an introduction to the form, meaning, and usage of basic structures in English - a developmental skills approach that encourages speaking, listening, writing, and reading abilities through a wide variety of exercises - reference text and workbook in one, providing a well-organized and abundant core of material ' exercises designed to get students to talk about their ideas, their everyday lives, and their environment ' open communicative practice with the target structures New features: • an expanded syllabus that includes a number of additional grammar topics • numerous new exercises, including cumulative review exercises at the end of each chapter ' new communicative activities exercises specifically for pair and group work • many additional illustrations as teaching aids TEACHER'S GUIDE features: • answers to the exercises • presentation suggestions techniques for handling exercises suggested activities notes on cultural content, vocabulary, and structure usage ANSWER KEY features: answers to the exercises BASIC ENGLISH GRAMMAR and the TEACHER'S GUIDE are available in full editions and in split editions. isbn D-ia-abaaIT-b m II mu mi 90000 Pearson Education 1 9II78Q1 3^68^1 77